THE

# LIFE & DEWILL

ALEXAN DER the GREEN KING OF MACEDON

IN TEN BOOKS

Quintus Curetus Rufus.

Exactly conferred with the Original and purged from many group and Abfordities with which it before abounded.

Done into English by the force of the state of the HOLY COURT.

Printed by J. c. for Samuel speed.



ALEXANDER GREAT

King of Macedon:

F. H. van Houe. B.

THE BOWN TO

# LIFE & DEATH

OF THE

ALEXADODER the Great

IN TEN BOOKS

LY

Quintus Curtius Rufut

Exactly conferred with the Original and purged from many grafs between Abfurdates with which it before abounded.

Done into English by the face of the state of the HOLY COURT

Printed by 3. c. for Samuel speed.
1 6 7 3.

north A Light

是一种原始的[1]

MINCHILLEDIN

ANDOR NOT WIL

Difference ( Print the Alle

diamina di la confine villand estro di la confine de la confine di la c

Divide the to the first that the trial of the control of the contr

LOW DA

Printed by J. c. for samual species

To the true Lover of all good Learning, the Right Honourable Baptist, Viscount Cambden, Lord Noel of Redlington, and Baron of Elmington, &c.

My Lord,

Reat Actions are the Subjects of J great Wits; and no Age hath been so unhappy, but they have great Personages, if not to exceed, yet to second and protect them. But the Atchievements of Alexander the Great, are so great in themselves, that they are rather the Subjects of our Wonder when Belief; nor can any man be a just Judge of them, who is not indued with

79420

#### The Epiftle Dedicatory.

the same Spirit of Foreitude, and withal, transported with the same delire of glory. Fame, indeed, is not so much the bound, as the delight of Transcendent Spirits, who with the unwearied Travels of their Swords, add Kingdoms unto Kingdoms, and abstract from the number of the Nations, to add to the numbers of their Conquests. How many have we read of, who almost since the Cradle of the World, have exercised thus the Power of the Sword, and by a lamentable happiness, have made the Epitaphs of other Nations to become the best Annals of their summertality and Fury?

a

But Alexander was as merciful as he was just; and having overcome the Nations by force, he always after, by a newer and Nobler Conquest, did both overcome and oblige them by his Loudy. By a rare felicity he had Fortune intirely in his own Power; and at last he would become the Master as much of Fame as of Fortune: He was sad to understand that his Atchievements had brought him to the utmost parts of the World; and he would have no end of his Victories, because he would have no end

The Epiftle Dedicatory.

end of his Glory: Having exceeded the Acts of Men, he would exceed even Fame her felf, unless the could find breath enough to raile him unto Heaven, and leave him there inthron d amongst

his gods.

F

And yet for all this vain attempt and confidence, he might have flept cover d with the Dult of Oblivion, were he not beholden to a better Divinity, and to the Light of Hillory, which have preferved his Name throughout all Generations: The Prophers have done the one and this our Author the other; the Prophets in the Word of God, and our Author in this History: A History drawn from the Records of Antiquity, and famous as Ptolomy himfelf; a man as admirable in the Arts of Peace as of War, who being present with Alexander in all his Wars, was both his Companion his Kiniman: A History composed with fuch Art . fuch State and Truth, that Lipfins, the most Lettered, and most received of the Criticks, hath affirmed, If there were ever Hiltory pure and legithate, it was this of Curtius.

It was before imperfect in English, and laboured at least under a thousand Sole-

A 2 cilms y

The Epiftle Dedicatory.

cifms; I have only taken the pains to put it in a new Drefs, and to prepare it for your Honours hands, to which precifely it doth devote it felf, and with it, the most Elaborate Observances of him who is,

My Lord ,

the most bumble and most faithful of all that serve you,

Robert Codrington.

## **多学多学专供自由专有创办会**

To the Reader in general, and efpecially to the Souldier.

e c,

IN these Martial Times, if any thing can excite you jet bigber to Honourable Atchievements, it will be the perusal of this History, then which (if you respect either the Excellence of Alexander, or the Abilities of Curtius ) you will finde nothing more Magnificent or Delightful: Tou will finde bow Kingdoms are disposed of by the Eternal Decrees of Providence; and that when God is pleased to put a period to them, be selects men, and inspires them with Courage and Understanding answerable to that great Work unto which be bath appointed them. None but Alexander could perform what Alexander bath dones and though his course of life was so short, that he did rather defired then ered an Empire, yet we may wonder as much at his Resolution what he undertook, as at his success in what be performed. With an inconsiderable Power, with Wicker Targets, and Swords covered with Rust, and a Stock of not above tbrees .

#### To the Reader.

three score Talents, which he himself conth was the frength of his Exchaquer, be advanced into Asia, and in the compefs of a few years, he became Master of all the East, and, at that time, of the most Flourishing and Potent Nations of the World. He never encountred any Enemy whom be overcame not, nor besieged City which he took not, not invaded Land which he subdued not. Although the first grounds of the War were in the days of Mernes, and his Predeseffors ; yet the cas lamity of it, and the utter rune of the Empire, was in the days of Darius, the last and best of the Emperours. The admirable Revolution of States, and from what small beginnings great Powers do arise, is no where more apparently to be from; and by the understanding of the coests fo long ago abroad, jou may draw jour Application to things more profest, and or home. To add more, is to anticipate your understanding 3 1 Shall on infert, that the Author of this Hillary Quineus Cureius, (by bis Complexion firnamed Rufus) was supposed to live in the days of Caligula: His History is full of Variety, and attended with as much Gravity as Delight, as in the perusal of

d

#### To the Reader.

it you will acknowledge with him, who for your sakes only hash taken these pains to review it; it being as much my Bustien, to relieve and advance your Understanding.

thente to

trees Samuel Spired. Dooks left in the latery disposed threshold to a Whole-12th Theodor

resolution of the lo Codrington.

Here is nothing that is absolutely perfect; Alexander himself had a Mole in his Face. The over-light of the Printer hath caused some literal faults in the Press, which are left to your Candour, either to correct, or excuse them.

**学等等中央中央中央中央中央** 

rabiations

## An Advertisement to all Gentlemen, Book-sellers, or others.

Hereas Samuel Speed, Book-seller, hath lately disposed himself to a Whole-sale Trade for Books, not making any appearance of that Imployment as formerly he did; These are to certifie, That those persons that please to apply themselves to him for Books, shall be as well used as by any person whatsoever; And whosoever hath any Study or Library of Books, or Copies, either in Manuscript, or such as have been already Printed, to dispose of, shall receive from him the full value thereof, to the said Parties ample satisfaction.

級級級級級級級級級級級級

for

oy-

hat

im

fon

or pt,

the

# FIRST BOOK

OF

## QUINTUS CURTIUS.

Concerning the Birth and Education of Alexander the Great. The Munther of his Father Phillip: The Drewn of his Mother Olympias, in relation to the admirable Victories which (throughout the whole course of his Wars) be afterwards atchieved.

Dilip of Miredon, who by fubduing of Greece, I did first advance that Kingdom unto that height of power, was the Soo of Amintas; a man indued with wisdom; courage, and all other vertues of a Noble Captain. This Amintas had by Euridize his Wife three Sons, Alexander, Perdicas and Philip, who was the Father of Great Alexander, and a Daughter called Entime. The Queen Euridize haing enamoured with one that had married her Daughter, conspired the death of the King her Husband, to the intent to have married with her Sonsitiv-Law, and to make him King; which thing the had brought to effect, had not the Treason and Lastiviousness of the Mother been opportunely specialed by the Daughter. After the death of Amin-

B

il ti

ħ

ti

ſi

(

Ci

aı

n

fi

di

W

fi H

la

Te

tar, Alexander the Eldelt Son enjoyed his Fathers Kingdom, who in the beginning of his Reign was to allatted on all fides, that he was driven by force to putchase Peace of the Illyrians with Money, and by giving his Brother Philip in Hostage: And afterwards, by the same Pledge, he made a like Peace with the Thebans, which was the occasion that Philip did attain to fuch Excellency of Knowledge and Wisdom; for by reason that he was committed to the custody of Epaminondas, who was a valiant Captain, and an excellent Philosopher, he was brought up in the exercise of honest Disciplines, and Princely matters, greatly profiting under a Scholar of Pythageras School, whom Epaminendas kept in his house for the instruction of his Son. In the mean featon, Alexander was flain by the means of Emidice his Mother; whose former Treason King Amintar her Husband had pardoned, in respect of the Children had between them, little thinking that the would afterwards have been their destruction: For when Alexander was dead; the cauled, in like manner, her other Son Perdicas to be flain; which Perdiem lest behinde him one Son, being a young Babe. About the fame time, Philip the youngest Brother, having by good hap flipt away from his Guardian Epaminondas, returned into Macedon; and not taking upon him the Name of King, remained a great while, no otherwise, but as a Protector to his young Nephew. Nevertheless afterwards, by occasion of fundry mischiefs growing in the State, the same being such as might not well attend the Majority of the young King, Philip ap-- pearing to be a man of fingular activity, and of no all a line of the building of the court of the later of the line o

#### Book I. of Alexander the Great.

15

725

rce

nd

af-

ace

at

ge

it-

la-

as

nd

lar

in

the

of

ng

of

hat

n:

ike ich

ing

eit.

his ni ;

re-

toer-

rell

ap-

no les

less skill in seats of War, then in knowledge of Philosophy, was compelled by the people to take upon him the Kingdom of Macedon, which as then stood in great difficulties, and danger of ruine. This was done 300 years after the building of Rome, and in the 105 Olympiad. In the beginning of his Reign he was environed with infinite troubles; for all the Neighbouring Countries (as it were by a general Conspiracy) moved War against him; and at one time fundry Nations combined together, out of fundry parts, to affail his Kingdom: Wherefore, confidering that it flood him upon to move differently, ( not being able to Match them all at once ) he pacified fome with fair promises, others with money, and the weakest he withstood by force. By this means he both made his Enemies afraid, and confirmed the hearts of his people, whom he found discouraged, and fore amazed. These things he wrought with great Artifice and fineness of wir, in fuch fort, that he diminished not any part of his Honour, Effete or Regulation; determining nevertheless, as time should serve, to deal with every one apart. His first War was with the Athenians, whom he overcame by Wit and Policy: And whereas it lay in his power to have put them all to the Sword. he let them all at liberty; without Ranfom: By which point of Clemency, though it was but counterfeit, being done for fear of a greater War at and, yet it procured him great Estimation and authority. After that, he subdued the Peons; and from them turned his Power against the Utyrians, of whom he flew many thousands, and conquered the famous City of Lariffa. That done, he moved

War

The Life and Death . Book E.

War against the Thesselling; not for any desire of their goods, or sported their Country, but out of a policy, to add to his strength the force of their Cavalty, which in those days were accounted the edictest in the world. This he happily effected: for being suddenly assailed, they were soon brought to subjection's and Philip soyning the force of their Horsemen unto his Footmen, he made his power

invincible.

After all these things bring brought to pass, he took to Wife Olympias, one of the Daughters, of Neoftalemus, King of the Moloffi. This Marriage was concluded by the means of Arisba, who had the Government of Olympius, and not long before had married her other Sitter Troas. This Marriage, which he intended for his fecurity, turn'd afterwards to his subvertion; for thinking to have made handelf driong by the affinity of Philip, he was at latt by our deprived of the whole Kingdom, and erided his lite miscrably in Exile. Not long after this Marriage, King I bilip dreamed, that he faw an excellent Medal feltened to the Wamb of his Wite, and whis ferming, the live'y Image of a Lyon there pon: By which Dream the Divines did incorpret, that his Wife was conceived of a Childe that thould be of a Lyons heart and courage; which interpretation pleased him highly. Afterwards, at the alleult of a City called Methron, by thot of an Arrow he lost his right eye; whereof though the displeasure was great, yet was he content, upon their fabrillion, to take them to mercy. He won allo the City of Pagus, and annexed the lame unto his Kingdom: He invaded the Land of the Tri

Book F. of Alexander the Great.

Countries thereabout. Thus having made his Ring-dom strong by subdoing his Neighbours, at his turn home his Wife Olympias was delivered of his Son Alexander, on the eighth of the lides of April. Of these good fortunes the King rejoyced no less then reason was, having established his Country at home, subdued his enemies abroad, and gotten an Heir to succeed him in his Kingdom, he could have defired no more of God, if the minde of man could ever be satisfied, which the more it shain,

the more it covereth.

ır

ÇĽ

he

SF

ad

ore

ge, er-

ade

and

fier

law his

f a

did

ilde

hich

, at an the

pen

WOI

unto

 $I_{ij}$ 

bals

As Dominion increaseth, so doth also the define to have more; which was well feen in Philip, that It I did compais how to grow great by taking from his Ne ghbours ; and lay always like a Spy, waiting an occasion how to catch from every man; whereunto he had an opportunity offered by the Cities of Greece! for whiles one did cover to subdue another, and through ambition were at thite who thould be chief, by one and one, he brought them all into Sebjection, perswading the smaller States to move War against the greater; and to serve his purpole, contrived the ways to fer them a together by the ears. But at length, when his practiles were perceived, divers Cities feating his increating power, confederated against him as their Commin Enemy , but chiefly the Thebans : Never helest, necessity compelling, they chose him afterwards to be their Captain General against the Laedemonians, and the Phyceias, who had foots. the Temple of Apollo. This War he hon arrabay at chieved, fo that by ponthing of their Secureda

B 3

he got himself great Renown in all those parts. But in the end; observing both those Countries to be brought low with the War, he found means to subdue the one and the other; compelling, as well the Overcomers, as the Overcome, to be his Tributaries. Then he made a Voyage into Cappadocia; where killing and taking pritoners all the Princes thereabout, he reduc'd the Province to the subjection of Macedon. He conquered Olinibus, and after invaded Thrace: For whereas the two Kings of that Country were at variance about the limits of their Kingdoms, and chose him to be their Arbitrator, he gladly took it upon him: But at the day appointed for the Judgment, he came not thither like a Judge with a Councel, but like a Warriour with an Army; and to part the firife, expelled both Parties from their Kingdoms. By this time young Alexander was twelve years of Age, and began to take great delight in the feats of War, shewing most manifest signes of a Noble Heart, and an excellent apprehension. He was very swift of foot; and one day at a solemn game of Running, called The Olympick Race, being demanded by some of his Companions if he would run with them; Gladly, ( faid he ) if there were Kings Sons to run with me. On another time, when certain Embassadours of the Perfians came into Macedon, Alexander, who in his Fathers absence took upon him to entertain them; and discoursing with them of divers things, in all his communication, there not passed not from him one Childish or vain word; but he enquired of them the state of their Country, the manners of the People, the distances of the Ways, the Power of

of Alexander the Great.

ę

e

d

1-

5

or

es

n-

át ii-

P٦

ne

0-

his

ly,

ne.

ot

ho

ain gs,

om

red

of

r of

the

the King, and the order of his Wars, with such like : So that the Embaffadours aftonithed thereat. effectmed the Greatness of the Father, to be much less then the Expectation of his Son; and that h Courage was much greater then was to be looked for in one of his years. As often as Tydings came! that the King his Father had conquered any firong or rich Town, or obtained any notable. Victory, he never feemed greatly joyful; but would fay to his Play-Fellows, My Father doth fo many greater Alls, that he will leave no occasion of any remarks able thing for us to do : Such were his words, fuch was his talk : whereby it was eatie to conjecture what a Man he would prove in his Age, who so began in his Youth. His delight was not fet on any kinde of pleasure, or greediness of gain, but in the only exercise of Vertue, and delire of Honour: The more Authority that he received of his Father, the less he would feem to bear. And although by the great increase of his Fathers Dominion, it feems ed that he should have the less occasion of Wars 5 vet he did not fet his delight in vain pleasure, or heaping up of treasure, but sought all the means he could to use the feats and exercises of War, coveting fuch a Kingdom, wherein for his Vertne and Prowels he might purchase Fame and Immortality. That hope never deceived Alexander, nor any other, that had either will or occation to put the same in practise.

The Charge and Government of this young Prince was committed to fundry excellent Masters, but chiefly to the Philosopher Aristotle, whose Vertue, Learning and Knowledge King Philip fo much, eltermed,

B 4

The Life and Death Book I.

effectmed, that he would often fay, he took no greater comfort in the birth of his Son, then that he was provided with fuch a Mafter as Acilotle under proofs Tojtion he remained ten years. Many things these napned besides " whereby it was conjectured, that Alexander (hould prove a man of great valour : For when his Father fent to Delphos to receive anfwer of the gods who should be his Successor, the Oracle delivered . That Suob a one should not succoed bim only , but also be Lord of the World . rehom Bucephalus would fuffer to fit upon bis Back. This Beephalus was a passing fair Horse, hery, and full of courage, whom Philip had bought of a Thefalian for thirteen Talents; and because of his hercenes he kept him in a Stable impaled with iron Bars , yet for a this, he remained to full of spirit, that none could approach to dress him; whereof the King was fo wary, that he lought the means to be rid of the Horfe. It fortuned that Alexander came one day with his Father into the Stable; What Horfe ( land he ) is spoiled bere for want of good Horsemanship ? And to coming more near, and gently clapping him, without any great difficulty he got upon his Back, and uling both the Spur and the Rod to the uttermost, he ran and managed him to up and down, that the Horfe kemed proud of this Rider: and having rode his hil, he brought the Horse back again. As he alighted, the King for joy imbraced and kiffed him, and with tears in his eyes faid; O Son; feek out for some other Kingdom suitable to the greatness of they beart , for Macedonia cannot fuffice thee's So that even then the prudent Father did pretage, that Al his poller-

ballionity.

Book I. of Alexander the Great.

fions were far infushicient for his Sons beart. this kning Philip determined to make Wa all Greece, for the maintainance whereof, he tho it great advantage if he might hill win his tium, a famous City on the Sea Coalt. Wherefor Realm to his Son, being then hitten years of he laid liege to the Town, which made him refistance: When he had dispended all his aid and treasure about the siege, he was driven to narrow a thirt, that to jurnish nimely with mon he became a Pyrate, and roved on the Sea, he rook 170 Ships, the sport whereof he did among his Souldiers . And leaft his whole Arm thould be derained about the liege of one City , he felected the choicest Bands of all his Souldiers, and marched into Cherfonefine, where he took and put to fack many Towns, and because his Son Alexan der was then about eighteen years of age, and had thewed an evident proof of his Vertue and Manhood m all his Attempts, his Father fent for him thirther, to the intent, that under him he might learn and exercise all the feats belonging to a Souls dier; and with him made a Voyage into Scythi upon no other quarrel but to spoil the Count Thus uling the way of Merchants, with the gain of one War he did bear out the charges of anoth After he brought the Country, in Judiction, be cause no riches of gold nor filver was to be gotten there, he brought from thence 20000 men. men and children, belides a great mulutude Cattel, with 20000 choice Marcs to make a Race in Masedon. In his return he was encountred by

is

Ш

ot

ns ler

ÚΤ

ed.

aď

hc ng

115

ic (i

The Life and Death Book I.

might have part of his Booty: Whereupon, debaing of the matter, from words they fell to fighting; in which King Philip was so wounded in his Thigh, that through the violence of the Thrust, the Horte was run through the body; and all men

judging him to be flain, the Booty was loft.

As foon as he was recovered of his wound, his diffembled grudge against the Athenians burst out so far, that he made open War against them; by season whereof, the Thebans seeing the danger so near at hand, gave succour to their Neighbours; fearing, if the Athenians were overcome, the last fury of the Wars would turn upon them. Wherefore the Cities that a little before were mortal Enemies one to another, combined together in one League, and fent their Embassadours through all Greece; holding it most expedient, with a common Aid, to withfland a common Enemy: Some confidering the peril to be universal, stuck to the Atheniins; and fome observing Philip's power increaling, and the other decreating, took part with Philip. In this War, Alexander had the charge of one of the Wings committed to him, wherein his Noble Courage did well appear; for he deported himself so valiantly, that he feemed nothing inferiour to his Father, nor any elfe, but by most just defert got the honour of the Victory; yet he was defrauded thereof by the envy and fleight of his Father, as he himself complained afterwards. This Battel was fought at Cheronea; wherein, though the Asbemians were the greater number, yet were they overcome by the Macedonians, who were the fewer, but

#### Book I. of Alexander the Great.

but expert Souldiers , by reason of their lone and continual practile in Wars: Nevertheless, the thenians ( as men not unmindful of their former honour ) loft their lives valiantly. That day made an end of all the Grecians glory, as well of their large Rule and Government, as of their most Ancient Freedom and Liberty; which being hardly won, and long time kept, was thus loft in a moment. For thele things, and many other experiments of Valour and Prowers in young Alexander, although the King his Father did bear him lingular affection and favour; yet nevertheles, by certain occasions ensuing, that love was unhappily broken a For Philip being married to Olympias, Mother of Alexander (as is faid before) took to Wife, befides her, a Lady called Chespatra; whereupon fell great discord and unkindness between the Fatherland the Son: The occasion was given by one Attalw, Uncle to Cleopatra; who being at the new Marriage, exhorted the Macedons to make prayers to the gods, to fend the King and new Queen a lawful Heir to succeed in the Kingdom of Macedon? Whereat Alexander being moved; Vile man as thou art (faid he) dost thou count me a Bustard? And with that word flung the Cup at his head. The King hearing this, role up, and with his Sword drawn ran at his Son, who by the nimbleness of his body avoided the stroke, fo that it did him no harm Hereupon, Alexander inveighing against him with many tharp and despiteful words departed , and went with his Mother into Epirus. Nevertheless, foon after, by the means of one Demoratus a Gorinthing, who perswaded the King that this discord

X D A T T CU

ne

u-

Co

115

ot

ed

25

tel

4-

ney

er,

but

11

Was

was nothing for his Honous, Alexander was fent for again, and much folicitation was used before they could be well reconciled a Wherefore , cocontian this Attonement, there was a Marriage made tween Alexander the Brother of Olympias ( whom Philip by the expulsion of Arisba had made King of Epirus ) and Cleopatra the new Queens Daughfer. The Triumph of the day was remarkable, according to the State and Magnitheence of fuch two Princes; the one bellowing his Daughter, and the other marrying a Wife. There were fer forth fuhdry Interludes and Inventions, pleasant to behold: And as King, Philip (between the two Alexanders, the one his Natural Son, the other his Son-in-lawy was passing through the press without any Guard, one Panfanias, a young man of the Nobility of Macrdon, when no man inspected any such thing, suddenly flew him; making the day dedicated to joy and triumph, to be heavy with lamentation This Pausanias, being a Boy, one Attalus inforced to the unlawful use of his Body; and not content to do fo himfelf, at another healt he caused divers of his Familiars to abuse him likewise: which shame and villany grieved the young man fo fore, that he complained to the King; whom although the foulnels of the fact, moved much, yet for the love he bare to Attalus, and for the respect of his services he did forbear to animadvert against him. This Artales was very near unto the King, and in special favour, by reason he was Kinsman unto the Queen Cleopatra, whom Philip had lately married ... He was allo Elected Captain General of the Kings Army prepared to pals into Afis, being one that was:

of Alexander the Great. look In was both valiant in his person; and no less politic in the discipline of War. Upon these respects, the King endeavoured by all the means he could to sacitie Paufanias, (incenfed with indignation and revenge) as well by giving him great gifts, as by placing him honourably among those Genelemen that were for the Quard of his Person. But all this could not appeale the rege of his implacable anger, which wrought fo in him, that he determined to be revenged, not only upon Attalus that did the villany, but also upon the King that would not administer Justice; which determination he put in effect, as is faid before. Many things might be faid more of the doings and fayings of this Philip; but one thing above all others is to be noted, that although, for the most part, he was exercised in the travel of the Wars, and in Victorious Actions, yet had he ever such affection to the Studies of Humanity and good Learning, that he both did and spake many things worthy of Memory, which were both witty and pleafant. He lived 47 years and Reigned 25, being the three and twentieth King of the Macedonsers flow our bloom and Logar date, and every one of them laught hewro recever actiff their ancient Doctimions and Principalities. the first thing he undergook after he was king, was the fiveter punishment of as many as had conferred. hiel thers death, which performed, he celebrated designation of the state of the for his the Heart harbon eliablished it; and that much bearen there any mun could have impound in one of to reaght and tender years : For being of fome had in concepts and by tome others inflored to be enter EOW LINE

b

2

1

r,

4

人が必ら

d

tq

ot

ne

ha

u-

he

Je,

trial

en

He

gs

vas

### THE COND BOOK

NTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Alls of Alexander the Great , King of Ma-

7 Hen Philip was dead, his Son, who for the greatues of his Acts, was afterwards called Mexander the Great, took upon him the Kingdom, the 426 year after the building of Rome, being of the age of twenty years: His state stood at that time subject to much envy, hatred and hazard from all parts; for the Nations and Provinces, bordering upon him, could not well endure their present bon dage, and every one of them fought how to recover again their ancient Dominions and Principalities. The first thing he undertook, after he was King, was the fevere punishment of as many as had conspired his Fathers death; which performed, he celebrated his Funerals with great folemnity. As for his Estate, he soon established it; and that much better then any man could have imagined in one of fo young and tender years: For being of some had in contempt, and by some others suspected to be crucks towards

Book II. of Alexander the Great.

towards the one he deported himfelf to gallanthe that he took from them all contempt; and to the other fo gently, that their imagined fear of his cru disposition was clean taken away." He granted unto the Macedons freedom and priviledge from all Exactions and Bondage, except from the fervice of War : By which act, he got fo great favour and love amongst his people, that all affirmed by one confent, how the Person of their King was changed, and not his Vertue; his Name was altered, but not his Government. In the beginning of his Reign, Rebellion was made against him on all fides; but immediately, with an incredible courage and confiancy of minde, he appealed all the Tumults. That matter fet in order, he went to Corinth in Peloponnesses; where calling a General Councel of all the States of Greece, he was Elected Captain General against the Persians, who had af-Riched Greece with many overthrows, and at that present did possess the greatest Empire in the world. His Father had defigned this War before; but by the prevention of death, he brought not his intenion to effect. Whileft he was in preparation for this Enterprise, he was informed how the Athemans, the Thebang and Lacedemonians, were revoleed from him, and were Confederate with the Perflans, by the perfections of the Orator Demothenes. who was corrupted by them with a great from of money : For the Reformation whereof, Alexande to fuddenly advanced with his Army, that when he came upon them, they could fearcely believe he should be prefent, having not received the least inelligence of his March. In his way he treated with

d

οl

ed

er 60

in

13

be Life and Death e Thefalians, and used to them such gentle rds, and apt per walions, by putting them in remembrance of his Fathers benefit, and of the Aucleut Kindred between them by their discent from Hercules, that by an Universal Decree of the whole Country, he was created their Governour, and they delivered up unto him all his Treatures and Revamues: So great was the celerity that this young made all fuch to fear him as before were revolted, or had him in contempt. As the Athenians were the fift that failed a lo they first of all repented. extolling with praises Alexanders young years (which before they had despiled ) above the vertue of the Ancient Conquerours. They also sent Emballadours to require of him Peace, whom he fore rebulked when they came to his prefence; but yet was content at length to remit their, offence; And though Demostbenes was cholen one of the Emba fadours, yet he came not in his light; but being on his way as far as Cytheron, he returned again to Athen; which either was for fear that he had to often inveighed against Philip, and stirred the Athenians against him; or else to take away the fulpition of himself from the King of Persia, of whom (it was faid) he received a great fum of Gold to oppole the Macedons. The fame thing was objected against him by Aschines in an Oration where he faith; For the present the Kings Gold doth bear bis charges, but that cannot tall him long - fes ing no riches can suffice his produgal life. texander had pacified the Tumulis that were begun in Greece, before he would pals his Army

Book II. OF Advander Hero

dia the made a journey against the Peons, the ribale, and the Illyrians, because he unde they were confpiring together, and bordered his Country, and were accustomed to invade it upon every necession to he thought them, to be no way neglicited before he removed his Army from the City of Amphipolis : He therefore marched against the Thracians, who at that time were not under

the Rule or Law of any.

itle

TC-

Am-

am ole

Jey

VJ-

ing

he

ed,

ere

d,

tue

m-

one

yot

三年8日20日

old

m,

loth

fes-

In ten days he came to the Mount Hemne, in the top whereof he found them heamped with a Powen to relit his passage: Initead of Trenches, they had impaled themselves, with their Carriages, arols the Sercialing purposing there to withstand him; and it they thould be invaded any other way then by the Streights, they did determine to roul their Carriages down the Hill upon the Macedon's to mean their array. That Device was put in execuion but the Souidiers had received before intructions by Alexander, as occasion should lerve, enher to open their array to let the Chariots and Wheels pals through them, or elle to fall flat upmene ground, and by covering their bodies with heir Targets, to avoid the danger : They followd their infructions; and when the Chariots were offed by they with a great courage and shout mounted up against their Enemies, and in a moment put them to flight. When Alexander w ed the Mountain, he entred into the Country of the ribale, as far as the River of Ligen: When Syrwir Kingol that Fare underflood of his approach t lent his Wife, and his Children, with luch of his ople as were not meet for the wars, into an Illand

18 The Life and Dista Book II.

called Pensa, scituate within the River of Danchar; into which Island, the Threeians bordering with
the Tribals; were fled also: It was not long after
that Symno himself fled thither in like manner.
The rest of the Tribals that were not with the
King, wishdrawing themselves an other Island,
where they kept themselves against Alexander: But
he by policy sought the means to draw them out of
their strength, whereby he sew of them to the number of three throughed, and the rest sled away; so

that of prifoners but few were taken.

After this Battel he marched towards the River of Danubius to the Island whither the Thracians and the other Tribals were fled "They made notable refiffance against him; which they might the better do, by reason Alexander wanted Boats to pass Pato the Island; the Banks whereof were so high and fleep, that they would not be mounted on but with great difficulty, the River running violently fwife I by reason that the Stream was there driver into a streight. When Alexander perceived the impollibility to affault them, he withdrew to another place where getting a few Boats, in the night h valled over one thouland five hundred Horlemen and four thousand Footmen. With that company he fet upon a people called Gerry, who flood in or der of Battel, on the further lide of the River, with fourtheuland Horlemen and ten thouland Footmen of purpose to hop the Macedons passage: But b their hidden coming over, the Geres were to afraid

Mexander in one night, without a Bridge, to pa

Book II. of Alexander the Great. 19
his Army over the broadest and deepest River in all
Exercise.

This struck such a sear and terrour in their hearts, that they sled into the Woods, Mountains and Defart places, leaving their City desolate; which was

taken by Alexander.

ét

r.

he

d

ut

ot

m-

· fo

ver

ans

ta-

the

oals

igh

but

otly

ven

im

the

t he

nen

anı

or

with

nen

f b

faid

Syrmus King of the Tribols, with the Germany, and the other Inhabitants upon the River of Danabius, sent their Embassadours thither unto Alexander, to enter with him into friendthip : and he condescending unto their requests, inquired of the Germans what thing it was which in the world they doubted most; thinking indeed that the terrour of his name had been the most fearful thing unto them. But when they understood his meaning, they aniwesed, That they doubted greatly the falling of the Skie: with whole prefumptuous answer Alexander was nothing moved, nor further replied; only he laid, the Germans were a proud people is and thereupon dismissed them. As he was going from thence against the Agriant, and the Peans, he was advertiled, that Clims Bardelins had rebelled, and had confederated with Glaucius, the King of the Thanaunts. He had also intelligence, that the people of Anteri would give him battel in his passage: wherefore he committed to Lagarns, King of the Agrians, who was well beloved of King Philip, and ho lets in the favour of Alexander), the charge to go against the Anteriaur, and promiled him, upon his return, to give him his Sister Gyna in Marriage; and Alexander himself, with great celerity, marched against Cliens and Glaucius, whom in fundry battels he o-. vercame. Whiles Alexander was about these things,

he received intelligence, that divers Cities in Greece. and specially the Thebans, had rebelled which thing moved him much, and was the cause that he returned with speed to suppress these Commotions: The I behand, in the mean feafon, befreged the Cafile of Thebes, wherein was a Garrison of Macedons, and endeavoured by all means to be Mafters of it: Alexander, by great journeys, advanced to their rescue, and encamped with his Hoast near to the City. Such as bare rule among it the Thebant, when they faw him come contraty to their expeaation, and doubting whether fuch aid should come to them from other Cires as was promifed, began to consult how to proceed: At length, by a general confent, they determined to abide the adventure and extremity of the War.

The King in the mean feafon flood at a flay, gir ving them space to be better advised, and alter their resolution: For he was of opinion, that no one City would have made refistance against so great a Power as he had, being above 30000 Footmen, and 3000 Horfemen; all old Souldiers, and expert in the travels of War: The trust of their expellence and valour had caused him to underrake the War against the Persians. Truly, if the Thebans had given place to Fortune and time, and would have required Peace, they might easily have obtained, his delire was so great to pals into Afia against the Persians. But the Thebans being determined to try their force, and not to make any fuit, fought against the Macedons, far exceeding them in number, with great sciolution; but whilest the Battels were joyning, the Garrison of the Cattle iffined out

Book If. of Alexander the Great. 121

upon the Thebans backs, whereby being inclosed, they were vauquished, their City taken, spoiled, and utterly razed: Which extremity Alex ander used of purpose, because he thought the rest of the Grecians (being atraid by their example) would be the more quiet, while he should be in the Wats of Afia. To gratifie the Phoceans and Plate ins, his Confederates, which brought many acculations against the Thebans, he slew fix thousand of them, and fold thirty thousand as flaves; the money thereof amounted to the lum of four hundred and forty Talents : yet he spared all the Linage of Pindarus the Poet; whereby he would wirness unto the world, the favour he did bear unro learned men.

0

a

l,

a |-

0

it

rt

i-

10

15

ld

1

to he

O-

ds

at

h

In this City of Thebes was a notable Woman, called Timoclea, whom when a Captain of Thrace did ravish, and would have inforced her to confeis her money, the brought him to a Well where the faid ) all her precious Treasure was hidden, and whileh he flooped down to look into the Well, the thruthim in , and threw many great times after him, whereby he was liam. For this bag the being committed to Prilon, and afterwards brought before Alexander, he asked her what the was a She answered without fear, that the was Sifter to Theagener, who being Elected Captain General against King Philip his Father, manually died for the Liberty of Greece: whole flournels and confrancy the King marvelled to much, that he caused her, with her Children, to be fet at liberty.

The Athenians had fo great pity and compulsion. of the Estate of the Thebans, that contrary to the Commandment of Alexander, they received into

22 The Life and Decib Book II.

their City such of them as escaped; which King Mlexander took in such displeasure, that when they sent Embassadours the second time to demand peace, he would not grant atonement upon any other conditions, but that such Orators and Captains which had stirred them to Rebellion, should be delivered unto his hands: But at length it was so carried, that the Orators were reserved, and the Captains banished; who straight sled to Darius King of

Perfia-

At fuch time as Alexander affembled the Grecians in Ilibmos for the determination of his journey into Perfia, many Orators and Philosophers came to vifit him; Diogenes only, that remained about Colexander nothing at all : whereat he marvelled much, and went himself to visit him , as he was warming of his felf in the Suns He asked Diogener, if he had leed of any thing that he might do for him: To whom Diogene, gave neither reverence nor thank ut willed him to frand out of his Sunwhose behaviour and words Alexande thine took to great delight; that turning to those that were with him, be laid, If he were not Alexander, be (hould with to be Diogenes.

When he had put in order the affairs of Greece, committing the Rule thereof, tog thes with the Realm of Macedon, to the Government of Antipater, whom he most trusted: In the beginning of the Spring, he marched to Hettespont with his whole Army, which he transported into Asia with incredible

tpeed and diligence.

When they were come to the further thore, Alex

Book III of Alexander the Great.

ander with great force threw a Dertrinto the En mies Land, and as he was a med. Josped out of the Ships with great joy, and there furnised a ma-king petition unto the gods, what they would rough lafe to admit him King of that Land Grom the he marched towards his Enemies , and forbed his Souldiers to make any spoil of the Country's perfinading them to space that schools was their own. and not to dettroy that Land which they came to pollels He had not inches Army above the number of 32000 Footmen, and 5000 Horfemen, and but 280 Ships & wherefore it is thard to judge whether it be more wonderful, that she conquered the World, or that he durft attempt the conquest theres. of with fo finall a power. To fuch a dangerous Enterprize, he chose that out the young men in the first flower of their Age, but the old Souldiers of whom the most part, for their doing communicate in Wars, thould according to the Cuttom be februt liberty, and excused from the service of the wars, laving at their own pleasure: And their was on Captain, nor any other that did bear Office in his Army, under the age of fixty years; to that the Souldiers feemed to be School-mafters of the Wars and the Captains, for their gravity, appeared to be Senators in some Ancient Commonwealth? which was the occasion; that in the Fight none of them minded flying i but every one, confident of the Victory, did not trust to his free, but to his handsod , thirty be a well all your thorner

B

S

o e

1

e,

lĈ

le

Alexander, who every where made Sacrifice, did the most folemnity at Troy, upon Achilles Tomb, of whom he was descended by the Mothers side: He

en . C

jud ed

The Elfa bid Delib Book M.

ed him most happy of all men before him, beequie in facts glory he died young, and had his Acts fee forth by fuch a one as Humer was. From thence he pailed forwards into the Dominions of Darius King of Perfts, who being the Son of Arfann, and the tourteenth King after Cyrus, had the possession of the Monarchy of the whole Dajtern part of the World. The chiefelt cause that moved Alexander to invade him, was to be revenged of the damages and destructions wherewith the Predecestors of Durine had afflicted the Country of Greece pand to for demanding Tribute of Philip his Fathers for the which he fent a proud and prefimpruous. Himballage, calling himself, The Hing of Kings, and Kinsman of the Gods. Lattly, he had written to Alexandery and called him this Vallal & and page Commission to his Lieucenants; that they should bear that Mad Boy (the Son of Philip) with Rods, and afterwards bring him to his Pretence in hings Apparel': And furthermore; that they should flink both Ships and Marriners and convey all the Souldiers that (hould be left alived beyond the Ruit Sie. They therefore purpoling to execute the Kines Commandment, affembled their Power ar the Ri-Tray from Proposition , having to the plumber of 20000 Footmen, and as many Horfemon powith whom they had taken the ground, on the enter tide of the River, where Alexandre with needs piles ver; whereof when he was advertised, thoughthe faw apparent danger in the Enterprize, to hight in the water, and the Once against his Enemies who had the advantage of the higher Banks, yet upon a fingular

Bookel. of A examining the court fingular trust to his own good Fortune, and courage of his Souldiers; he charged upon the la-nemy, the hose source and the charged upon the la-

ice

ius

nd on

he ler a.

of di-

br

ild

4

of

th

he

in

ho

100 ar

At the first he was fore encountred; and p se at dangor co bagoule - but at length 46 quilled and overthrew them's In doing where here neither wanted policy in himlest, nor langular tel of the Persians, twenty attourned Foot and two hundred and they. Horses and of the Michael Bac whitey found This Wichory was greatly he would the ous to Alexander's designess the steel he would the City of Sarahi , being the chief Archeth the Phil one had for the Makeship of the Seas : Units which the Country of Lynn,

se gave liberey to live under these win Leave 1 of He got also under his possession the City of Eobefies, which, the fourth day after the Battel, was shandoned by the Garrison which Daning set there. In the mean feafon, there came Embaffadours from Magnesio, and from the Triallians, proffering the delivery of their Cities. Parmenio was fent to them with three thousand Footmen, and two hundred Horsemens with which Power he won Miletum, that made-strong opposition: And marching from thence towards Hilicarnaffus, he got all the Towns thereabouts at the first approach, and afterwards belieged Hilicarns flus it lett's which with great travel he overcame at length, and razed it to the ground.

As Alexander entred into Caria, Ada, the Oucen of that Country, who had been spoiled of all her Dominions by Orontobates, Daries Lieuremant (faving of one from Gity called Aliada.) mer with Alexander, and adopted him for her for and Heir. He would not refute the Name, and the proffer of her Liberality, but skid refture to her again the Command of her own City: And belides, for the Memorial of her Benevolence, he put the whole Country of Caria under her Rule and Subjection From thence he marched into Licia and Pamphylias to the intent, that by getting the pollificon of the Sca-coalis of those Countries, he might cause the Sca-coalis of those Countries, he might cause the had inbdued the people of Palistic, he entered into Physia, by which Country he was inforced to pass and marched towards Darine, with whom he had a great delive to encounter, having understood that he was coming against him with a formidable Assembly of the was coming against him with a formidable Assembly.

plantic whole the too in direction Succession Succession of the second section of the section of the section of the second section sections section sectio

As Absendered into Care, Adaptine Owen of the County of the County of the County of the County Design Learning County (1).

Design of the County County Learning Learning (1).

ook III. of Alexander Mewreat. 2

## eccedece a du en e

## THE BOOK

O F

## QUINTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Alls of Alexander the Great & Ring of Ma-

A Lessader to levy Recruits out of Pelapomejov, elablished the Countries of Licia and Hamphylia, and removed his Army to the City of Celenase Through this City there ran, at the same time, the Riven of Martia, made famous by the Poetry of Green; whose Head springing out of the top of a high Mountain, and falling down upon a Rock beneath, makes almost deafning murmates flowing from thence, and watering the helds round about, without increase of any itream faving his own a the colour whereof being like unto the calm Sea, gave occasion to the Poets to seign how the Nymphs, for the delight they took in that River, did chuse their dwelling under that Rock; So song as it runneth within compass of the walls, it keepeth his town name; but when it consets without where the fream is more swift and vehement, it is then called byess.

Alexander did enter into this Town, being for faken of the Inhabitants, and perceiving they were fled into the Castle, which he determined to wis before he departed, he first sent to summon then by an Herald, who declared, that except they would yield themselves, they should suffer the extremity of the Law of Arms. They brought the Herald in to an high Tower, which was ftrong both by Na sure and Art, willing him to confider the beigh and strength shereof, and to declare unto Alexen der, that he had not a full dimension of the thrength of the place, for they did know it to be impregpublics and if the work thould fall, yet were the ready to die in their Allegiance. Notwithflanding their words, when it came to the point, that they faw themselves beinged, and all things were scarce, they took Truce for forty days; with this Compafitions That if they were not refened by Darus with instal time, they would render it up into bis band. which they did afterwards at the day appointed, when they law no Succours coming, am

To that place there teams Hamballacours to him from Albert , making request, that fuch of their City as were taken purfeners at the Battel fought upon the River Granke, might be refrored to thein. -To whomen wer was made; that when the Wars of Perfia were once brought to an end; both theirs, and all orliers that were Greeks, should be restored

cocherciberty, will sell in they tred ingreden

Alexander had his prefent care and refolution always upon Doring, who lie knew had not yet paffed the River Embracer . He affembled therefore all his Powers together, purpoting to adventure the hazard Maria In

A CENTREST CO GOOD Battel. The Country was called through; plentiful of t of Cities: yet there was one of great Anti-Mydain The River of Sangara do ough it; and it flandeth in the mid way between Seas of Pontus and Cilicia, being judged to be narrowest part of Asia, by reason of the Seas hich lye on both lides prepresenting the form of nd that doth lye betwint those Seas, they would in both together. Alexander having brought this ty under his obeylance, entred into the I Jupiter, where he law the Charlot wherein My the Builder of the City, was accultomed to e: The same, in the furniture and outward aptrance, differed little from other common Chaots; but there was in it a thing notable, which as a Cord folded and kuit with many knots, one intricate within another, that no man could perive the manner of it, neither where the know gan, nor where they ended : Hereupon the Counmen had a Prophecy, That be frould be Lord of I Alia, that could undo that endless know. This offert the King with a marvellous defire to become e fulfiller of the Prophecy: there stood a great umber about him, both of Pbrygians, and of Malone, the one part of them expecting the event, d the other fearing the rath prefumption of their ing, for as much as they could perceive by no ion how the Knot thould be undone: The King mfelf also doubting, that the failing of his purde in that matter, might be taken as a token of

hen

oul

Dit

l in

Na.

ing

hey

ierr

ghe

in.

ars

Irs,

red

**Ted** 

his

The Life and Death Book II

the thing What is the master (quoth he) which was it he undone? and striving no longer how to unknit it, he with his Sword cut the Cords afunder thereby either illuding, or else sulfilling the effect

of the Prophecy.

This being done, Alexander purpoled to find out Darius wherefoever he went; and to the inter to leave all things clear behinde his back, he mad Amphisorus Captain of his Navy upon the Coast of Hellefront, committing the charge of the Field Army to Egilochus: They two had Commilio o deliver the Islands of Lesbos, Scios and Coor, from the hands of the Perfianc; and for the provision of their charges, had appointed to them lifty Talents and lent to Amparer, and fuch others who ha the Governance of the Cities of Greece, fixty Tallents: He gave order, that fuch as were his Confe derates, should with their own power of Ships de fend the Seas of Hellespone, according to th League betwixt them. It was not yet come to h knowledge that Memion was dead, whom he mo suspected; well knowing, that if he moved not a gainst him, no man should be his stop before h came to Darnes.

Alexander came to the City of Ancira, where he made his Musters, and so entred into Paphlagonia whereunto the Grecians border, of whom it is as the Venest in Germany are descended: all this Courtry submitted to him, and gave him Riedge, bein excused from Tribute, seeing they never paid an to the Pappens. Cases was Captain there, whe taking with him the Band of Souldiers that we

bok III. of Alexander de Creats stely come out of Macedon: marched into Cappe-bein: but During hearing of the death of Memore, was no left enough therewith then the cafe required s for their all other hope fet apare, he determined to try the matter in person; for he condemned all things that had been done by his Deputies, belieing Courage and Conduct to be wanting in many them, and that Fortune had failed in them all: He came therefore to Babylon, where he encamped. and affembled all his Forces together in light of the onty, because he would show the greater Courage's and using the ensample of Xercer in taking of his Musters; he entrenched so much ground about, as was able to receive ten thousand men, within the which he lodged in the night fuch as had been mufleted in the day; and from thence they were beflowed abroad in the plain Country of Mesopera-The number of his Horlemen and Footmen were innumerable, and they yet seemed in fight to be more then they were. There were of the Bersans an hundred thousand, of whom thirty thouand were Horlemens of the Medians, ten thouland Horsemen; and thirry thouland Footmens of the Bathrians, two thousand Horsemen with broad Swords and light Bucklers, and ten thouland bootmen with like weapons: There were of the demensions forty shouland Footmen; and feven thousand Horsemen : The Hircanians, of great estimation amongst those Nations; had list thousand lorsemen: The Dervicens were forty thousand potmen, armed with Pikes; whereof part had no cade of from but the points of them dried in the ire: There were elfo of the fame Nation two theufand

un der ffed

find

iter

0 0

ield (Go

ron

ents

onfe

s de

o hi

mo

en M

a the whole and Death Brokett. find Horizmen. There sime from the Coffici Sea eight designed Footmen; and two hundred Hotels-tions: And with them of the saide blassons of Afric, two thousand Footmen; and four thousand Honesmen To the increase of these numbers, there were chirty shoulded Mercenary Souldiers that were Greeke in Halle would not fuffer to call fon the Mareboliane, Sogdians and Indian; with others the Inhabitants of the Red Sea . Nations which had minnes fearcely known to their four King . Thus Dering wanting nothing less then the multitude of men, greatly rejoyced to behold them; and puffed up with the vanity and flattery of the great men shens, an expert Man of War ( who for the difpleasure that Alexander did beat him, was hanished the Country ) and asked him, if he thought not that company fufficient to overshow the Macedone? Whereat Charidemas, without respect of the Kings pride or of his own Ellare, andwered Peradventure, Sir, you will not be content to her the cruth, and except I tell it presently, it shall be too late hereafter: This great preparation, and imighty Army of yours, gathered of the multitudes of to many Nations, raifed up from all parts of the Orient is more fearful to the Inhabitets hereabouts, then terrible to your Enemies: Your men thine in Colours, and glitter in Armour of Gold, exceeding to much in riches, that they which have not feen them with their eyes, cannot conceive any fuch thing in their mindes: But contrariwife, the Macedone being rough Soundiers, without any fuch excels, be terrible to behold a The Fronts of their Battels

te

book III. Of Alexander the Great. 33 bartels stand close together, always in strength, surnished with Pikes and Targets for defence: That which they call the Phalanz, is an immoveable square of Foot, wherein every Band stand close so each other; joyning weapon to weapon: Every Souldier is obedient to that which is commanded, ready at his Captains call, whether it be to follow his Emsigne, to keep his Array, to stand still, to run, to setch a compass, to change the order of the Battel, to sight on this side, or that side; every Souldier can do these things as well as the Captains:

And because you shall not think Gold and Silver to be so effectual to this matter, they began and observed this Discipline, Poverty being Master: when they be weary, the ground is their bed; they are fatished with such meat as they finde by chance; and

they measure not their theep by the length of the night. Think you the Horsemen of Thessay, the Acharans and Asolians, which be invincible Men of war, will be repulsed with Slings or Staves burned in the fire? It behove the you to have like Force to op-

ole, and to be served of the same condition of men;
My counsel is therefore, that you send this Gold
and Silver to levy Souldiers out of those Countries

rom whence they come.

le+

Te

re

ä+

he ad

us of

ed en #iC-

il.

ot of list ar be

> Depine was a man of a milde and tractable dispotion, if the height of his Estate had not altered to goodness of his Nature; which made him so impatient to hear the truth, that he commanded to aridemus to be put straightways to death, being man that was fled to his protection, and that had given him right profitable counsel: When he was using towards his death, he less not his liberty to

> > fpeak,

ipcak, but laid. There is one at band shat shall, revenge my death, for he against whom I have given shee counsel, shall punish thee for not following my advice. And thou being thus altered with the liberties thou hast, being now a King, shall be an example to such as shall come after; that when they commit themselves to Fortune, they clearly forget their names. Whilest Charidenus was speaking of these words, they which had the charge continuited unto them, did out him to death; whereof the King atterwards took over-late to pentance; confessing him to have spoken the truth, and caused him to be busied. There was one Thymones, the Son of Menter, a young man of great activity, to whom Darius gave the charge of all the Forreign Souldiers, (in whom he had great confidence willing him to receive them at Pharnabasas hands; and gave to Pharnabasus the Rule that Memnon had before.

Thus Daries being careful of the great builties he had in hand, whether it were through pensive nels of minde, or that his sancy did divine things to come, was continually troubled with Visions in his sleep: He dreamed that the Macedons Carbo was on hire; and shortly after it learned to him that Alexander was brought to his presence in such kinds of apparel as he himself did wear when he was in chosen King; and that Alexander should be carried on Horse-back through Babyles, and so vanish out of sight. Hereupon the Interpreters of Dreams be tokened good fortune to himself, because of the first seemed to be in his Enemies Camp, and so that Alexander, without any vesture of a King, appeared in the vulgar apparel of the Persians. Other

forgit,

Nook III. of Alexander the Great.

the Macedons Camp, fignified glory and victory to Alexander, and also the enjoyment of the Empire of Alexander appeared in the same Vestures that Darius did wear when he was chosen King. Care besides, and anxiety of minde (as often chanceth) brought

things palt again to remembrance.

rds

It was rehearfed how Darius in the beginning of his Reign, changed the Scabbard of his Sword from the Perfian manner, into the fathion that the Greeks used; whereupon the Caldees did prognosticate, that the Kingdom of the Persians should be tranflated to those whose fashion he had counterfeited : Notwithstanding, being glad of the interpretation of the Diviners, which was every where published concerning his fucces, and of the Vision that he feemed to have feen in his fleep, he commanded his Army to march forwards towards the River of En-Mrstes. It was the Ancient Custom amongst the Perfians, at Sun-tiling, to raile their Camp, and a warning of their fetting forwards, to be by the found of a Trumper at the Kings Pavilion, upon which there flood the Image of the Sun inclosed in Chrihal, shining so bright, that it might be seen thorowout the Camp : The order of their marching, was in this manner; the Fire, which they call Holy and Eternal, was carried before on silver Altars; next to them were the Diviners, linging after their country manner; there followed three hundred fixty five young men in Scarlet Robes, like in numer unto the days of the year; then came the Chaof confectated to Jupiter, drawn with white Hor-D 2

The Life and Death Book III. les, and a great Horse following, which they call The Horse of the Sun: Such as de ride upon the Palireys, did wear white Garments, bearing Rods of Gold in their hands. Next in order came ten Chariots, garnished and wrought with filver and gold : The Horsemen of twelve Nations followed in sundry forts of Armour; then came a Company that the Persians called Immertal, the riches of whose Apparel exceeded far the rest, they had all Chains of Gold, Coats embroidered with Gold, and Sleeves let with Pearl: These were followed, within a small distance, by a Band of tifteen thouland Souldiers, called Doripberii, reputed for the Kings Kinsmen and apparelled almost like Women; more notable the Armour they did wear. Such as were wont to har receive the Kings Robes, did ride next before the like. Chariot, upon the which Daring did fit on high with great pomp and magnificence, his Chariot be ing garnished on both sides with carved Images of their gods, made of filver and gold; the beam whereof were fer with Pearls and precious Stones with two Images of Gold standing thereupon, of cubit length, one opposite to the other; and over their heads an Eagle of Gold duplayed : But a mongst the rest, the Kings Apparel seemed marvel loufly fumptuous, which was of Purple empale white, with a Border imbroidered of Gold, and Gol den Faulcons, so wrought, as if they were fighting together. He was girt Effeminately with a Gird of Go'd, and the Sword that hung thereupon had Scabbard of Pearl: the Diadem which he did we upon his head, called by the Perfiam Cydaris, had

Ro

th

all

hea

t he

10

the W

on' wh

N

Ro

Book III. of Alexander the Great.

ne

of

2-

i:

n-

121

ol

fet Iall

ers,

EP JOE

to the

gh

be

5 0

ami nes

of

ove

rve

ald

Gol

itin

had

we nad

Ro

Roll about it of white and green. Next behinde the King came ten thousand Horsemen, who had all their Spears plated with filver, and their Spearheads guilded. He was inclosed on both fides with two hundred of the Bood Royal; at whose backs there followed thirty thousand Footmen, and afhem four hundred of the Kings Courfers. Within the diltance of one furlong, Silvambin, the Mother of Darius, was carried in one Chariot, and his Wife in another, the Train of their Women riding on Horseback. Next to them w nt lifteen Chariors, wherein the Kings Children were carried, and their Nurses, and their Eunuchs, which are greatly efleemed in that Country: After them followed three handred of the Kings Concubines, all apparelled the Queens: Then came lix hundred Mules, and hree hundred Camels that carried the Kings Trearecounted with a Band of Archers. The Wives the Kings Kinfmen, and the other that were aout the King, came riding nexts and after them great company of Slaves and Varlets. Last, came he Rereward lightly armed, whereof every Capin feverally with his own Company cloted the Arw ; fuch was the Order of Darius Holt.

But on the other fide, beholding Alexanders Arny, there was to be seen a great difference; neither
he Mon nor the Horse glissered to with gold and
recious Furnitures, but only with the brightness of
heir Harnels: They were obedient to their Cipms Command, always in a readiness to stay, or to
dvance; neither oppressed with the multitude, nor
estred with too much Baggage: They wanted not
any place, either ground for their encamping, or

Dã

victua's

victuals for their feeding, whereby their fmall numher was a ways fufficient when they came to fight is Whereas Darius, the Lord of so huge a multirude, through the straitness of the ground wherein he was driven to give battel, was compelled to use the fewnels of men, which he before had despised in the Enemy. Alexander appointed to Abistamines the of Cappadocia; and marching with his Army towards Cilicia, came to the place called Cyrus Camp, because Cyrus lodged there when he passed into Lived against King Crasus. This place was distant about fifty furlongs from the Streight entring into Cilicia: The Country-men use to call those Streighte Pyle, where the natural scituation of the place had made a Fortification, as it were with mans hands When Arfenes, Governour of Cilicia, understood of Alexanders coming, remembring what Memnon perswaded in the beginning of the Wars, he put it is execution when it was too late, wasting and destroying throughout Cilicia all such things as he thought might fland his Enemy in stead, leaving the Country waste which he was not able to defend : whereas it had been much better to have taken the Streight before his Enemies, where from the Hills lying over the way, he might without hazard have hindred his entry, or have distressed his passage : But he leaving a finall number for the defence of the Streight; retired himself back to waste the Country, which his part had been to defend from deftruction. By his departure it came to pass, that fuch as he left behinde, thinking themfelves betray ed, would not fo much as abide the fight of their Enemies, when a much less number had been sufficient

Book HE. of Alexander the Great. telem to have kept the pallage for the fell of Citicia is furth, that it is environed about with continual rough and freep Mountain, which riting from the Sea on the one lide, and facthing a compars about, joyneth again with the Sea on the other de. Though the part of the Mountain which ly-th furthest from the Sea, is plain and full of Rivers, mongst the which two are night famous, grange and Cydnus, but Cydinus molt especial, not lo much or its greathers, as the clearness of the water, which fom his wiff Spring runneth clearly through all the Country, and hath no other River supring here him to disturb the pureness of the stream stor which cause it remainesh always clear and cold, by calon of the Woods that do thidowall the banks. Fine hath confuned many Airiquities wi his that country, which are remembred of the Poets: there may yet be feen the foundations of the Cities Lirnefus and Cebellus, with the Cave and Grove. Corycian, where Saffeon groweth with many other things, whereof now remaineth but only their name.

mH

de, vas

the

108

be-

Lin

and

ato

bse

ad

ds.

of

er-

Ħ

le

he he

1 :

he

lis

Ve

ut

he

114

e.

at

٧×

-11

if. nt when Alexander entred the Streights before mentioned, and beheld the scituation of them, he never in all his life marve led more at his own selicity; consessing, that it had not been possible for him to have passed, it any had stood at desence against him; for that with stones only he might have been uverwhelmed, the Streight besides being so narrow, that there could not pass above sour in stont: so the increase of which dissipulty, the tops of the Mountains hong over the way, which in many places was broken and hollow with the streams that can

D4

down

down from the Hills. Alexander sent the Thraciant that were light armed, to scour and discover the ways, for fear the Enemies should lie there in ambush, and suddenly break forth upon him; He appointed also a Band of Archers to take the top of the Hill; which were willed so to march, that they might be always in a readiness to fight. After this manner he came to the City of Tarsus, which was fet on fite by the Persons, because Alexander should finde no harbour there; but Parmenio was sent this there with a choice number of Horsemen to quench the five; who understanding that the Enemies were shed away at the news of their coming, entered into the City, and by that means saved it from burning.

The River of Cydnus, spoken of before, did run through this City, where the King arrived about mid-day, it being in the Summer season, at what time the heat is no where more violent then in that Country: He took such delight in the pleasant-ness of the water, that he would needs bathe his body therein, to wash away the sweat and dust thereof; and being very hot, he entred taked into the water, in the fight of all his Souldiers, thinking it should be a contentation to them, to see that the Garments about his body were no other but such as

they commonly used themselves to wear.

He was no fooner entred; but all the parts of his body began to shake and tremble, his face waxed pale, and the lively heat was mortified in all parts of his body; his Servants took him up, and carried him into his Tent as one besides himself, and at the extreme point of death; then there was a great defolation and heaviness in the Camp; they wept, la-

mented

the

th

fa

on

CC IN Book lib. of Alexander the Great.

s L

3

0

n

t

t

ie.

it

ne as

is

ed

ts

ed he

c-

aed mented and bewailed that fuch a King, to Noble a Captain, as had not been feen in any Age, should be thus taken from them in the height of his Enterprize, and after fuch a manner, not in Battel flain by his Enemies, but bathing in a River. It arieved them, that Durin now being at haird, should obmin the Victory by fuch a chance without feeing of his Enemy; and that they should be enforced to eturn back again, as men vanquished, by those Countries through which they had passed before as Conquerours ; in which Countries all things bring. destroyed by themselves, or by their Enemies , they must of necessity die for hunger, though no man should pursue them. It became a question amongst themselves, who should be their Captain in flying away ? or what he were that durft fucceed Alexan der ? and though they might fafely arrive at the Sea of Hellespons, yet who should prepare them pufface there? When they had disputed these questions, their argument, by and by, was turned into compassion towards their Prince; lamening, as men out of their wits, that fuch a Flower of Youth. fuch force of courage as was in him, that their King and Companion in Arms, thould after this manner be plucked from them.

In the mean feason, Alexander began to draw his winde somewhat better; and when he came unto himself, he listed up his eyes, and began to know his friends that were about him: That the vehemency of his sickness somewhat asswaged, was perceived, in that he began to understand the peril he was in a But the solicitousness of his minde was a great hinderance unto his health; for tidings carre,

that

The Life and Death Book HI.

that Daring within five days would be in Cilibia; He could not but take it grievoully, that fuch a Ni-Boy should be plucked out of his hands through his infirmity; and that he thould be taken as one tyed in Fetters, and be put to fome fhameful and vile death. He called therefore to him both his Friends and Phylitians, and faid unto them ? Te fee in what an entremity of condition Fortune barb furprized me : metbinks the novie of mine Enemies doth ring in mine care, and I who moved first the War, am now aballenged, and provoked to the Fight. When Darius did meite to me fuch proud Letters, be was not ignorant of mine Estate; yet peradoenture he shall be deceived, if I may use mine own minde in recovery of mine own bealth. My case requireth no flack Medicines, nor flow Physicians ; I had rather die floutly once, then to confume long time in my recovery : pherefore if there be any hope or cumning in Physick, les it be now feen; and think that I feek not remedy fo much for mine own life, as I do for the care I bave to encounter with mine enemies. 1 detail the like

When they heard him speak these words, they were in great doubt of his sudden rashness; and therefore every one particularly did desire him, that he would not increase his peril through any passion, but suffer himself to be ordered by the advice of his Physicians: For they alledged, that unapproved Remedies were not suspected of them without cause, seeing his Enemy had gone about to corrupt such as were about him, by promising a thousand Talents to his Killer; they thought no man would be so bold to make any experience of Physick upon him, which for the want of tryal thereof might in any wise

Book His of Alexander the Great.

in it

d

13

èè

0

あいい中か

ルクロシー

et

fo

to

ey

id

at

n,

iis

eď

ſe,

as

its

fo

n,

n V

rife

wife give cause of suspinion. There was amon the excellent Physicians that came with Alexander out of Macedon, one Philip of Agarnam, who was preferred to him for prefervation of his health, and had faithfully served him from his Childhood, and therefore loved him with entire affection: He promiled to provide for the King an approved Remedy, but fuch a one as would work vehemently; but by the drinking thereof he doubted not (he faid) but to expulle the force of his disease. That promise pleased no man, but only him who in the proof thereof should abide the peril; for he could abide all things better then delay : Daries, and his powers were always in his eye; and he had an affured comfidence that the Victory should fall on his tide, if he might be able to fland in the fight of his men: the thing that only grieved him was ; that the Phylitian would not minister before the third day. In the mean feafon, Parmenio, whom of all his Nobility he. confed mon, had exhorted him by his Letter, that he should not commit himself to the cure of Philips for that he was corrupted by Darins with a thouland Talen's, and the promise of his Sister in Marriage. Those Letters brought the King into great jealoutic, and moved him to confider feeretly with himlest all those things that either fear or hope could put into his fancy. Shall I adventure (thought he) to drink this Medicine? What if it be poylon? Shall I not then be accounted the cause of mine own death? Shall I fulped the fidelity of my Phylician ? or shall I fuffer mine Enemy to kill me in my bed yet were it better for me to perilh by other mens Treafon, then thus to die through mine own faint heart. His minde

## The Life and Death Book HI.

nde being thus diverly perplexed, he would thew Contents of the Letter to no man, but fealed it with his own Ring, and laid it underneath his Pillow. Two days were passed in these imaginations, and the third day the Physitian came to his Beds-tide with the Medicine ready made: When the King faw him, he raifed himself upon his Elbow; and taking the Letter in his left hand, with the other hand took the Cop, and ftraightway supped it off: When he had so done, he delivered the Letter to Bhilip to read; and whileft he was reading, he beheld him continually in the face; supposing, that if he had been faulty, some token would have appeared in his countenance. When Philip had read the Letter, he shewed more tokens of displeasantness then of fear; and therewithal fell down upon his knees, and faid; Sir, I fee my life doth depend upon your health; but your Recovery shall declare, that I am falfly charged with this Treasons therefore when by my means you shall get your bealth, I trust you will not then deny me my life: In the mean feafon lay fear afide, and suffer the Phylick to work, and to have its operation; keep your minde quiet, and suffer not your self to be troubled with the superstitions carefulness of your friends; which though it proceeded of good will, is notwithstanding a great impediment unto your bealth.

His words not only satisfied the King, but made him to concein perfect hope of his recovery; and said unto Philips. If the gods would have granted thee to advise much thy self of a way to prove the confidence I have in thee, and the good will I hear thee, thou couldest never have chosen so good a one as this;

for

ok III. of Alexander the Great. notwithstanding the Letter, I drank off the Phy ick, believing thee to be no lest careful for declarate on of thine own truth, then for my bealth s and there with gave him his hand : Yet afterwards, when the Medicine began to work, it was such in operation, that it seemed to verifie Parmenia his accufation; for he fainted oft, and had much labour to draw his breath. Then Philip left nothing ved, or undone, that might ferve for his purp he laid warm cloaths to his body; and always as he fainted, revived him again with sweet savours : and when he perceived him once come to himfelf, he ceased not to feed him with discourse; and one while put him in remembrance of his Mother and ifters, another while of the great Victory that was at hand.

it

4

e.

d

T

0

F

Š

5

When the power of the Phylick once entred into his veins, there appeared straight in all parts of his ody manifelt tokens of health; Fuft quickness came to the Spirits, and afterwards the body reepvered his firength a great deal fooner then any man looked for: For after the third day that he had been n this fad condition, he walked in the light of the Souldiers, who wonderfully rejoyced to fee him: And they shewed no less affection ento Philip, whom every one severally imbraced, and gave him thanks, as if he had been a God. It cannot be expressed, schoes that Natural Veneration that Macedons me to bear unto their Prince, in what Reverence they pecially had Alexander, and how fervency they loved him They had conserved in his em On mion , that he could enterprise model t was furthered by the Divine Allitance ; and Fortune

The Life and Dealb Book III

Fortune was so favourable unto him, that his rash. hels was always an increase of his glory: his age being scarcely ripe wand yet sufficient for fo great things, did marvelloufly fet forth all his doings and many things; which out of the Wars would be counted lightness, were most acceptable to the Souldiers; as the exercifing of his body amongst them. his apparel not differing from the common fort, with his courage and forwardness in the Field: which gifts given him by Nature, and fome things befides done of policy, did get him both the love

and reverence of his people.

when Darins heard of Alexander's fickness, he marched towards Euphrates, with all the halle he could make in the conveyance of fo multitudinous an Army: He made there a Bridge, and in lifteen days paffed over it, his people having a great delire to get into Chitia before his Energy. Alexander had recovered his kreingth, and was come to a City called Solds, which the Inhabitants yielded unto him. and for two hundred Talents obtained affigrance: Notwithstanding he put a Garrison into the Casse. and there celebrated Plays and Triumphs which he had vowed to Afonlaplus and Mineroa, for the recovery of his health; where being fo quietly given to his Sport, he shewed how little he esteemed the coming of his Enemies. Whilft Alexander was bufied about thefe things, he received pleafant news, how his men won a Battel against the Persians at Helisarnassus; and that the Mindrans and Commibrought under his obedience. bluos 311

These Sports being once ended, he removed, and rorrune by

ok III. of Alexander the Great. of a Bridge made over the River of Pyramus, he ame to the City of Malons and from thence, with another motion, came to a Lown galled Caffabulan there Parmenio returned to the King, who had cen lent to learch the Streights that lay between them and the City of Wiem . He had prevented the Persians at that Passage's and so leaving men for the defence thereof he polleffed himlelf of the City of fum that was lest desolate: He departed from thence, and did drive the Persians out of the Mounains, scarching and clearing all the ways s to that paving made all things fure for the Army to pals. returned again, both the Author of the Act, and the Reporter of the thing done. Alexander ined in Councel, whether it were better to pals on urther, or elle to tarry there for a more lure powwhich was coming to him out of Macedon; menia was of Opinion, that this place was most ate to abide Darius in , and to give him Battel, there both the Armies should be of like force, by alon of the Strengbis, wherein no great multitude n fight at once. He shewed realons why they ought to eichew the Plains, wherein their Enemies hould have great advantage through their great number, by which they might close them about a wherein (he laid) he teared not his Enemies tout-nets, but seared their own men might be overcome th wearinels, where a multitude should light with ew, and fieth men lucceed in the place of them hat lainted. This Countel was received for good, and Alexander determined in the lattic place to abide eraffis Council was not so dipleasant into hing.

ft.

h-

ge

at

bd

be

ıl-

n,

t,

gs

Fe

17

Pe

Ye

n

re

d

1

o,

ie

n

i joht

2

t

đ

y

the state bears

There was in the Holf of the Macedons one Sylener a Perfian, fent before time from the Governour of Agyprunto King Philip, who being advanced with reward and promotions, choice to live out of his own Country's and so following Alexander into Asia, was esteemed among those that the King trosted well: A Souldier of Greece delivered him a Letter from Nabarzanes, Darins Lieutenant ; he ex-Horred him to do some notable Enterprise, whereby he might win favour and reputation with Daries ; Syfenes innocent of this matter, was divers times about to prefent the Letter to the King; but leeing him full of weighty affairs in providing for the Battel, he prolonged the matter: and whilest he wait-ed for a more convenient time, he brought himself in Sufpition of Treason; for the Letter was brought to the Kings hands before it was delivered to him, who reading it, did seal the same with a strange Seal, and caused it to be delivered to Sylener , to prove thereby his fidelity : But because he conceased the thing many days, and opened not the matter to the King, it feemed that he confented thereunto, and therefore by the Kings Commandment he was put to death by the hand of the Crecians.

The Greek Souldiers which Thimmes had received of Pharnabasis (being those that Darins trusted most) were now come to him : They perswaded much Darius to retire back into the Plains of Melosamia; and if he would not do fo, that at the ean he should divide his power, and not commit the whole force of his Efface to one stroke of For-

This Counsel was not so displeasant unto the King

it, of Alexander to Great king, as to fuch as were about him. But they fald, Mercenary Souldiers were alwayes full of Arealiand were to be doubted the more, for that it countelled the Army to be divided; which was or no other purpose, but only that they might have opportunity to fly to Alexander when they thould bave any charge committed unto theme there is nothing therefore more for us (quoth they) than to inclose them round about with our Army, and to cut them in pieces for an example to the world that Treaton may never be left unrevenged; but Dening, who was of a meek and good disposition, sefuled to commit to cruel an act, in flaving fuch as had betaken themselves to his truft: For he laids If we should defile our hands with their blood, what range Nation would ever then commis themselves nso our bands? and alledged, that there ought no man to lost bu life for giving facilly Compel for who would be hald to give counsel, if in connselling there should be any peril ? I call you ( quoth he) to compel daily, and bear the diversity of your opitions, and milbruft not them that give me not aleases the best counsel. He caused the Greeks to be inswered, that he gave them thanks for their good will; but in returning back, he faid, that he ould give up his Country into his Enemies hands, thich was not convenient; and confidering the nce that Fame is of in War, in going back ( he ledged) he thould appear to fly: But to defer e fight he thought it world of all, feeing so great Army as he had ( the Winter then approaching) uld not be victualled in a desolate Country, that d been walted born by themselves and by their enenues

ur

ed of

to

ng

ia

x-

Ьу

es

ig

ľ-

it-

elf

出い。この

ed

to

as o

1

ed ed to he in the

the world; and for the dividing of his power, he shewed that he could not do it, observing the culton of his Predecessors, who were not wone to hazard the Battel, but with all their power: He declared, that Alexander before his coming seemed terrible to the world; and through his absence was brought into a vain presumption: but after he saw him come forwards, he became wary and well advised, hiding himself in the straights of the Mountains, like those coward-Beasts, who hearing the noise of the Passengers, do hide themselves in the dens of the Woods: He bath deluded his Souldiers (quoth he) with his counterfait sickness; but now I will not safer him to prolong the fight any longer, which is will expects him in his lurking

Thefe words he spake with greater oftentation than truth and sent his Treature and Jewels with a small Convoy to Damaseus in Syria, and entred with his Aimy in Calicia, bringing with him according to his Country manner, both his Mother, his Wife, his little son and his daughter. It so chanced, that on the same night, in which Alexander was come to the streight entring into Syria. During came to the place which they call Pyla Amanica the Persians not doubting at all but that the Macedons would have forfaken the City of Issue, and file away for sear, for certain of them that were weak and could not follow the Army, were taken; whom Darries, through instigation of the Great men about him, raging in barbarous cruelty, caused their hands to be cut off, and to be led about his Camp, to the intent they might behold the multitude of his Army.

sook III. of Alexander the Great. of

declare to Alexander what they had seen. During temoved, and pussed the River of Pyramus, pusposing to pursue after the Micedoni, which he thought had been flying away: They who had their hands out off, came running in amongst the Macedoni, informing that During was advancing in great haste and may. There was scarcely any credence given to not words: but to be more certain of it, Alexander tent Spies towards the Sea-coast, to know whether During were there in person, or relse had sent some other to make a shew of a power. The Spies returning, advertised that his whole Army was at hand; and straightway the Fires might be seen, which gave such a shew (by reason they lay straigling to far abroad to get Forrage) as though the whole

Country had been on Fire.

When Atexander was afcertained of the truth, be incamped in the time place where the tidings came unto him, being marvelloully glad because he knew he should right; especially in the streights, being the thing he had always most delired. But as it is ommonly seen, when danger and extremity is at and, that confidence is turned into fear ; fo now ie doubted, not without great cause, that Fortune might change upon him, by whole favour he had one to great acts; and confidered, her mutability fluch things as the had taken from others, and iven unto him. He fair there was now no prorotion of the time; but that after one night paffed, e Victory should be determined. On the other de, he called to remembrance, that the honour of e Victory was a reward that far exceeded the Ad-E 2 venture t

venture: and as it was doubtful whether he lifoul overcome or not to he was certain if overcome, die with honour and perpetual Glory. When h had weighed there things, be gave order that the Souldiers thould refresh themselves, and at the thin Watch be armed in a readingly to advance. He nim felf went up into the top of a Mountain with man Lights and Torches about him, where he made facritice unto the gods after his Country manner And when the hour was come, he appointed the Souldiers at the third found of the Trumpet, the should be in a readiness to march out to fight. Exhortation was then given unto them, to pals or with courage and confidence; and by the break, o day they were come to the Streights, wherein the purpole was to prevent Darius. By that time fue as were fent before to fcour the Country, came in and reported that the Persians were within thirty Furlings. The Battels were then stayed, and se Vin flich order as they should fight.

As Alexander was advertised of Darius, so was he advertised of Alexander by the Pealants of the Country, who came fearfully running unto him delaring, that Alexander was at hand. These word were not be lieved; for they could not think them to be coming, whom they thought before to be field. But when they pertoived that it was so indeed, because they were in better order to pursue their Enemies, then to encounter them in battel, they were struck with a marvellous sudden fear. Every man took him to his Armour in hatte; which haste, and the calling that one made upon another, did greatly anaze them: Some ran up to the tops of the

in

m

er Li

er

the hej exor

nei

ud

in

irti

fe

wa

the

m

rd

4 EC

led.

be-

ne

EIC

nai

and

al the

Is to view the Macdons, others fell to bridling theries; fo that the Holtfull of divertity; and ot ruled by any certain government, with their rley-burley did put all things cut of order. Daries thirl had appointed one part of his power to take he Mongrains, who letting upon his enemics backs, ghe inclose them both behind and before and med another company to pals along the Scawhich was on the right hand, to keep his ennies doing on every part. He gave order also that wenty thousand footmen with a Band of Archers hould pass the River of Pyramus, and give an onlet. har way; but if they found any impediment why ney might not do fo, then he willed them to retire nto the Mountains, and invade their Enemies on their backs: but fortune, which was of greater force than any policy, determined those things that were well devised, according as the thought good. For some durit not for fear execute the thing that was commanded them, and then the rest laboured in vain: for where the members tail, the whole body is contounded. The order of Darius Army Hood thus arranged to fight: his power was divided into two Battels, one marching on the left-hand; the other on the right; Nabaezanes inspaled the Battel on the right-hand with a great power of Horfemen, and thirty thousand Slingers and Archers.

Thymones was also in the Battel with 30000 mercenary Greeks, being in very died Darim chical Force, a power equal unrothe Phalaix of the Macedons. In the Battel on the less-hand Aristemates was in the fore from with thirty thousand rost-men, having planted for his succour and relief,

E 3

luch

fuch Nations as were counted most Vallant: there were about the King, being also in the Battel, three thousand choice horsemen that were of the ordinary Guard of his Person; and forry thousand sootmen, with the horsemen of Hereania and Media, and the horsemen of other Nations were wings on both sides: And besides these numbers, there went before his Battel in a forsorn Hope, six thousand slingers and casters of Dates. All the plain ground between the Streights was, filled with Men of Wat; Darius Battel stood thus aranged from the Mountain down to the Sea side. The mother and wife of Darius, with all the women, were received in the middest of the Battel.

Alexander on the other side, set his square Battel of footmen called the Phalanx (being the Micedons chiefelt force ) in the fore tront : Nicanor the fon of Parmenio was Captain of the Battel on the right hand, and with him, Cenos and Perdicas, Meleager, Prolomeus and Amintas, every one a Colonel of his own Regiment: Parmenio and Crateria had the rule of the Battel on the left hand, which firetched toward the Sea; but Parmenis had the chief charge. The Horsemen were set in wings to both those Battels, the Macedons and Theffalian Horfemen being appointed to the right-hand Battel, and the Horlemen of Pelopomefin to the Buttel on the other fide: before which Battel there were also set Slingers, with Archers among them; and the Cretians that were lightly armed, advanced before the main Battel. The Band of Agrians that wire lately come out of Creece, were affigued to encounter with those that Daring had first to take the top of the Mountain: icre

ary

en.

the

oth

ore

ers

een

ZZE

wn

115,

of

tel

ns.

of

ht

27,

115

he

ed

e.

t-

g

t-

16

[-

IC

C

-

ne. He willed Parment, that as much as might thousand threech out his Fortes towards the beat a nitidiaw as far as he gould from the Hills which ne Enemieschael naken ; but luch as had direction by Darine to take the Hills, incities dualized fuch a came against them, not yet compats about thich were palled by them, but it d away at the first ght of the Slingers: which thing chanced well for dexender, for it was the thing after her doubted noti, that they from the higher ground thousand vade the open fide of his Barrel, which day unflanks ed owards them. The Micedons marched 321 is a rank, for the streightness of the ground wahld not luffer them to move in a broader body, bur by ittle and little, as the plain between the Mountains began to enlarge, fo they had liberty to make their Battels broader, and also for the horseinen to march upon the files. The limit and the ma

When both the Battels were come, within light of each other, the Persians will gave a terrible and sude thout, which was again doubted by the Matedone, not with their number, which was far interiour unto the Persians, but with the rebound of the Hills and the Rocks, which doubted every voice of theirs. Alexander did ride up and down before the fronts of his Battels, making a light to his Souldiers with his hand, that they thould not make too much halte to joyn with their Enemies, for bringing themselves out of breath; and as he went by, he used to every Nation sundry exhortations, as he thought convenient for their dispositions and qualities: He put the Micedons in remembrance of their ancient courage, and the number of Battels

E 4

that

the Life and Death - Book life that they had won in Europe, that they were come thither by his conduct not only to subduc Asia, but the uttermost bounds of the Orient. He shewed them to be the people that were ordained to con-quer the world, and to pass the bounds of Herceles and Bacchue's he declared that both Bactria and India should be theirs; in respect of which, the countries that they had yet feen were but trifles, and these were to be gotten all with one Victory : Their Travel (he faid) should not now be in vain, as it was in the barren Rocks of Illyria, or in the Mountains of Thrace; but in this Conquest the Spoil of the whole Orient was offered unto them; for the getting whereof they bould fearcely need to bandle their Swords, fince the Bastels of their Enemies wavered So already for fear, that with their approach only they had almost put them to flight. He recalled his Father Philip unto their memory, how he conquered the Athenians, with the Country of Boetia; how he rafed to the ground the noble City of Thebes: he made rehearfal to them of the Battel won at the River of Grunike, and of all the Cities that he had taken, or that had been yielded unto him. with the Countries they had passed through and fubducd-

When he came unto the Greeks, he defired them to call to mind the gleat wars that had been made against their Country in times pall by the Perhans; first by the pride of Xerxes, and alter by Darius, who made destruction both by Sea and Land, in such first that the Rivers could not serve them for Drink, nor the Earth turnish them with Victuals for Food: He telegrated also have the Temples of their gods

and been by them polluted and confirmed, their Ciles overthrown, and all Truces broken, which ought
to be confirmed both by divine and humane Law,
when he passed by the Illyrians and Thracians, which
were accustomed always to their and fooils, he invited them to behold their enemies which glistered
with gold, and bare no armour but spoil for them to
take: he incouraged them to go forwards like men,
and pluck the prey from those essentiate women,
and to make exchange of their craggy. Rocks and
Mountains full of snow, for the plentiful grounds and
lands of Persian

t

月月

ď

d

1

-

P

H

r

d

'n

is

1-

,

k

11

e

١,

d

m

te

.

10

h

١,

ds

ad

By this time both Armies were advanced within the throw of their Darts, and Darini Horlemen gave a fierce charge upon the right-hand-Battel of the Mamains. For Daring defire was to try the Battel by Horsemen, rightly judging, that the chiefest power of his Enemies conlisted in their square Battel of Footmen: So that the Battel where Alexander remained, was brought to the point of being inclosed round, if he had not perceived the same in time; and commanding two Bodies of his Horse to keep the top of the Hill, he brought all the rest of them to the incounter of his Enemies. Having then drawn the Thessalian Horsemen where they stood to right, he commanded their Capt. to bring them about behinde the Battels, and there to joyn with Parmenia, to perform with courage what he should appoint them.

By this time the Phalans, of the Macedons, in manner inclosed about with their Enemies, fought notably on all parts: but they flood to thick, and were to joyned one to another, that they wanted fcope to, wield their weapens. They were to nungled, that in casting casting their darts they one letted another, sew lighting on their enemies, and the most part falling on the ground without harm; and being forced to joya hand to hand, they valiantly used the sword. Then there was great effusion of blood; for both the Armies closed so near, that their Harness clashed together, weapon against weapon, and somed at one amothers faces with their Swords.

There was no place for the fearful or the coward to fly back, but each fer his foot to other; and by fighting kept still their place, till they could make their way by forces and so always passed forwards as they had overthrown their Enemies: As they were wearied and travelled thus with fighting, they were ever received with fresh Enemies; and such as were wounded might not depart out of the Battel (as it had been feen elfewhere) their Enemies affailed them to hercely before, and their fellows thrull on to hard behind. Alexander that day did not only such things as pertained to a Captain, but adventared himself as far as any private Souldier; covering by all means to kill Darius, which he efteemed the greatest honour. Planting decal side post

Darius rode aloft upon his Chariot, giving great provocations both for his Enemies to assail him, and tor his own Men to defend him: As Oxares his brother appeared most notable amongst them all in his surniture and personage, so in assection towards the King he exceeded far the rest, especially in that case of necessity; for when Alexander approached near, he thrust in before Darius with the band of Horsemen, whereof he had the charge, and overthrowing divers, he put many more to slight. But the

hí

OI

Ø

re-

rd

kė

ds

ey

ey

as Icl

il.

aA

ot n-

et•

εd

eat

nd

his

111

rds

in ch-

nd

tr.

But

the

59

the Macedoni Iwarmed to about the King, and were in such a courage by the Exhortation that each made to other, that they charged again upon the Band of Horlemen: Then the flaughter was given and the overthrow manifell; about the Charior of nourably in the light of their Prince. For just as they received their deaths wounds, to they fell, without turning their backs. Amongst them, Ary es, Romitbres, and Sabaces Governour of Agent, having the charge of great numbers of men, were overthrown and flain; and about them there lay by heaps a huge number of the vulgar fort, both of borfemen and footmen. Of the Macedons also fome were flain, specially such as pressed most forward's among whom the right shoulder of Alexander was lightly hurt with a fword. In this throng the hot es that drew Darius Chariot, were thrust in with Pikes, and growing outragious with the fende of paine began to struggle and overthrow their Mailet. He learing therefore to be taken alive, leaped from the Chariot, and was fer upon a led Horse, and so fled away, casting his Diadem from his Head, that he might escape unknown. Then the rest of his Army? were dispersed by fear, and flying by fuch ways as were open for them, they threw away the Armour, which before they had taken for their defence: of such a nature is fear, that it refuleth the thing that should be its safeguard.

when Parmenio law them fly, he straight commanded the Hertemen to purtue them, and put all his Enemics to flight that were on that part. But on the other hand, the Persians did put the Thesselian

horimen

Were

Horsemen to a fore diffres, for at the first shock they had broken one of their Troops; yet for all that they wheeled about, and rallying themselves, they charged again the Persians with so much courage, that they foon brake their Order, and overthrew them with a great flaughter. The Theffalians had herein a great advantage, by reason that the Persians, belides that they are armed themselves, have their horses also barbed with Plates of Steel, which was the cause they could not on the Charge, or on the Retreat, be fo quick as the Theffalians were; for the Theffalians, by their celerity, wherein the force of Horiemen chiefly confifteth, had overthrown mamy of them before they could turn their horses about. When Alexander understood that his men prevailed on their Enemies on that Wing likewise, he adventured to follow in the Chafe, which he durft not do before he knew the Battel to be clearly won, and the Enemies repelled on all sides.

Alexander had not about him above a thousand Horsemen, with whom he slew many thousands of his Enemies; for who is he that in an overthrow of Chafe can number men? Those few Macedons drove the multitude of their Enemies before them like theep; and the same fear that caused them to fly, flaved them likewife in their flying. The Grecians that were on Darius lide, under their Captain Amintas ( who sometime had been in great Authority with Alexander, but then against him ) brake out from the reft, and marched away in order of Battel; but the Persians fled divers ways, some directly towards Perfix, and some by unfrequented ways escaped by the Mountains and the Woods. A few there

of A lexignities the Greek were that recovered their former Camp, which the were Conquerours; but the fame immediate won, abounding with gold and filter, a Moveables, appertaining not only to the to all voluptuousness and excels; which ric whiles the Souldiers violently spoiled, they from the ways full of Packs and Fardels, in respect of the covetous defire they had to things of greater value: But when they came unto the Women, as their hisilliments were more precious, so the more violent they plucked them away: Their bodies also were not free from their Just and inforcement s the Camp every where being full of turnult and lamentation as chance befel every one. The licentioninels of the Victors was fuch, that their emelty raged upon all Ages and Creatures, and no kinde of mischief was wanting amongst them. There might have been deen the variableness of Fortune; which had prepared Daring Pavilion, did now referve and keep the same for Alexander, as for their old Master: for the Macedons had left that unspoiled, according to their Ancient Cultom, which are ever wounto receive their King, when he is Victorious, into the Kings Pavilion that he hath vanguilhed.

V

ì

e

3

e

d

1

d

ıf

Í

C

C.

5

y

Lt .

5

-

-

e

The Mother and Wife of Darius, that there were taken Prisoners, moved all men to cast their eyes and inward contemplations towards them; whereof the one deserved to be Reverenced for the Majesty that was in her, and for her Age; and the other for the excellency of her Beauty, which through her misadventure was nothing stained; She was found imbracing her little Son is her arms, not yet of the age

of fix years, born as an inheritour to the Dominion which his Father had loft! There by allo two young Dirgins in his Grand-mothers lap, even then marriageable, who languished and lamented, not fo much through their own private forrow; as for the dolotouluses of the old woman. About the mother and the wife, I were a great number of noble Women, that pulled their hair, and tore their cloaths, without respect of what appertained to their estate and unmindful of the calamity which Darius wife and this mother were come unto, called them still by the name of Queens, with fuch other titles of demourbas they did before. They all forgetting their own milery, were diligent to enquire after the fortune of the field, and what success the Battel had in which Darius was in person; for if he were alwes they could in the wise think themselves Prisoners as Butting by the changing of many horses, was they that time sted far away.

dred chouland footmen, and ten thouland horsemen; and of Alexanders Company, only 504 horsemen; and 32 sootmen, and 150 horsemen killed. So great a Nictory was gotten with so small a loss. Alexander that was wearied with pursuing of Darius, when he perceived the night to draw on, and that there was no hope to overtake him whom he followed returned into the Persians Camp, which a little before his coming was taken by his men. That night he made a binquet to such of his friends as he was accustomed to invite; for the burt on his shoulder, whereof the skin was but smally perished, did not hinder him from keeping company. As they sat

ok like of Alexander the Great meat, studdenly they heard a pitiful cry, w trange howling and lamentation, that put the in great fear is informuch that they who kept to atch about the Kings Pavilion, fearing it to be the anning of some great matter, began to arm

infelves.

OH ng Cj-

ch

0-

er

0-

15,

e a

le

ill

of

ng

er rel

re

0-

7 a 5

n

ſcτ¢,

at

del en

-10

d e.

hi vas

er,

ot

all

The wife and mother of Daring, with the other oble women newly taken puloners, were the ife of this fudden fear, by lamenting of Darier, on they improved had been lain; which hip n they concaived by one of the Eunuches who nding before their Tent-door, law y a parcel of Darner Diadem, which he a little ore had call from his head. When Alexander un-affood their errour, he wept (as it was faid) to nlider Darins misfortune, and the womens affeons towards him 5 and for their comfort fent to m one Mithrenes that betrayed Sardis, who was pert in the Persian tongue; but yet considering the light of him, being a Traitor, should but rease their sorrow, he sent a Noble-man called ed and that Darius was alive. He came towards Tent where the women were, with certain ne thither from the King: But when such as d at the Tent-door law armed men approaching poling their errand had been to murther their treffes, they ran into the place where they were, chied out, that their last hour was come; for men were at hand that were fent to kill them : fervants therefore, that neither durit let Leonatus nor keep him out, brought him no answer, but temained

tile and Death Book III remained quietly to fee what the event would be When Lements had long tarried at the door, and law none come forth to call him in, he left his men without, and entred amongst the Ladies, whose coming unto them, before he was admitted, was ther therefore and wife of Darius fell down at his feet, requiring him that before they were flain he would fuffer them to bury Daring after his Country manner; which last observance performed they were content (they faid) gladly to fuffer death. Leonaim afford them, that both Darine was alive, and that there was no harm meant towards them; but that they should remain in the same estate they were in before. When Sifygambis heard thole words, the fuffered her fell to be lifted up from the ground, and to receive forme comfort. The next day, Alexander with great diligence, buried the bodies of fuch of his men as could be found, and willed the fame to be done to the Noble men of the Persians, giving license to Darius mother to bury so many as she listed. after the cultome of her Country. She performed the same to a few that were the nearest of her kin according to the ability of her present fortunes for if

When these Rites were performed to the dead, Alexander signified to the women-prisoners, that he himself would come to visit them, and causing such as came with him to tarry without, he only with Ephestion entred in amongst them. This Ephestern

the should have used the Persian pomp therein, the Macedons might have envied it, who being Conquerous, used no great curiosity in the

matter.

flien

of Alexander the Great, 6 flion of all men was most dear to Alexander, being brought up as his Companion from his Youth, and most privy with him in all things; there was mone that had fuch liberty to speak his minde plainly to the King as he had; which he used after such fort. that he Gemed to do it by no Authority, but by fufferance. And as he was of like years unto him, to in personage he did somewhat excel him: wherefore the Women thinking Ephestion to be the King, did fall down and worthip him (as their Countrymanner was to do to Kings) till fuch time as one of the Eunuchs that was taken prisoner, shewed them which of them was Alexander . Then Sifygambis fell lown at his feet, requiring pardon for her ignonance, for so much as the did never see him before: The King took her up by the hand, and faid, Mothen, you be not decrived for this is Alexander alfo: Which his humility and continency of minde, if he had continually observed to his latter days, he might have been thought much more happy then he was i, when he having subdued all Asia, from Heleffont to the Ocean Sea did counterfeit the Trimphs of Bacchus - or if that amongst the rest of his Conquests, he would have laboured to conquer his ide and his wrath, being vices in him invincible

if in his drunkennels he would have abitained

from the flanghter of his Nobility, and not to have

agment I which helped him to conquer to many

pe had not yet altered his Nature, though afterards he could not bear his Victories with that ver-

he d

ad

en

le

as

Ò.

lis

he

гу

TC

iat iat

in

he

nd

der

his

be li-

d,

ac. Il

n

he ng nly

be-

which he did win them, but he behaved himself

after such manner, that he exceeded in Continency and Compation all the Kings that had been before his time. He entertained the two Queens, with those Vivgius that were of excellent Beauty, foreverently, as if they had been his Sifters: He not only abstained from violation of Darine Wife . which in Beauty excelled all the Women of her time; but also took great care and diligence, that none other should procure any dishonour to her: and to all the women he commanded their ornaments and apparel to be reflored; fo that they wanted nothing of the magnificence of their former Estate, faving only the affored confidence that Creatures want in milery."

Which things confidered by Sifygambis, the faid unto the King: Sir, your goodness towards us doth deserve, that we should make the same prayer for you, that we did fometime for Darius; and me perceive you worthy to surpass so great a King as bewas, in felicity and good fortune, who do so abound in Instice and in Clemency. You vouch safe to call me by the name of Mother, and of Queen but I confes my felf to be your Hand-maid; for I both conceive the greatness of my Estate past, and feel that I can bear this present servitude: It syeth only in your bands bon me shall be dealt withal, and whether you will make we notable to the World, through your Clemency, or your Gruelty. The King comforted them all he might, and willing them to be of good chear took Darius Son in his arms; at which the Childe was nothing affaid, having never feen him before but took and imbraced him about the neek: He was to moved with the conflancy of the Childe, and more and a lebat da lebat Book III. of Alexander the Great. by that he beheld Epheftion, and faid, Ob that Darius

bad some part of this gentle disposition

t

1

t

Y

ıt

d

tb

01

-

45,

n-

be

.If

16-

bis

010

ske

OF

he

r de se de

When he was departed from thence, he caused three Altars to be made upon the River of Pyramus, and there did facrifice to Jupiter, Hercules, and M nerva, and so went forwards into Syria. He sent Parmenio before into Damasous, where Darins Treafure did remain; who understanding by the way, that Darius had fent one of his Nobles thither, learing that for the smallness of his own number; the Inhabitants of Damsfens would keep him out, he determined to fend for a greater power: But by chance one Mardus fell into the hands of the Horsemen that Parmenio had fent before to four the Country, who being brought before Parmento, delivered him the Letters that the Captain of Danisous had fent to Alexander; and belides the Letters, idded of himself, that he doubted not but that all Daries riches and his treasure would be delivered to him at his arrival. Parmenio gave the charge to certain of his men to fecure his person, and then opened the Letters, wherein it was contained, that dexander in all hafte should send one of his Captains thither with a finall power: which being mown, he fent Mardus back again to Damaseus, with a finall Guard to accompany him; but he ecaped out of their hands, and came to Damafeur clore day-light. That thing troubled Parmento eatly, doubting that his Enemies had laid an Amfeado for him ; and therefore he durft not adnture in an unknown way without a Guide: efelicity of his Prince; he took fome Peafants of the

The Life and Death Book III. the Country to conduct him the way, who the fourth day brought him to the City of Damasens. The Captain doubting that Credence should not be given to his Letter, pretended to mistrost the frength of the Town, and made countenance as though he would fly away. On the break of day he caused Darius Treasure (which the Persians call Gaza) with the rest of all his precious things, to be brought forth of the Town, with a resolution to betray the same into the Macedons hands; There were many thousands of then and women that followed; a pitious fight to all that faw them; faving to him to whole fidelity they were committed: For Ic, to win himself thanks, purposed to deliver to his finemies a prey more precious then all the relt, which was fuch of his Nebili y as he had in his custody, with the Wives and Children of the Great Men that bare Rule under Darins : And belices, the Embassadours of the Cities of Greece, whom Darius had left in his treacherous hands, as in a Forriels, to his thinking, of most scurity. The Persians call those (Gargabe) that tarry burthens upon their shoulders, and these having the carriage of things of most value, when they could not endure the Cold for the Frost and Snow that suddenly fell; they put upon them the Robes of Gold and Purple, which they carried, together with the moncy, there being no man to let them; for the advertily of Darins caused that base fort of men to use a wreiched liberty. Those kinde of men seemed to Parmenio, at the hist fight, to be no small Army ; and thereione weighed not the matter lightly, but gave Exhortation to those that were with him, as though

30

be

in

th

tu

an

kei

rei.

hac

alte

wa

Di

they

Book HI. of Alexander the Great, 69 they should have fought a fore Battely and willed them to put their Spurs to their Horles, and give the Charge: which being perceived by them that bare burt hens, they fl. d away for fear, and lo did the Men of War that were with them, by fuch ways as they best knew: The Captain of Damaseus counterfeiting fuch fear as others feared indeed, was the cause of all this consultion. The riches of Drins were left unguarded, and lay scattered abroat over all the Fields, with the money that was prepared for the wages of to infinite a number of Souldiers as also the apparel of so many great men and Noble women, with Veffels and Bridles of Gold, Pavilions adorned with Regal Magnificence, and Waggons full of infinite fiches: A thing even forrowful to beho'd to the Spoilers, if any thing could flay the coverousness of men. Was it not a pitiful thing to behold the riches that had been gathered togeth, r in lo great a number of years, whiles the flate of the Perfians stood in that incredible height of Fortune, one part thereof to be torn with Bushes, and mother part funk into the Mice? being so great beides, that the hands of the Spoilers could not lufice for the Spoil, when the Horsemen had overtacen them that fled: nitt they tound divers women arrying their faiall Children, amongst whom there were tour Virgins, the Daughters of Occhus that reigned next before Darius. They before that time and fuffered change of Fortunes when the State was altered from their Fathers Line; but this adverting was much more grievous unto them.

C

1

e

e

S

c

94

0

re

1

13

1-

H

of

d

ce,

as he

ns

ge-

n<sub>7</sub>

bit

d-

ule

to

nd

ave

ley

There was in that number the wife of Occhus, the Diughter of Oxatres, that was Durius's Brother, and

the Wise of Artabasius, who was of the chief House of Persia, with his Son called Ilimeus. The Wise and the Son of Pharnabasius were also taken, to whom Darius had committed the charge of all the Sea-Coasts, and with them the three Daughters of Memor, the Wise and Son of the Noble Captain Memon.

There was scarcely any House of the Nobility of Perfia free from that evil adventure. There were 110 both Lacedemonians and Athenians, that concrary to the League between Alexander and them, took Darius part : amongst the Athenians, Aristoiton, Dropides and Levertes, were of the greatest Line and Linage : and of the Lacedemonians, the chiefest were Perifippus and Onomastorides, with Omais and Callieratides. The fum of the coyned money there taken, was two thousand and fixty Talents, beside thirty thouland men, and seven thouland beafts that carried burthens upon their backs. But the gods did persecute with due punishment the Betrayer of fuch a Treasure; for one whom he had made privy to the matter, pitying therein the Estate of his Prince, did flay the Traytor, and brought his head to Darius; a comfort, not unapt in that season, to the betrayed King; for thereby he was both revenged of his Enemy, and perceived that the memory due unto his Estate, was not removed out of the hearts of his people.

hard a solid

is to complete sales with the artists.

0

of

n

of re

nn, ni-

eft

nd

de

nat

ods

of

VY

his

ead

to

cn-

OTY

the

HE

## \*\*\*

THE

## FOURTH BOOK

O F

## QUINTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Ads of Alexander the Great, King of Ma-

Arins, who a little before was Lard of fo great an Army, and who came unto the Field carried aloft upon his Chariot, more like to Triumph then to Fight, fl.d by the places then walte and defart, which he before had filled with his infinite numbers of Men of War: There were but few that followed him; for neither they fled all one way, nor fuch as followed, could keep pace with him that to often changed Horfes. At length he came to Unche, where he was received of your thoufand Greeks, who conducted him to the River of Exphrares; thinking all those his Co intries lott, in the which by his speed he could not prevent the coming of Alexander. Parmenio was appointed Goveryour of Syria, and to be the Keeper of the Treasure and prisoners which he took at Damasens. The Syrians could not at the first bear the new Government, because they had not yet felt the Scourge of the Wars a but as they revolted, they were straightway subdued, performing all that they were appointed to do. The lile of Arade was yielded to cander, whereof Strate was King, that had in Subjection all the Sea coult, with divers of the Island-Countries , who being received into truft, Alexander marched with his Army into the City of Marathon. There he received Letters from Darius, that pur him into great choler, because they were so arrogantly writtens The special point that moved Alexander was, for that Darius writing himfelf King, did not vouchfase to give him that Title, but did write rather by way of Commandment, then of Request; proffering for the Ranfom of his Wife and Children. to much money as Macedon could receive: For the Government of the Empire (he faid) he put it to his choice, to try it by the Sword if he lift; but if he would be better adviced, he willed him to be confent with his own Inheritance, and he would joyn in Amity with him and become his Friend; in which point he was ready to enter into Treaty with him. Alexander did write to him again, after this manner:

Datius, whose Name thou ownest, wrought beretofore great destruction upon the Greeks inhabiting the Coast of Hellespont, and upon the Greek Colonies in Ionia, which are Greek Cities; and passed from thence to the Sea with a great Army, to make War against Greece and Macedon: And also King Xerxes, thy Predecessor, came to subdue us with infinite numbers, which being vanquished in a Battel on the Sea, left notwithstanding Mardonius bebinde bim in Greece, to destroy their Cities, and burn their Countries: It is manifest

Alexander the Great. 12 ranifest besidet that Philip my Father was flain by Gib were corrected thereunto mith your maney. Tou me dertake always unjust Wars ; and being clad in Arms, about, for all that, to circumvent men with Treafort as about of late, baving such a number of men in thy Army didst attempt my death with the promise of a 1000 Talents. I am not therefore the beginner of the Ways, but only do repel such injuries as are offered mes in doing whereof through the help of the gods (who favour almay the right ) I have brought the greater part of Aha under my subjection; and baving overcome thee in Battel by force of Arms, there is no cause that I should gant thee any thing, because thou hast not observed tooards me the Law of Arms: yet if than wilt come and submit thy felf. I promise thee that I will deliver both by Mother, Wife and Children; for I both know bor to get the Victory, and bow to use such as I Overcome. But if thou fearest to commit thy felf to us, I will give thee fafe Conduct to come freely. As for the rest, when thou writest to me, remember that thou writest not only to a King but also unto bim that is thy King.

e.

re

0

n |-

27

4.

n

y

1

t

-

, ,

le

oif

e

d

n

h

is

e

H

e

ß

y

0

He fent this Letter by Therspur, and marshed from thence into Phenicia, where the City of Biblon was yielded unto him; and so came unto Sydon, which was a City of great Magnificence, by reason of the Antiquity and Fame of the Builders: The lame was under the Dominion of Strato, and supported by the power of Darius; who yielding more by the constraint of the people, then of his own good will, was thought unworthy to Reign there. Mexander made a Grant to Ephestion, that he should make such a one King, whom the Sydon thought most worthy of that Honour. There were divers

Noble

The Life and Death Book IV

Noble young men in that City that had familianing with Ephelian, of whom he thought to have cholen one King ; but they refused his offer, a ffirming, that one might enjoy that Dignity, except he were deseemded of the Blood Royal. Epheffion wondered at the magnanimity that was in them, in delpiling the thing that others fought for by Sword and Fire, and faid , Continue you fill in that vertuous minde, who are the first that have understanding, bow much bester it is to refuse, then to receive a Kingdom : Chuse you therefore fuch a one of the Blood Royal, that may remember be bath received the Rule at your bands. But when they faw divers gaping for it, and for the greediness they had to Reign, they fell to flattering of fuch as were near to Alexander; they refolved, that there was none more fit for that Dignity then one Abdolominus, who being of the Ancient Blood of the Kings, for poverty was inforeed to dwell in a fmall Graunge without the City: His honesty was the cause of his poverty (as it is to many other) and being exercised in his daily labour, he heard no noyle of the Wars that troubled all Afia: They, of whom we spake before, came into his Garden with Garments to apparel him tike a King, and found him weeding of his ground, whom they falured King, and faid, You mill make exchange of the vileness of your apparel; with these rich Robes we here present you: Wash thy body that now covered with Dust, and take upon thee the kart of a King; and in this Fortune, whereof thou but worthy, them the fame moderation and continency as at this prefent : And when as thou shall fit in thy Regal Seat, having in thy hands the power of the life Hook IV. of Alexander the Great. The said death of thy people, do in no mile forget the Effect thou wert in when thou took it the Kingdom upon thee, war yet fet what purpose than didit receive it. The matter seemed to Abdoluminus like a Dream, who asked them if they were mad that would make him after that manner? But when he saw them af-

firm by Oaths the thing to be in carnell, he walked himfelf; and receiving the Garment, which was of Purple and Gold, he went with them into the Pa-

acc.

rit

fen

has

de

red

ing

ire.

ide.

uch

say

ds.

for

at-

TC-

ig-

111-

)r-

y:

to

la-

ed

ne

100

ıd.

ke

efe

at

be

010

CY

be ife

The Fame (as it is accustomed in such a case) did notably abroad of this subject; fome favoured the cause, and some did disdain it; but such as were rich, did upbraid his poverty and bale Estate, to such as were near about Alexander, who caused the King to fend for him; and when he had long beheld his behaviour, he said: Your personage doth not distincte from the Fame of your Linage; but I defire to know with what patience you did Suffain your poverty's I would to God (quoth he) I could bear my proferrity in like cafe now, when I am a King & Thefe bands and get that I defired; and having nothing, I lacked no. bing. His words caused Alexander to conceive of him a marvellous good Opinion; so that he gave unto him, not only the riches, thuff, and furniture appertaining to the King b. fore, but allo many things that were taken from the Perfians; adding to his Dominion, all the Country near about that City.

In the mean season, Amintas, who heretofore guid in from Alexander to Darius, and now he escapitation the last Battel, did come to Tripolis with sour thousand. Greeks; where he imbarqued, and sailed to

Cyprus 5

Cyprus , thinking the World to be fuch then , that my one might enjoy what he could get, as if it had been his own Inheritance. His purpole was to go into Egupt, thinking there to become an Encmy both to Darins, and to Alexander, and to comply with the world, according as time should serve. To bring therefore his Souldiers to think wall of his Enterprize, he declared how the Governour of Egyps was flain in the Battel, and that the Perfiants left there in Garrison were but a small number, of little force, and without any head : He shewed how the Egyptians used to Rebel against their Governours; wherefore they were fure to be received as Friends: For necessity (quoth he) bath inforced us to prove our Forsunes, which failing us in our first hope, we must now conceive that the time to come shall be much better then the Fortunes we now enjoy. They all agreed with one voice, that he should lead them where he pleafed: Whereupon, thinking not good to pretermit the occasion, whiles they were high with hopes, he conveyed them to Egypt, and entred the Haven at Pelusium, under pretence that he had been sent thither by Darins. When he had got Pelusium, he set forwards towards Memphis; at the Fame of whose coming, the Egyptians being a light Nation, and more apt to raile a Coil, then to maintain it when it was once begun, ran to him out of all their Towns and Villages, with an intent to destroy all the Persians; who not withstanding the fear they were in, did not leave the defence

After this Victory, Amineas belieged Memphis, and

of the Country, but fought with the Greeks, and

were put to flight.

Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 79

t

Ö

陽

ts

Al.

V

權

S

0

2

e

l

his men detroyed to all the Country thereabouts that they left nothing unspoiled . Whereupon, Ma gether, though he perceived his men much amazed with the fear of their late overthrow; yet when he law his Enemies featfered abroad, and without order, being overcome with locurity, and the pride of their late Victory, he at length perswaded his men to iffee out of the City; and in fetting upon their Enemies to recover again what they had loft a Which advice being good of it felf, being thooughly-followed, took most fortunate success for they flew at that time both Amintas and all his company. This cunishment he suffered for the ofence committed to both Princes, being neither hithful to Alexander whom he forfook, nor to Daine to whom he fled. Daries Captains who escaped from the Battel of Hum, gathering together such men as were scattered abroad, and such power befide as they could levy in Cappadocia and Paphlagorie, did attempt to recover again the Country of Lydia. Antigonus was Governour for Alexander there, who not with standing that he had taken man ny Souldiers out of the Garrisons of Alexander, yet he lo little efteemed his Enemies, that he doubted or to adventure the Battel. The Persians there received the like Fortune they did in other places, and attempting the Fight in three fundry Countries were vanquished in them all.

which Alexander had sent for out of Greece, meeting which Alexander had sent for out of Greece, meeting willingeres, (whom Darius had appointed to make war upon the Coast of Hellespons) tought with, and downed all his Ships. Phomabajus, Darius having exacted

reacted money of the Mismians, and put a Garnfon in Seier, passed into the Isle of Andros with hundred Ships, and from thence he failed to Ships me, and putting Men of War into all the Islands exacted of them money. The greatness of the War that was in hand between two of the most puissant Princes of Asia and Europe, did draw both Green and Crees to Arms: Agis, the King of Lacedemon gathered together eight thouland Greeks that wen come home out of Cilicia, and moved War against Antipater that was Governour of Macedonia. The Cretians following fometime one part, and fometime another, received one while a Garrison of Macedone, and another while of Lacedemonians to lye amongst them. But those Wars were of no great importance, for all mene eyes were fixed upon the Wars that were between Alexander and Daring whereupon all the rest did depend.

The Macedons had fubdued all Syria and Phenice. Tyre only excepted; which being the greatest and most notable City of all that Country, shewed that they efteemed themselves worthy rather to joyn with Alexander as Friends, then to become his Subjeets; for when he was come near unto them, and incamped upon the main Land, which is divided from their City with a small Arm of the Sea, they fent to him, by their Embassadours, a Crown of Gold for a Present, with great plenty besides of victuals for his Army: He received their Gifts as from his Friends, and gave genele Answers unto the Embasadours; but he shewed himself much desirous to make Sacrifice unto Heroules, (whom the Tyrians specially worthipped, and the Missedon

Kings

Kings supposed themselves to be descended of him ) being admonished (as he said) by an Oracle. The Embassadours made answer, That there was a Tempes of Hercules without their City, in the place which they east Palætiron, whereas he might do Sacrifice a pleasure. At those words Alexander could not retrain from anger, whereunto he was much subject, but fell in a great passion.

rre

1 1

ph.

ds

Var

ant

cet

on

ÇIE

nA

he

ne

of

to

eat

he

u

CE.

nd

at

yn

164

be

ed

ey

of

of

25

he

fike

61

I perceive now (quoth he) because ye divell in an Mand, ye trust so much in the scienation of your City, was ye despise my Land power: But I will shortly make you understand, that you are scienated upon the Main Land; and therefore trust to it, that if ye recipe me not in. I will enter into your City by force.

when the Embassadours were distinssed with this answer; such as were near about the King, per-waded them that they should not exclude him whom all Syria and Phenicia had received: But they had entertained such a confidence, for that their City stood in the Sea, being divided eighty surlongs from the Main Land, that they absolutely determined to abide the Siege.

That Sea of theirs is much subject to the SouthTel-winde; which at every Storm made the Waves
at so high against the shore, that it would not sufthe Macedons to make any work for the uniting
the Main Land to the City, it being scarce possible
to work any thing there when the weather was most
calm. The first work that the Macedons began;
was by and by thrown down with the vehemency of
the beas that were driven by the winde; nor could
they make any Fort so strong within the Sea, but
that it was washed away, and brought down by

beating of the Waves a and when the Windes blew violently, they would bring the Seas clean over the work. There was another difficulty no less then this; for by reason that the Walls were environed about with the deepnels of the Sea, they could raile no Engine to thoor, but afar off out of the Ships: nor was there any ground about the City, whereup. on Ladders might have been reated against the walls, or approach made unto them by Land. A. lexander had no Ships; and if he had any, and would have covered to bring them to the walls, yet by reason of the unstablenets of the water, they might with thot eafily have been kept off. But amongst many other things, the Tyrians were wonderfully encouraged by the coming of the Embassadours, sent from Carthage to celebrate a yearly factifice; for the Tyrians, being the builders of Carthage, were ever fince that time had in Veneration of them, as their Parents and first Founders. Those Embassadours exhorted them in any wife to continue the Siege, and promifed them thortly aid) which thing they alledged might eafily and foon be done, for to much as at that time all the Seas were full of the Cartbaginian ships. Upon this encouragement, they determined to abide the extremity, and placed their Engines upon the Towers and walls, dividing their Engines amongst the Youth of the City. The Artificers , whereof the City had great plenty, were divided into Workhouses, to make all such things as were necessary for the Wars: There were deviled certain Infine ments wherewith they might pull down the Works that their Enemies made, called Harpagons; and alfo Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 81

things that might be invented for the defence of the City. But a strange thing is reported, that when the Iron was put in the longe, and blown in the Fire, the same was seen to be full of drops of blood: which Wonder, the Tyriane did intespret as token of good Fortune towards themselves; and sa signification of destruction towards their Enemies. A like wonder was seen among the Macelines; for when a certain Souldier was breaking of his bread, drops of blood appeared therein: where it Alexander being altonied. Aristander, that was not cunning of all the D viners, did interpret thus the matter: If the blood had appeared outwardly, then it had signified with foreume to the Macedons's but in as much as it was sound within, it herokaned destruction to the City they were about to continue

re

ıç

a

l-

y n y ll n iç

-

A

e

Alexander confidering his Navy to be far from him, and that a long Siege should be an impediment to his other affairs, lent Officers of Arms into the City, to perswide them unto peace; whom the Lyrians, against the Law of Nations, did drown in the Seal. Their unjust death stirred Afgainder so much, that he then atterly determined to go forwards with the Siege: But before he could make his approach, it was of necessity for him to make a reer or Land-work, whereby they might pass from the main Land to the City: But in the making thereof; there entred great despair into all mens hearts, considering the deepness of the Sea, which they saw not possible to be filled scarcely by any Dimer powers for they thought no Stones so great, no

Trees to high, nor any Country to have such plenty, as might suffice for the building of a Bank in fuch a place confidering the Sca remained always roubled; and the narrower the place was between the City and the Land, fo much more greater was the violence of the waters. But Alexander, who had the policy to allure his Souldiers to what effect he pleased, declared that Hercules appeared unto him in his fleep, and gave him his hand, proffering him to be his Captain and his Guide for his entrance into the City: Thereunto he added the killing of his Embaffadours, whereby they had violated and broken the Law that all Nations observed, and that there remained but one City which stayed his Victory : thereupon he divided the work amongst his Captains, that every one might apply his own Band, and put the work more forward.

There were great plenty of stones at hand of the ruines of the old City where Tyre flood before; and for the making of Boats and Towers, Timber was brought from Mount Libanus; The work did rile from the bottom of the Sea like a Mountain, but it was not yet brought to the High-water mark; and the further the Peer was brought from the Land unto the Seaward, fo much the sooner the Sea did fwallow up the materials whereof the Peer wa made. Whiles the Macedons were thus about their work, the Tyrians would come about them in small Veffels, and give them words of reproach and form as, they were now become goodly Men of War, the would be made Pioniers, and carry burthens upo their backs: And they asked them, if they though Alexander to be preater then the god of the Se 100

## Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 32

n

8

n

8 d

m M

n-

is

0-

at

7 je

nis

vn

the

nd

W 25

rife

tit

and

un-did

wa

hei

mal

rn

tha

po

Sea B

But their represended not hinder, but increase the chearfulness of the Souldiers in their pain and travel ; infomuch, that the work in a fhort space furmounted above the water, and increasing much in breadth, approached near unto the City: Then the Tyrians feeing the hugeness of the work, in the increase whereof they law themselves deceived litthe thinking that it would have grown to fuch a pals, in little Vessels came rowing about the Peer, and drove the Souldiers with that from their working 3 and because they could easily bring their Boars fuddenly forwards, return foon again, they hurt many of the Micedons, without any danger to themfelves, inforcing them to leave their work, and fall to their own defence: For remedy whereof, and to avoid their Enemies shot, they were compelled to freech out Beatts skins upon Poles, like Sails, and let those between them and their Enemies: and belides, at the head of the Peer they raised up two Towers, from whence with flot, and catting of Darts; they kept off the Boats that came about them.

On the other side, the Tyrians would land men with their Boats far out of the tight of the Camp, and kill fuch as were carrying of frones. The Pealants of Arabia also did set upon certain of the Macedons that were scattered abroad in Mount Libamer, where they flew and took divers: that was one cause which moved Alexander to divide his Army and left he might frem to remain idle about the Siege of one City, he appointed Perdicas and Crawho to take the charge of the work he had in hand, and marched himself in person into Arabia, with fuch

such part of his power, as was most apt for his present purpose. In the mean featon, the Tyrians prepared a great thip, laden with thones and gravel behinder, for that the fore-part Hoated above the water; which thip anointed over with pitch and brimstone, they brought suddenly, by failing and force of Oars, unto the Peer; and there remaining, the Marriners fet the thip on fire, and then leaped into the Boats, which followed after to receive them. The ship thus fet on fire, so instanted the Woodwork pertaining to the Peer, that before any refeue could come, the fire had taken the Towers of the Peer, and all the rest of the Works that were made. in the head. When they, who leaped into the Boars, faw the matter take such effect, they put betwixt the Timber, and other void places, both fire-brands, and all fuch things as might give nourithment and increase to the fire : So that the Towers, and all the rest, being on a flame, many of the Macedons were confirmed therewith; and the reft torlook their Arms, and threw themselves into the Seal. The Tr rians, that were more defirous to take them alive. then to kill them with flaves and flones, did fo beat their on the hands as they were (wirmming, that for weariness they were glad to be taken up into their Boats. The Towers were not confirmed with fire only; for it chanced also the same day a terrible witide to rife, which blowing from the Sea. brought the Waves with fuch violence upon the Been, that with often beating of the Seas, the joynts that knit the work together, began to look and to leave their hold : then the water that washed through brake down the wholework in the midfi 

Book IV! of Alexander the Great, 84

to that the heaps of stones which were before fustained by the Timber and Fanth call betwiet them. being broke afunder, the whole work fell to ruine,

and were carried away into the Deep!

By that time Alexander was returned out of Arabia, and fearcely lound any remainder or token, that any such work had been. In that case ( as it is ever used in things that chance evil ) one laid the full upon another, when indeed, the violence of the Sea was the cause of all. Alexander began to make the Peer again after a new manner; the head therefore lying into the weather and the winde, and not the open fide, as it did before; so that the forefront always defended the reft of the work lying behinde. He increased also the breadth thereof to the intent the Towers might be builded in the midst of the Peer, whereby they should be less subect to the Enemics that: whole Trees were put into the Sea, with their tops and branches; and after, great flones were thrown upon them; and over those a new course of slope and trees, and stone again; by which device this whole work was joyned ind fastned all into one.

As the Macedons were bulle to bring their work forwards, for the Tyrians were as diligent to invent Il fuch things, as might give impediment to their proceeding. The chief practice was, for a great number of them to enter into the Sea coalt, atar off, of the Macedons light, and to come diving uner the water, till they came unto the Peers, where with Hooks they would pull the branches of the frees that appeared out or the flones, and ne out r ibliance followed after into the deep: For the

shed

0

3

16

le.

S,

xt

IS.

ad

he

10

eir

ly-

VC,

eat

hat

ote

ich

rri-

Sea,

the

nts

d to

da fo Trees being discharged of their burthers, were easily drawn away; and then the Foundation failing, the whole Work, that stayed upon the Trees, fell to ruine. Amongst these impediments. Alexander stood in great perplexity of minde, doubting whether he should continue the Siege still, or else depart his way. When he was in this imagination, fuddenly his Navy arrived to Cyprus, and Cleander also with his Souldiers which he had brought out of Greece; And having to the number of 180 Ships, divided them into two Squadrons; whereof he committed the one unto Pythagoras, the King of Cyprus, and to Craterin , and took charge of the other himfelf; committing his own person to a Galley called Cinquereme, which had five Oars on a side. The Tyrians durif not adventure the Sca-fight, although they had a great Navy, but fet all their Galleys in a Front before the Walls of the City, which the King affailed, and put to diffress.

The next day, the Macedons, with their ships, invironed the City round about, and did beat down the Walls, especially with such Engines as they call Rams; but the Tyrians straightway inforced, and made up their Walls with stones that lay at hand, and raised up an inward Wall round about the City, which might be their defence if the other failed: But their destruction approached on every side; the Work was now wrought within the call of a Dart, and the Ships gave the approach round about the Walls, so that they were over-laid both by Sea and Land: The Macedons had devised to joyn their Galleys, two and two tegether, in such sinds

Book IV. of Alexander the Great. By hinder parts lay far off one from the other; and river the spaces remaining betwixt Poop and Poop. they made Bridges, with Matts and Main-mees layed betwixt Galley and Galley, fall bound ther to carry Souldiers upon. When they had put their Galleys in this order, they fet forwards towards the City; and having rampired the Sterns for defence of the Souldiers that were behinde, they food in their Galleys, and did shoot and cast Daris gainst their Enemies, without any peril or danger to themselves. It was Mid-night when they had Commandment to let forwards, after this manner; as the Ships were approaching on all parts, and the Twians stood astonied for fear and desperation, behold, the Sky was overwhelmed with dim Clouds, and a sudden darkness took away the light. Then the Sea, by little and little, waxed terrible and rough; the Winde blew, railing the Waves, which did beat the Ships one against another; the violence whereof, burst afunder the Bands and Grafpers wherewith the Galleys were fathened together: Which done, the Bridges crashed, and Hew afunder; and with the Souldiers that Itood upon them, fell into the Sea! There was great confution; fix the Ships entangled thus together, could by no means be governed in such a Tempest; the Souldiets disturbing the feat of the Marriners, and the Marriners giving impediment to the Office of the

e'

S

Y

h

d

0

d

ne

zh

in

he

Π÷

WI

all

nd

nd.

Cir

il

CTY

call

nd

oth

uch

de

Souldiers.

Thus ( as it doth often happen in such a case ) the expert were obedient to the ignorant; for the Ship-Mafters that were accultomed to Command, for feat of death, were directed by others. But at length,

length, by force of Rowing, the Galleys recovered the thore, the greater part of them being broken and torn. It chanced, at the fame time, thirty himballidors to come from Caribage to Tyre, who gave more comfort then alliftance to them that were befieged: For they shewed how the Carthaginians were fo affailed with Wars at their own doors, that they could by no means fend them fuccour; infomuch, that the Syraculans were destroying Africa with Fire and Sword, and had incamped themselves under the very walls of Caribage. The Tyrians yet were not difcomfited, for all that they were difappointed of their foecial truft; but delivered unto thole Embassadours their Wives and their Children. to carry unto Carebace, thinking to continue the Siege with greater resolution, if the things which were most dear unto them were removed out of danger. 1 Warran

There was a Tyrian, who in an open Affembly declared, that Atollo ( whom the Tyrians greatly do worthip) had appeared to him in his fleep, and declared to him, that he had forfaken the City, and transformed the work that the Macedons had made, zinto a great Wood. Hereupon, though the Author were of small credit; yet for as much as men in fear are aporto believe the worft, they tyed Apollo's Image. with a Golden Chain, and bound fast also the Altar of Hercules (to whom the City was dedicate) thinking by detaining of the one, to keep fafe the other. The Carthaginians, in times patt, had brought that Image from Syracufe, and had placed it in the head-City, out of the which they were descended: For their cultom was to adorn Tyre with fuch spoils as they

ok IV. of Alexander the Great. 189 bad taken , no jels then they did Carebige it They, at that time, would also have been hors unto the Tyrians, for the renewing of an old crifice that had been omitted many years, wherein her used to offer up to Saturn a free-born childe s nich being rather a facriledge then a facrifice, the Cartbaginians received from their first Founders, and till obterved the fame, till they were deftroved : and had not the Ancient Men, by whom all things were overned, withstood it, this wicked Superstition had taken place, which Nature and Humanity doth shor t The nec flies that was hanging over their heads, being more effectual then any Art or Scient practifed not only such things as were accustomed for defences, but also found out what was never invented before: For to the disturbance of the ships that approached the Walls, they deviled long Ratters to the which they fastened grapples of Iron, and great hooks like Sythes; which let down with Ropes by an Engine, either did rear the thips, cr deflroyed the men. They invented also Fargets of Mettle to be made fire-hot, in the which they put burning Sand, and scalding Lime, and then poured the fame upon the Macedons that came near to the Walls, being a mischief that they feared most of all others, for when the hot Sand entred between the Harness and the body, there was no means to avoid it; and where it touched, it burned to the bones; fo that they were forced to throw away their Harnels, and tear away all things they had upon their bodies thereby they became subject to be hurt by their E re-

mies and were upt in case to indamage them again:

But specially the Grapplers that were let down

(called

e

酒

5

n

>-

:4

CS

et

p-

to

n,

he

ch.

of

le-

do

nd

nd

de.

or

ear

ige.

tar

ık-

er.

nat

ad-

or

135

hey

The Life and Death Book IV.

(called Corvi) took violently away many of the Souldiers that were within the Thips. Alexander fee. ing the obstitute defence of the Tyrians, was wear, of the Siege, and determined to raise it, and to go unto Egypt : For confidering in how thort a space he subdued Asia, it grieved him to be detained to mitted the occasion and opportunity of greater Conqueits. But he was as much ashamed to depart without his purpole, as to continue there, and leave other things undone; judging , that if he should leave Tyre in that fort as a witness that he might be ithflood, it should much impair his Fame, by which he had cotten more then by force : And it chanced at the same time, a Monster of an exceeding bigness did appear, as well in the light of the Tyrians, as the Macedons; which lying upon his back above the water, came towards the Peer; and when he had lifted up himfelf at the head of the Peer, it dived under the water again , and fornetimes appearing above, and fometimes hiding himfelf underneath, when it came near the walls of the City. it vanished out of fight.

The fight of this Monster rejoyced both parties, the Macedons interpreting the same to be sent them as a Guide for their direction to finish the work: And the Twians divining, that Neprone, in revenging the usurpations that the Macedons had made upon the Sea, would shortly destroy the work that they had made, in such like fort as he had taken away the Monster. They, upon their own imagination, conceived such a gladness, and prognosticated to themselves such good Fortune, that

they

of Alexa cy fell to banqueting and drinking; my were well charged with Wine, at the Sunids, and mounted into Galleys, not only with ope of Victory, but with a Triumph made before and. It chanced at the fame time, that Alexan ad conveyed his Navy to the contrary lide of the City, and left upon the shore thirty of the smallest reffels, of the which the Tyrians took two, ur the reft in danger of diffrets, until fuch timens he King hearing the Alarm, fer forwards with the Navy towards that part where the cry was heard The first Galley of the Macedons that came the them was a Cinquereme, the swiftest of all the rest which when the Tyrians espied, they came against her with two Galleys crofs upon her fide; whereof the one struck at her full with her Spurn, with whom the Cinquereme grappled; and the other, which was loofe and at liberty, fell upon her on the contrary fide. But left between them two fie might fustain some damage, one of Alexanders Trirems came to the refcue, with fuch violence, that the Master of the loose Galley was struck into the Sea. When the Tyrians law that Alexander was come himfelf, and more or his thips at hand, with firength of Oars, and great industry, they fet their Galleys that were intangled loofe again, and at hiberty, making towards their Haven with all the hafte they could : Alexander inunediately pursued them; but when he came to the Haven he bould not enter, but was beaten off with that from the walls, yet did he take and drown the most part of their Galleys. After this Adventure, he refled his Sou!

the

lee.

80

aœ

6

0

ter

Dan

ave

uld

be

by

di

ed.

the

ack

hen

, it

ap-

un-

ity,

ies,

em rk:

re-

had

the had

n i-

og-

that they Souldiers two days, and then commanded his ships

to be brought forwards, and the Engines in them, to the intent, that by affailing the Tyrians on all fides, he might put them into an extreme fear. Alterander with a wonderful courage, not without great peril of his person, mounted up into the top of a Tower that was made in a Ship, and there known by his apparel and rich Armour, was chiefly affaulted, and shot on from all parts. He wrought wonderful feats with his own person; for both with his Pike he slew divers that stood at defence, and afterwards he sought hand to hand, with his Sword and Target, throwing divers down from their detence; for the Tower wherein he sought joyned hard to the Walls.

By that time the Engines, called Rams, with much beating, having laid low the Walls, the Navy was got within the Haven, and certain of the Macedans had won the Towers: The Tyrians then oppressed with so many mileries at once, were clean discomfitted; some fled unto the Temples for succour; some did shor their doors, taking that kinds of death they liked best; and others ran upon their Enemies, to fell their lives at the dearest rate : but the most part got up into the tops of their houses, and from thence did cast down upon their Enemies, whatfoever came unto their hands. Alexander commanded all to be flain without exception, faving fuch as fled into the Temples, and willed all the houses to be fet on fire. Though Proclamation thereof was made through the City, yet the Tyrians that bore Arms could not fave themselves; for as the Women and Children filled the Temples, fo the

en kept the Entries of their houses, ready to a e occasion that many were faved; who fervis the Garrison of the Macedons, and entring the City with them, were mindful of their Affinity with he Tyrians (Agenor being the Builder of both their Cities) and conveyed many into their thips, which they privately fent unto Sydon; by that means his teen thousand escaped the cruelty of the Sword The number of them that were flain may partly be onjectured, in that there were found dead was he City, fix thousand of such as did bear Ar the Kings anger against the City made the s plorous even unro the Conquerous: For ac shom the fury of the flaughter had left alive, were feerwards hanged upon Croffes all along the Sea-Coast. The Embassadours of the Garthaginians were aved; but War was threatned to be made against hem, from the which he was then hindred by other pulinels he had in hand.

ips Di

all

A

out

he

re

Ay

the

ith

nd

rd

le-

ied

ith

VY

14

p-

an

164

de

eit

ut

es,

es,

m-

ng

he

on

HS

25

be

en

Thus Tyre was taken the feventh moneth after it was belieged; a City notable to Postetity, as well through the antiquity thereof, as by the often change of Fortune it had fuffered. It was builded by Agence, and many years was Mistress of the Seas, not only thereabouts, but in all places where their Navies were heard of; and if we may credit Fame, that City was the first which either taught or learned letters. They builded Cities, and filled them with Inhabitants throughout the greatest part of the world; as Carthage in Africk, Thebes in Boetia, and Cader in Spain, upon the Ocean. It is believed, that by reaton of their free course through all Seas, and by wisting

State of Death Book IN

thing many flrange Countries, they had occasion to look out Seats in which to place their Youth, wherewith they then abounded; or elfe, as some apport, the Inhabitants unwilling to dwell there, by reason of many Earth-quakes, were compelled, by some of Arms, to seek out new dwelling places. But when many casualties had happened unto Tyre, after this destruction being restored to its sommer height of shourist, it now remaineth under the protection of the Roman Clemency. About the same time Alexander received Letters from Darius, wherein at last he was contented to name him

Ling.

His request was , that Alexander would receive bis Dangbeer Saptina for his Wife, with whom be offered Dower, all the Country between Hellespont, and be River of Alys, would referve unto bimself only fuch Kingdoms as lay from thence Eastward; and peradventure he foodle refuse to receive this offer, he willed to consider, that Fortune is not wont to contime long in one Estate, and that the greater felicity men enjoy, the greater envy doth attend them. It was to be doubted (he faid) left be exalted bimfelf through some vain affection, like as Birds nse to do, whose nosural lightness doth convey them to the Start : for there was nothing more difficult, then in such young years, to bear well the height and greatness of For time. He willed bim also to consider, that there remained yet many Countries that be had not touched, and that he should not meet him always in the Streights, baving to pass the River of Euphrates, Tygre, Araxes, and Hydaspes, which were as Bullwarks unto his Dominion; and when he should com

mothe Plains, be would be observed of his fall maker. He put him in remembrance, how look is said be even be could pass Media, Hircania, Backria, and the Indians that bordered on the Green See: and lignistic the Sogdians and Atacholians, of whom we have no other knowledge; then of their mantes only, with other Nations lying towards Monne Cancalian, and the River of Tanais. And although as man hould withstand him, he give him Battel, het he hould grow in age (he said) before he could pass for any Lands. In the latter end, he advised him needs to call him forwards, for he would come soon enough to his destruction.

П

fion th

ome

, by

by

But

af

ner

TO-

me

us .

im

bà

red

end

nly

1

be

rti-

ity

245

egb

10-

for

ME

01

12

d

bě

es,

14

110

nt

Alexander made answer to those Letters by the Messengers that brought them, to this effect:

That Darius offered to bim that which was none of it own, and made a proffer to give that which he had tready loft. For Lydia, Ionia, Acolida, and the Cost Hellespont, which be appointed in Dower, were aleady become the Rewards of his Victory: And as for Laws and Conditions, those were wont to be given and appointed by the Victors, and received of such as were overcome; and if he were ignorant in which of those two Estates be were, that be should adventure be Battelionce again: For be was not ignorant, be ald, before be paffed the Sea, bom Lydia and Cilicia were over small rewards for the making of such a War. But his determination was to Subdue and bring oder bis subjection, both Persepolis, the chief City of Empire, and also Bactria, and Echatana, with the stermost bounds of the Orient: He could fly no where be was able to follow; and therefore counselled in, that he should not fright him with Rivers, who ad learned bow to pass Seas. Thus

6 The Life and Death Book IV.

Thus the Kings wrote one to another; and in the mean feafon the Rhodians yeilded their City and their Haven unto Alexander, who committed the Refe of Cilicia unto Socrates, and the Country about Tyre unto Philoras. Andromachus was made Parmento his Deputy in Caria and Syria; for Alexander minding to accomplish what he had begun, commanded Epheffion, that with his Navy he should fail along the Coast of Phenicia; and so he came with his whole power to the City of Gaza. About the fame time there were folemn Triumphs and Plays at Hibmos, accustomed to be celebrated by the confluence of all Greece. In this a Councel was had, and as the Wits of the Greeks be fudden) they decreed to fond twelve Emballadours unto Alexander, for the carrying unto him a Crown of Gold, in grati-lying the Victory he had won, and the Acts he had done for the faleguard and Liberties of Greece ; and yer a little better they hearkned how the Fame went, and was a day to bend that way that Fortune inclines. Also ander visited not in person all such Couperies and Cities as resuled to do their obesited. dienes unto hith, but made Conquest of them by his Deputies; for Gales Mastered Paphlagonia Antigomus Liconia, and Balachrus overcame Idarne, who was Davins Lieutenant, and won Miletum : Amphiserus and Egilachies, with a Navy of an hundred and fix y Ships, Subdued all the Islands between Afin and Achaid; and also, by the consent of the Inhabitants, got Tenedor, always a Receptacle of the Pertians.

They were at the point to have gotten Scion, but that Pharnabasus, Darius Deputy, having intelligence

in

14

he

ut

e

n-

ail

th

he

79

114

nd

ed

01

ti

ad

nd

ne

)

all

DC.

his

70

ho

bi

nd

lfia

13-

the

but

11

nce

91

conce of it, did first apprehend all such as were of the Macedons Faction, and committed the City with fmall Garrison to Apolo nides and Athensgoras, that were inclined to the Persians. Alexanders Captains for all this continued the Siege of the City, nor to much in trust of their own strength, as in hope of the Faction they had within the City, in which they were not deceived: For through a Sedition which did arise between Apolonides, and the Captains of the Men of War, occation was ministred unto the Maeedons to enter the Town. When the Gate was broken up, and a Band of Macedons entred, then the Citizens, which before had devited to Rebel amink the Persians, took part with Amphiteens and giloens & to that the Garrison of the Persians were lain, and Pharnabasus, with Apolonides and Atheazoras, taken prifoners.

There were twelve Galleys taken, with their buildiers and Rowers, belides thirty Ships and Vefles of Pyrates, with three thouland Greeks that were in pay under the Persians, the Greeks leaving to recruit the Forces of the Macedons 1 and the Pyrates being put to death, the other Ships were ad-

ded to their own Fleer.

It chanced that Aristonicus, the Usurper of Methyu, ignorant of any such thing as chanced in the
ore-part of the night, came with certain Pyrates
ships to enter into the Haven; of whom when the
Watch demanded what he was, he said he was Arimicus, and came to the succour of Pharnabasus:
They answered, He was at rest, and could not then
be spoken withal; but it should be lawful for him,
ting their Friend, to enter into the Haven for that
night,

night, and freak with him when it was day. Aris finites was the tirlt that entred, and the ten Pyrate thips followed him: But whiles they anchored their thips, the Watchmen drew the Chain again over the Flaven, and then called up fuch as lay near about them; whereupon none of them durft relife but were all taken prisoners, and delivered to Amphiteens and Egilocus. From thence the Macedone paffed to Mytelene, which was kept by Chares of Athens, with a Garrison of two thousand Perfans; but when he was not able to endure the Siege, he yeilded up the City, on composition to have their lives faved, and to depart to Imbrofs. Darius despairing of peace, which he thought to have obtained by his Letters and Embassadours, give his minde to Multer a new Army, and freshly to renew the War: Therefore he commanded the Captains and Rulers of his men to have a Rendeyouze at Bubylon; and that Bellus, Governour of the Bidrians, should come thither with all the power he could make. The Badrians are the most hardy people among those Nations, rough men, and much abhorring the delicateness of the Persians: For by reason that they border upon the Scythians, which is a Warlike Nation, they are accultomed to live by spoil, and are conversant continually in Arms; But Beffus, who was suspected of Treason, affecting the Kingdom, and who would not be content with a licond place, put Darius in great jealousies; who baving an inkling that he aspired to be King, seared his Treaton; Beffus having no other way; but by

Alexander wrought all the ways he could to ob

that, to bring his purpole to pals.

look IV. of Alexander the Great. 99

te ir

Ċľ

A WOR

he

to

S.

to

rs,

N

he

le-

the

ver

rdy

ach

by

ich

by

15.3

ing

ich

vbo

red

by

sin knowledge where Daries was, and into what Country he was gone; and yet could not get any Intelligence, by reason of a Custom amongst the erfiant, who are accustomed, with a marvellous delity, to keep close their Princes secrets, in the settering whereof, neither fear of death, nor hope freward, can cause them to bring forth a word. this was an Ancient Discipline which the Kings here used among their Subjects, in pumshing, with ils of life, the lavishness of the tongue, which is here more grievously chartised then any other crime: or is there, in those parts, any Vertue looked for e any mans hands, who hath not the gift of fetelic, whereof Nature hath given a facility in tian. This was the cause that Alexander was igorant of all things that his Enemies did; and herefore continued his Siege before Gaza. Beth as Captain there, who was a man of notable Fielity towards his Prince, and with a fmall Garrion defended the City that was of a large compais: Wherefore Alexander perceiving the advantage of he Scituation, caused many Mines to be made s of the lightness of the ground covered the deligne, wing neither Rocks nor Stones' to give any inipement: They began their Mines on that fide here they within could not behold them; and to soid the suspition of any such work in hand, he uled an approach to be made to the Walls with wers that he had made of Timbers but the ground ould not ferve for their carrying and removing, reason of the looseness of the Sand whereinto wheels link, and was the caule that the loynts the Towers brake afunder. About the carriage UF

H 2

The Life and Death - Brok IV. had, both in withdrawing of them, and in fet-ting them forwards. When he perceived he could not prevail by that means, he drew off his men for that time: But the next day he environed the City round about; to give an affault on every part at once; and before he returned out of his Camp, he made Sacrifice, after his Country manner, requiring the aid of the gods. It chanced, as he was to doing, that a Raven flying by, let fall a Clod (which the carried in her Claws) upon the Kings Head, where it brake in pieces, and the Raven flew unto the next Tower, where her feathers were so entangled with pitch, that the could not fly away, but was taken by the tranders thereabouts. This was thought a matter worthy on which the Diviners thould confult, for he himself was not free from the Superstition of such things-Therefore Aristander, to whom he gave most credit, did interpret the same to be a tigne of the destruction of that City; but yet there was some peril (he faid) appearing towards the Kings perfon ; for which cause he perswaded Alexander, that he should not go about any exercise that day, Though it grieved him much; that one City should be a stay and impediment unto him for his free passage into Egypt, yet he obeyed the Progpollicators, and cauted all his men, for that day, to retire. The Enemies took courage at their decame not forwards; and iffuing out of the City, they it i pon the Rear: But they were more fierd in the beginning of the skirmith, then constant in

took IV. of Alexander the Great. Tot he maintaining of it: for when they law the ma ellows rally themselves, they stayed, and pure ellows further. Alexander hearing the Alasm, and mite forgetting the peril that was prophecied unwhich he was feldom accultomed to do y and reforted thither: where the skirmith was mon for There he was known by a certain Arabian, that was one of Darin Soulliers, who took upon him a de perate enterprize to kill Alexander; and therefor aking his pretence to be as a Fugitive from the erfians . He pe his Sword Il cree underneach larger, and fell down on his knees b fore him the judging that he had fled to him for fuccour. ommanded that he should be rectived among his wn men : But the Arabian therewithat shade olent thrult at the King with his Sword towhich e trepping ande a little, did avoid it from his most and can off the Arithism Hand that Hoffed the Phion of Mexicoder then guidged , That he had an elcaped the heril that should have chanced Min that day! Bur (as I thinky D. thiny can pot avoided, for whiles he was eager in fight a money the foremost whe was Mot with an Arrow. thich passed through his Corfler, and did Rick in is thoulder. Philip, his Physician, did pluck it out. deteat abundance of blood did follow, whereevery than was afraid, for for much as they never wan Arraw pals to far through any Armour bere : But he never changed countenance, nor cobut cauting the blood to be fteliched, and wound to be wrapped up; continued iiii in he skinnish attioned the foremost, either fusier-H 3 mg

7

d

ne

ay lis

n-

25

all

on

be

04-

ald

TC:

OU

felf

S

16.

the

me

berhat

lay. City

his

00

day,

de

the

ity

CTC

11 II

the

ing or differabling his pain. But when the blood that was flayed for the time did break out again, and the wound, which for the newness thereof greved him not much, began to (well and rankle, as the blood waxed cold; then he began to faint and fall down, and was taken up by such as were next unto him, and carried into his Tent. Beting that perceived this, and supposing him to be slain, retired unto the City with great joy and triumph, but Alexanders wound being yet unhealed, he cannot also and the Walls to be cast down in diversiplates by the Maners.

They within made a Counter work as high as the old Wall, but it did not reach to the height of the Towers made upon the Mount is for that the inner parts of the City were subject to the shot of the enemy. But not long after , a Mine, the Wall by it being overchrown, and a breach made, through which the Macedone did enter, was the utter loss of the Town; where Alexander prelling on amongs the foremost adventurously, had his leg hurt with a stone: Notwithstanding that, he mounted up by the help of his weapon ( his former wound yet unclosed) and fought amongst the foremost, being in a great fur you that in the Siege of one City he had received two wounds. Beris that had fought notably, and received divers hurts, was fortaken of his own men; and notwithstanding which, he maintained fill the fight, and all his Armour was imbrued with his own blood, and his Enemies But when he was inclosed sound, Alexander who was wont to wonder at the Vertue of his Ere

mics

look IV. of Alexander the Great. 100

ies, being puffed up with an infolonition, fill meo him : Bees, then that not die as then woulded the felf , but what sever torments may be invented. elieve that thou shall suffer them box all which words, there appeared in Bern no token of fears but he beheld the King with air undaunted countenance, and would not answer him one word: Whereupon Alexander faid; See you not how oblinate be doth continue? He will neither kneel, her to much as ask mercy; but groans footh break his Amee, if nothing elfe can do it. Thus his Fortune did after his Nature, and turned his Wrath into Fury: For he causing Cords to be put through Berie eet, whilest he was alive, did draw him about the City with Horses, glorying in that he did imitate schilles (of whom he was descended ) in the like

ulliction of his Enemy.

e,

at

re

in

n,

h

U+

he

a<sub>1</sub>

he he by shith

щ

yet

oe. he

ghi

cn

735

es I

ho

1:64

ics

There were flain of the Perfishs and Arabish's en thouland; and the Victory was not unbloody to the Macedons. This Siege was not fo famous through the Nobility of the City, as it was by the double danger the King was in, who making hafte to pals into Egypt, lent Amintas with ten Galeys into Macedon, to levy more Souldiers : For though he were always a Conquerour, yet his men bereidiminished; and he trusted not fo much to the Souldiers of those Countries he had subdued, as he did to his own Nation. The Egyptians being a people that always were offended with the increase of the good fortune of the Persians, who in their Government over them used much bride and coveroutness: And therefore leeking all occahous to revolt, had received Amentary who came

H+

Elicana Beatle Book V.

to them rather by way of treaty, then by force : and now especially at Alexanders coming, they plucked up their spirits, and affembled a great number to meet him at Pelusum, where they judged he would

enter.

The seventh day, after he removed from Gaza. he came to the place in Egyps, which now is called Alexanders Camp; from whence he fent his Army unto Pelusium, by the Land-way, and he himself, with a choice Band of men, was conveyed thither upon the River of Nile. The Persians durst not ahide his coming, being in doubt the Egyptians would revolt : And therefore , when Alexander drew near unto Memphis, where Aftaces, Darins Lieutenant, was with a power of men, he came over the River to meet Alexander; and yeilding himfelf, he delivered him eight hundred Talents, with all the riches belonging to the King of Perfia. From Memphis he passed upon the same River inte the inward parts of Egypt; and so ordered the Government, of the Country, that he changed nothing of their Laws and Customs: Which having effected, he had a great desire to worship the Oracle of Jupiter Hammon. But it was declared unto him, that it was not possible for him to match with any great number, the Country he had to reavel through being spread all over with birren fands, which being heated with the Sun, would burn their jest in such sort, that it should be intolerable for them to travel, not only with the heat and want of water, but also with the rowling fand, which was so deep , and would so fink under their feet, that they hould not raily fir. All which difficulties

CIV. Of Alexanders her Great (10) Reulties the Egyptism fet forth to be greater in they were indeed. But Mexader, for the rement delite he had to exceed the condition man, was so servently bent to with that famous or deired that others should believe to be his father, that nothing could withhold him in performing of that nerprize: Therefore with fuch as he had ointed to accompany him in the journey, he pa d by water upon the Nile; until he came to the Marith of Meetir: The Embaffadours of the C and came to him thither and brought him I fents; whom he gently entertained , affuring them of his Friendships which done, he were forward in his Voyage. The first and second days it was semed tolerable mot being yet come to the harren and defolate Wilderness and vet the ground hey palled on was but unfruitful and barren carelys but when the Plains appeared that were govered over with deep lands, they then looked round about them, and fought for Land, as men belaccyflomed to do when they fail on the Main Seas for they could not judge themselves on Land, where they neither fam Tree, nor any appearance of habitation, or haunt of men: And there was no water to be found in that dry and burning place ; and fuch as they had brought with them in Bottles npon Camels backs; was confumed and frent: Befides, the Sun was fo hor, that it dried and burned up all things. When they were afflicted after this manner, whether it were by the Will of God. or by chance withe Clouds fuddenly everwhelmed

the Sky, and To thirdowed them, that it was a given

comfort

0

d

W

f,

er

2-

15

er

KS

ne

g

S

1.

ta

)+ )+

ig )+

to

el

S,

in a-

bi

d,

H

h

23

comfort unto fach as were weared with heat shough they wanted water to drink. But to far ple their need, there fell by and by a great Shower which every men ( for the great defire he had no drink) gaped ito receive with open mouth When they had travelled four days in travelling these wilde Defarts, and were come near unto the place of the Oracle, there appeared a great swarm of Crows flying low before them 5 and when the Army marched foftly, they fate down upon the eround, and fometimes flew forwards, as though they had been Guides to thew unto them the way. At length they came unto the place confectate unto Jupiter, where it was a wonder to fee in the midit of forwilde a Defart, a ground to environed aniall parts with high Trees, defending the hear of the Sun and finch a number of Springs running every where , which caused the Woods always to look green : The Air, all feafons of the year there, is like unto the Spring-time, wholefome, and temperate. This Country doth border on the Ethitowards the East s and upon the Anabiant, whom they call Tragladites, upon the South; whose Country stretched to the Red Seat Is confineth on the West with other Ethiops, which are called Simmer. Towards the North lieth a Nation, called Natamons, who inhabiting upon a flat thore, are acculiomed to live upon the spoils of the Sea, and lye always in wait, upon the Goaff, to spoil fuch Ships as fuffer wrack : The people which inhabit about the Wood, be called Ammonians, and dwell in Cottages feattered abroad : The midft of their Wood, closed about with a triple Wall, is unto them companie

note IV. of Adexander the treat. To the man Calle: In the first Ward is the Palace of his Ancient Kings; in the found their Wires, children and Concubines were lodged; in which place the Oracle of Japiter is also; and the third is place for their Men of Wan. There is also and the third is place for their Men of Wan. There is also and the third is wood, having a Spring, called the Familia of the Sun; which in the morning is luke worm, in the midst of the day cold, and in the evening worm ignites at mid-night it is scalding hor; and is it draweth towards day, it diminishes his heat more and more.

at,

er,

th.

ing

the

he

the ab

ıy.

n-

he

ed

of

18

Ė,

n-

١,

fe

h

]-

Ē,

1,

h

it N

1

0

m

The fame Effigies that is worthipped for Japa ter, hath not the fimilitude of other Images Crafts-men do make for gods but is very like unto the fathion of a Navel, having in the midfle thereof, an Emerald f t about wish Pearls Wi ny antwer is required, the Prietta carry the fame in a Ship of Gold, that both many Plates of Sibver hanging on both fides the Matrons and the Virgins tollow after , linging a firange Song, after their Country manner; whereby they believe they do oblige Jupiser to thew his Oradle manifest and when Almander was come unto the place. the Eldel of the Priets, who came to meet him, Colored him in the Name of Jupiters Son', for fo he faid ) his minde was that he should be called ! Thereupon Alexander forgetting the state of his Mortality, faid, That he did both receive din as condedge the Name. Then he demanded further the Empire of the whole World were appointed im by Deffiny? There the Prophet, prepared before to Flattery, answered, That the whole World should some under bis Obeyfance. After that , he demanded. bus

temanded. Whether all such bad suffered death that and muribered bir Father? The Privil answered, but his Father could not be harmed by the Ireason f any man; but he faid; That all Philips Killers three pasts death: And one thing he added more, that he fould be Levincible, till fuch time as he made Sacrifice, and both offered unto the Idol, and gave great gifts unto the Priests. He permitted also his Friends to ask Counsel of the Oracle for fuch things as they would demand . Yet they enquired no further, but if it were Jupiters will that they should worthip their King with Divine Honours? To this it was unswered, That if they bonoured their Victorious Prince as a god, it should the acceptable unto Jupiter. It he had with judgmont weighed the Oracle, he might have well perceived the unruth that was therein ! but whom fortune hath thought to believe in her , the maketh them, many times more defirous of glory then able to receive its Alexander not only fuffered, but commanded himfelf to be called the Son of Jupiter stand whileft he went about to encrease the Fame of his Acts, he did corrupt and defice them with fuch variey; and the Macedons, according to the governed by Kings, but yet referving a greater shadow of Liberty then other Nations, did with-Band him more oblinately in affecting of this Immortality, then was either expedient for him or them. But these things shall be declared in time convenient; I will proceed to declare the rest of This Aces, der one to the harders a was in her gift of When Alexander was returned from Hamming

d minded

d come to the Marth of Mosts, feituate to the life of Physics, he viewed the nature of the just and was at the first determined to be ity within the Mand: But afterwards, confident g the life not to be large enough, he chole ground where Alexandria now flandeth by the name of the Builder ) containing all ound between the Mear and the Seas the walls hereof were in compais eighty furlangs. When a had taken order for the building of this City. aving fuch behinde him as he had appointed for e performance thereof, he departed unto Me bis. He had a defire ( not unreasonable, it it has een in time convenient) to have feen both th award parts of Egypt, and also of Erbiopia; and the affection he had to view Antiquities, and the amous places of Mamnon and Tyton, had near he wars he had in hand being of much more imortance then any such idle Peregrination, gave im no time to fulfil his fantalie; therefore he apointed Afilus a Rhodian, and Pencelted a Muceu, to the Government of Egypt, alligning them ur thousand Souldiers for detence of the Country s and gave Polymen thirty Galleys to keep the louth of Nile. He made Apollonius Ruler of that art of Africa which joyneth unto Egypt; and Chor nines Receiver of the Tributes in both Countries, his new City was foon replenished with a great nultitude; for Commandment was given to all ountries thereabouts, to fend Inhabitants unto exaudria. It is faid, that when the King, accordof the Macedons Cuftom, used the Ceremo TRIGIT

d,

273

re,

ler

ol, t-

Y

M

10

Ì

4

8

10

,

,

G

9

ï

b Dock tv

the Birds came and fed thereupon's which being taken by many for an unlucky Token, it was an fivered by their Diviners, That there should be great refort of strangers to that City, and that it finald give nonrishmene to many Lands. As the King went down the River of Nile, Hetter, the Son of Larmenio, delivous to follow him, was drowned; for the Vellel that cassied him funk, being crowded with over-many men: He stived long with the Stream, but his garments gave impediment to his swinning, so that his breath was near gone before he could recover the shore, where for want of five cour he died; whose unfortunate chance allexander took grievously, as one that did bear him special savour; and therefore caused his body to be homourably buried.

The death of Andromachus, Lieutenant of Syria, whom the Samaricans had burned alive, was the increase of Alexanders sorrow, for the revengement whereof he made all the haste he could; and at his coming into Samaria, had the Authors of the act delivered into his hands, whom he put to death, and then placed Memnon in Andromachus Room. He delivered into the Methinians hands, Aristonicus and Crijolaus, who usurped over them, whom they after many grievous torments did hang over their walls: That done, he gave Audience to the Embassadours of the Athenians, the Rhodians, and the Scots. The Athenians did gratific unto him his Victory; and required, that such Greeks as wife taken prosoners might be restored to liberty. The Rhodians, and the Scots, complained of their Carrier

arrifons: He granted to them all their requests of restored to the Myreson all their Pledges on reased their Territory and Dominion, in respect of the fidelity they shewed unto him, and gave them curity for the money they had implayed in the wars. He gave honour also, according to their dervings, unto the Kings of Gyprus, who revolted om Daring unto him, and had aided him with hips at the Slege of Tyre: Amphoreus, his Adminal, had Commission to drive the Sersians out of the Isle of Green; but especially, that he should sid the Seas of Pyrates, who troubled and spoiled all the Islands, whilest these two Princes; Alexander and Daring, converted their Powers the one against the other.

19,

ng

be

ü

hė

on

di

he

113

TC

CH

le#

al

0-

as

C-

ıd

of

to

us

ls,

n,

18

tq

5,

to

**a**5

it

II.

Having ordered these things the did dedicate Hercutes, at Tyre, a great Randing Goblet, and inty Bowls of Gold: That done, he fet his whole unde and care upon Darius, cauling it to be proaimed, that every man should for forwards tolards Emphrases. But Darius understanding that is knemy was gone through Egypt into Africa. and in doubt whether he should stay about Meles camin, or withdraw into the inner parts of his ngdom; judging, that he in person should preill with those remote Nations, in bringing of them wards to the War . which his Lieutenauts thould be to well able to effect: Yet when Fame had olified, and he understood by affured advertisethat Alexander was returned out of Egypt fully resolved to follow him with all his power what Country forver he should go; he then e order, that the force of all the furthelt Nations should

114 Authorite Bookly.

Right draw cowards Babylon, knowing the refolution of his Liverry he had to match within. This ther relorted both Bachrison, Septimes, and Indiana, of for the power of other Countries were come thither before) and having the double number of men that he had before in Cilicia, he prepared Arthem wanted : both Horsemen and Horses were weapons but Dares, had Swords and Bucklers given unto them 3" and to increase the power of his Horsemen, he delivered many Horses to be managed and broken by the Footmen. He had prepased also two hundred Waggons fee with Hooks, which in those Countries were esteemed things of great force, and judged to be of a wonderful rerrour to the Enemy: they were made with great long Spikes sticking out before , and with Swords fet overthwart on both fides ! The Wheels were also full of Iron Pikes right forth, and of great Hooks both upward and downward, wherewith all things were cut in funder that came in their way. When his people were thus furnithed with Armour, and provided fufficiently for the Wars, he temoved from Babylon, keeping the River of Tyhand: He overspread, with his Army, all the Plains of Melopotamia, after that he had pelled the River of Tygrin; and understanding that his Enemy was approaching the Tent Satropaces before with a thoufand cholen Horfemen , and afterwards appointed fix thousand to Mazeus, to stop Alexander in the passage over the River ; who had also Commission

to waste and burn all the Country where he ed his enemies should come, thinking to them for want of victuals, confidering that the dering and by fleath's they themselves have plenty brought of all things, both by Land and River Tygris. At length he came to a village ca led Arbella, which afterwards was famous by part of his Victuals and Carriage, and made stidge over the River of Lieus, and in five day conveyed over his Army, as he had done before over Euphrates: passing forwards from thence a pout fourfcore furlongs, le came to another Ci alled Boumello, and there encamped. This Com ferved wonderful well for arenging of this Bate els in the large Plains, passable ton Horles every where, and without thrubs, or thort bruth to cover he ground withal, having to free a prospect, that hic eye might childen things a great way off. And there appeared any Hills within the Plain, Daran aufed the fame to be cast down, and to be made les sel to the ground. Such as by conjecture made reto Alexander of Durius powers could not be crested; for he could not think after to many flain, note could be a greater power gathered together hen be had before

11-

line

of r-

of

re

iis

1-

3~

5,

gs ul

it

ls re

th

ir

h

, ,-,:

119

er

25

H

he

to

But he that doubted not any peril, much less the multitude of them, after the eleventh encamping came to the River of Euphrates, over the which he made Bridges, passing over his horsenten, and afterwards his footmen. For Maxing that was sent terwards him with six thousand hosseness to binder

3

stage, durit not encounter him. When he had continued there a few days, not only to relt his Soul-diers, but also to confirm their mindes, and to encourage them, he let forwards resolutely against his enemies, fearing that they would have retired back into the inward parts of Persia, where he should have been inforced to follow them by waste places and delarts. Therefore the fourth day he fled by Arbella, and came to the Riversof Tygris. All the Country beyond the River was on a Imoak. newly fee on fire by Mazeus, who burned all things where he came even as he had been an enemy. ender at the first, by reason of the darkness of the imosk, stayed for fear of Ambushments. But when they which were sent to seour the Country, reported that all things were clear, he appointed a few horsemen to prove the passage of the River, who found the deephels at the hist entiry to come to the horse breast, and in the midit of the stream to the horse neck. There is no River in all the East part of the world that runneth to violently, which belides that the waters of other Rivers do run into it, driveth down stones with the stream; so that of its swiftness it is called Tygris, which in the Persian tongue is to fay an Arrow. The footmen thereof divided into two Bands, and holding their Armour over their heads, were inclosed on both sides with the horsemen, and so passed, till they came to the deep of the channel, without any great difficulty. The King was the first amongst the sootmen that passed over to the further lide, who (with his hand, feeing his voice could not be heard) thewed the shallow places unto the Souldiers. But they had much to do

## Book IV. of Alexander the Great. IT

d

C

re

ê

6.

١,

25

4-

ne.

at

n

'n.

Ce

(e

he

at

th

ft-

ue

ed

er

he

cp

he

èd.

ng

do

10

to keep their footing, by reafon of the Rones where upon they flumbled, and of the violence of the water that took their feet away. Such as carried burthens on their backs had the greatelt travel, no being able to stay themselves by reason of the trouble of their carriage, were born down by violence of the stream. And whilest every man went about to recover again his own, there fell greater strife amongst themselves, then they had with the stream and the heaps of fardels that every where flowed pon the water, bare down many of them. The sing cryed to them, that it was sufficient to keep heirarms, and let the rest go, promising to recomence every man; but they neither followed his ounfel, nor did as he commanded them; for be des the noise that was amongst them, Fear filled heir cars as they were swimming and wading rough the water. At length where the fiream was of fhallow they came forth, there being nothing incarried or wanting amongst them all, saving a w fardles. If their enemies had made but a profragainst them, they might easily have been put to But Alexander's good fortune turned his emies away from him, with which faccels he palthe River of Granike, when so many thousands nortemen and footmen kept the passage against After that manner he overcame the multitude his enemies in the Streights of Cilicia. Though nardinels were luch, that it sometimes wanted yet his felicity ever delivered him out of tremity of peril.

If Mazeus had done his part, and fet upon them as they were passing the River, he might ea-

13

fily

116 The Life and Death Book IV.

y have put them to diffres, being unarmed and ous of order; but after the Macedons had armed themselves (being then tro late ) he began to shew himself with a thousand Horsemen. When Alexander perceived the small number that came against him, he caused Ariston Captain of the Peowishs to give a full charge upon them. The Hortemen that day notably behaved themselves, but especially Ariston, who with his Spear ran Satrofacer the chief Captain through the throat, and purfuing him into the midst of his Troop, threw from his horse, and cut off his head, which to his great commendation he brought and threw down before the King. Alexander tarried there two days, and on the morning caused warning to be given by Proclamation for his fetting forwards. But in the first watch of the night the Moon tuffeled an Eclipse; and losing her brightness, became afterwards red as blood, and then waxed dim and dark: The strangeness of this sight did strike a religious fear amongst the Macedons, whereof proseeded such a doubt and dread, that they fell into a murmuring, why they should be brought forwards in fuch a manner against the will of the gods into the uttermost bounds of the Earth, where they could neither pals the Rivers, nor enjoy the accustomed use of the Elements, finding nothing but wafte grounds and wilde defarts; all which was endured (they faid) for the ambition of one man; whole vain-glory the blood of so many thoulands should be shed. He despifeth (faid they) his own Country, he hath fortaken Philip for his Father, and hath affected Heaven in his toolish imagination

Book IV. of Alexander the Great.

V

.

•

)-

.

11

0-

d

W

to

W

re

o

15.

17

ne

ad

e-

D-

n-

I.

ds

TC

IC-

Juc

vas n;

ou-

his

la-

na+

ion

117

gination. And now it was come near unto fidtion, when Alexander, that in all things was without teat, commanded the chief Rulers and Caprains of his men of War to affemble at his Pavilion. and there commanded the Albronom is of the Empfians (whom he judged to have most under-Handing of the Planets ) to declare their opinions. They understanding very well the revolutions of the time, and their appointed courses, knew that the Moon was ever eclipsed, when that either the was underneath the earth, or elfe when het light was blemished by opposition of the Sun; which reason referved amongst themse ves, they accustome notto acquaint the people with it. But affirm the the Greeks were under the Aspect of the Sun, and the Perfeans under the Moon: and therefore to often as the Moon faileth of her light, it lightid great deltruction unto the Nations under that conitellation. And to confirm that opinion of theirs. they brought in old Presidents of the Kings of Peris to whom the eclipse of the Moon had lighted that the gods were against them in fighting of heir Battels. There is nothing more effectual hen superstition to govern a multitude, which otherwise is without rule, tumultuous, and mutable; but when they have once conceived a religion, though it be but vain, they are more obewhich thing might be well perceived, when the inferes of the Egyptians were divulged amongst he people. For they threightways were removed tom their dulnels and despair, and flirred up to ape and confidence.

13

Acx-

and r therefore that could use the time, and imploy his Souldiers in their good mood, in the fecond watch removed their camp, keeping Tyeris on is right hand, and the Mountains which they call Gordian on his left: By break of day the Scouts that he fent before to discover the enemy, returned to him with report of Daring his coming : then the Souldiers prepared themselves to fight, and marched forwards in order of battel. But those who were discoverers for the Persians were a thousand horsemen, who fremed to the Macedons to be a great Army. The Scouts commonly have that property, that when they cannot finde out the truth, they is magine through fear things that be falle. When Alexander understood the certainty, he fent towards them a small number of his own horsemen, at whose coming they fled, and were partly flain, and part of them taken prisoners. That done, he fent forth another party as well to discover further as also to quench the fire which the Persians had made through all the Country; for as they fled away they put fire into the roofs of their houles, and the fracks of Corn, which foon took hold above, and confumed all, till it came to the ground. By the extinguishing of those fires, great plenty of Corn was preferved, and abundance of all other things enfued amongst the Macedons: this was a motive which incouraged the Souldiers greatly to purfue their enemies, for they doubting that they might their ute, purfued them with all the speed they could make providence growing from necessity. For Mawhen

Book IV. of Al when he faw himfelf purfued to the Macedons, the greater part will

1

S

d

e

t

1,

n

S

lt d

31

Q

le

16

d

10

25

17

ve

ue

ht

IQ

14 4-

е, en Alexander understanding that Darin drew wards him, and was come within an hundred an fifty furlongs, made provision of Victuals remained four days in the fante place. Danie Letters were there intercepted, which he had written to the Greeks, in perswalion either to kill or betray Alexander. He doubted whether he should recite the fame Letters openly, or no, having no mi-Arust of their fidelity and affection towards him. But Parmenio disswaded him from acquainting the Souldiers with any fuch promifes of Darier confidering that the committing of fuch an act confifted in one mans hands, and that coverouncis never judged any thing unlawful. He followed Parmenia's counsel, and so removed his Camp, As they were marching, one of the Eunuches that attended upon Darius wife, brought word how the fainted, and was in great peril of death; for the in very deed was so wearied with continual travel and affection of minde, that the fell down in a fwound betwire her mother-in-law and her young daughter, and so died. He had no sooner reported it, but another came with tydings that the was dead indeed; whereat Alexander was no less forrowful than if his own mother had been in the fame condition; and weeping no less then Darine should have done, he repaired into the Tent where Daring mother was litting by the dead body; his forrow there renewed, when he law her lie profrate upon the ground, that present misfortune calling to minde her passed calamities: she took in her arms Daring

The Life and Death . Book IV

Daughters, a comfort to her in their nutual dolour, but that the was enforced to comfort them. Her young Grand-child Rood in her presence, the more to be pitied; because that for his youth he yet understood not the calamity that as growing on him. A man would have thought, Alexander had wept for his own cause; he lamented and would receive no comfort, but abstained from meat, and commanded all honour to be done to the dead corps after the Country-custome of the Persians. Worthy he was thereby to receive the due reward of his meekness and continency. He ad only feen her once before, which was on the whe was taken, and then came not to vilither, but Darius mother; the excellency of her beauty was no provokement to him of luft, but of glory. Of thole Eunuches that were about the Queen; there was one Twister, who during this lamentation escaped by a Gate that was unwarded, and fled unto the Persians Camp, where he was by the Watchmen brought to Davis presence When Darits law him lamenting and tearing his cloaths, he was in a labouring expectation what his forrow. flould be, doubting what thing he might fear molt. Thy countenance (quoth he) declareth that some great milebief is bus peneds. Take beed thou conceal nothing from my mistrable cars: I have learn d to be unfortumuse; and it's often times a comfort to a man in his calaming to know his mishap. It it not the missing of my wife and children that thou woulded inform me outh & Which is the thing that I suffect most, and fear weeks; and which (as I believe) is also most grievous without Northing less (quark Tyriner) the fame honour

you ver

> the fw cor of

m fla

Ba

go to w T

ar vi ha

> ca be if

I it

h

Book liv. of Alexander the Green

H

3-

r

1

1

d

c

C

e

the like is used by him that is the Conquerous - Bu your wife is the cause of my amazement, who is a your now dead.

when that word was once spoken, there we nothing but lamentation and mourning throughout the Camp; and Daring could not be otherwise perswaded, but that she was slain; because she would not consent to her misusement; and in the vehemency of his forrow, cried out:

O Alexander, what so great an offence have I committed, against thee? Whom of the kindred have I suit, that thou shouldest requite me with this cruelsy? Thou hast done it without an provokement of my part. But he it so that thou dost move a just war against mexical the part therefore to make war with women?

Tyriores thescupon did swear by the immortal gods, that there was no kinde of villary done anto her, but that Alexander lamented her death, and wept no less then he himself would have done Those words did drive him into a further suspicion and jealousie, conjecturing that Alexander's behaviour had proceeded from the familiar convertation had betwist them. Therefore he commanding all persons from him saving only Tyristes, that dy can take no place, Torments threightways shall e brought before thee; I require thee therefore, any reverence of thy Prince remain within thy heart, tell me without compulsion the thing that defire to know, and am ashamed to enquire it possible, being of the age that he is, and h ring her in his hands, that he should not atten er a Tyriotes offered hundelf to be racked in try

of the cause, and called the gods to witness, that the was never used but chattly and reverently. At length, when he was throughly perswaded that his words were true; he covered his face, weeping a long space, and afterwards the tears yet distilling down his cheeks, uncovered it, and holding up his hands to Heaven, said:

O you gods whom I worship, I require you chiesty to establish this Kingdom unto my self: but if you have determined my ruine and decay, then my request is, that none may reign as King in my Dominion, but even be that is so just an Enemy, and so merciful a Conqueront.

And therefore, though he had twice before required peace at Alexander's hands, and prevailed not, but had converted all his minde towards the wars; yet he was then so overcome with the continency of his enemy, that he sent twelve of the chiefest of his blood as Ambassadours to treat with him upon conditions of peace: Alexander calling a Councel, gave them audience, to whom the eldest spake in this manner:

That Darius hath now the third time demanded peace of you, no power hath compelled him, but your justice and continency hath invited him unto it. He cannot perceive that either his Mother, his Wife, or Children were prisoners, saving for the want of their company. Tou take care of their chastities which remain alive, like a Father; Tou give to them the honour opportaining to them, and suffer them to continue in their former estate. I see that sadness in your countenance which Isaw in Darius when I parted from him, and yet he doth mourn for his Wife, and you for your Enemy:

Book IV. of Alexander the Great

7.

lat

At Dis

2

ng nis

fly

ve

en

12

E-

ed he

li-

be

th

a

fle

ed

ur He

or

e-

141

218

N.

Ur

13

Enemie: and if the oare of her buriel you had now stood in Barrel in readings of him. Is it any marvel therefore if he re him. Is it any marvet therefore a new contract per feet a man, that it fo friendly disposed towards What shall they need to contend with arms. I whom there remaineth no batted? In his farme ty be offered that the River of Alys, which bo on Lydia, foould be the Confines of your Empires but now be profferesh you in Dower with bit Daught be delivered out of hand all those Countries that lie between Hellespont and Euphrases. For the performance of which his Promise, and for the observing of Peace, Ocehus his Son now in your possession shall be pleage for his part. His nequest is, to have his Mobee and his two Danghters reffered unto him, for objob you shaft receive thirty thousand Talents. E sept I knew the moderation that is in you, I would not be fo bold to fay that this is a time when you ought not mly to grant peace, but also to seek for it your felf: Look back and behold what a great thing you le zue be binde you, and forefee how much it is that you cover beore you. An Empire over-great is dangerous and it is and to bald that which you are not able to receive. Do you not sie, that those Ships which be of exceeding carness, cannot well be governed? Judge that the bethe cause that Darius lost so much, because that overmuch is the occasion of much lost: It is more easie to et many things, then to keep a few. How much more eafily do our Hands catch, then hold fast? The very Death of Darius wife now doth shew, that you have not fo great occasion to shew mercy as you had before. The Embassadours did withdraw into another place, and he debated in Councel his opinion. It

was

EST CART DON'T BOOK TO

g before any durft utter what they thought they were uncertain how the King was inat length Purmenis spake, and said :

opinion was ever, that the prisoners taken weld redeem them, whereby a great fum of momight base been made of them, who now resining in captivity, trouble the bands of many man of Tervice. And now I think most necessary of all, that you exchange for thirty Talents of Gold, this old Woman, and the two young Damzels, which be but impediments and disturbance to your manches. Here is a rich Realm to be gotby Treaty, without any bazard of Battel. For re was never any before you ( quoth he ) that was Lord of all the Countries in length and bredth ping between liter, and Euphrates. He willed him herefore rather to have respect towards Macedonia, then to look forward towards Badria and the In-

These words liked not the King; and therefore fo foon as Parmenio had made an end of his Speech, he made this answer: And if I were Parmenio, I would rather defire Money, then Glory. But now ing I am Alexander, I am not in any doubt of poverty, and bave in confideration, that I am a King, and no Merchant: I have nothing whereof I will make Sale, I will much lest sell my Fortune. If I were in minde to deliver the Prisoners, it were much better to give them freely, then to vanfome them for

Hereupon he called the Embassadours, and anfwered them in this fort:

Book IV. of Alexander the Green.

20

n-

en

as

-2-

my

ry

of

11-

t-

at.

ib.

4

1-

e

1,

D.

f

,

1

Shew you to Darius, that left to an enemy, and let him not think the any respect to his friendship in those things th done of mine own clemency and liberality. bim impute the same in any wife towards himself, to the inclination of mine own nature; and that I tend not against mens calamities, but against the fo of mine Enemies. Infe not to make war with wom and prisoners ; for be must be armed to mbom 1 owe my batred. And though it were fo indeed, he meant good faith in his peace asking, yet peradoes ture I would take advice before I would confent. But leeing that at one time be bath provoked my Souldiers of betray me, and at other times stirred up my friends with money to destroy me, I must pursue him to the autern not as a righteons enemy, but as one shar workers that you do bring; I should acknowledge bim to be Conquerous. His liberality duth give me all that it behinds
the River of Euphrases, not confidering in what place freak now unto you. Have you forgotten that I as affed the River of Euphrates, and incompad beyond he bounds ye proffer me in Dowry? Drive me from ence, that I may know the Same to be yours, when on would infeoff mer He proffereshme bis Dangher pub no greater liberality then he would do to one of his ervauts. Doth be think to dame a pleasure in prorring me to be bis Son-in-law before Mazeus? Co and er shis to your King, that both what he bash loft and bas be hath yet in possession, shall be umo me thereards of the War, which shall determine the bound both our Empires, and by the fortune of the bassel phich we shall fight to morrow, appoint to each of us

OZCH

been the second person, and not covered to be equal nee. I would person and not covered to be equal nee. I would person the bave granted bis re-But as two Sans cannot shine on the Earth at a so likewise two such great Kingdoms cannot be at time, without the subversion of the world. There he les him either this day yield himself, or else presented against the morrows fight; nor let him perswade himself to have any other fortune then what he bath proved already.

The Embaffadouts replied: That feeing he was resolved to proceed with War, he did Royally that was plain unto them, and did not feed them with hope of peace. Their tequest was therefore that they might be dispatched to their Prince, to warn him to prepare himself likewise. When they returned, there was no way but to prepare for the fight. Wherefore Darius fent for Mazeus with three thousand horsemen to keep the passages by which the Macedons should pass. When Alexander had performed the Funerals of Darius wife, leaving a small guard behinde, with all such as were unproticable for the fight, he fet forward towards his Enemies. His tootmen were divided into two Battels, empaled with horsemen on both sides, and his carriages were placed in the midft. He fent Medinas with horsemen upon the spurs to discover where Darius was; but he not daring to adventure far, because Mazeus was there strongly quartered, returned back and reported, that there was nothing to be heard but the noyfe of men and the neighing of horfes. Mazeus alfo (the Scouts of Alexander

ng discovered ) gave intelligence to approach of the enemy: Daring, who try the event of the Battel in the open commanded his Souldiers to be armed, and pu army in array of Battel. Two thouland of t actrian and the Dahan borfe, and four thousand of the Arachofians and Sufians did make the Wing : These were followed by a hundred hooker Chariots. Next unto them was Bellio with a thouand Badrian horse, and two thousand of the Me ligete did back him on his rear. To these the of many Nations, not mixed, but in distinct R ments, did joyn their formidable power ; after th triobarganes and Oriobates, with the Mardians as ogdisns, did bring up the Army of the Perfian his part of Darius Army was commanded in chief Orfines, descended from seven Persian Kings, and criving also his Original from the noble King Co There were other Nations that followed thele ut hardly known to their own Neighbours. After hom, Cradates having tifty booked Chartors, placed Band of Caspian horsemen before them, and bende them were the Indians and the other inhaters of the red Sea, rather names of men then go istance. This square was also empaled with the oer fifty Chariots, unto the which the mercenary ouldiers were joyned: after them followed the men Armenia the less, then the Babylonians, and next Bellicans, with such as inhabit the Cossean Mounns. The Gortuans came next, who fometime folned the Medians out of Euboia; but at those days generated from their Country-cultoms. The Phrygi-, Corbonions and Parthians did close the reas.

0

1

.

1

8

B

5

Ċ

1

0

1

f

ð

\*

20.7

5

ŀ

t

d

2

128 The Life and Death Book IV

In the Battel on the right hand were the people of the greater Armenia, the Cadulians & Cappains and Medians, who had fifty hooked Chanots: the fum of his whole Army was forty five thousand horsensen, and two hundred thousand footmen. When they were placed in order of Batthey marched forward ten furlongs, and then were commanded to make a halt. Whilest the Perfires after that manuer tarried for their Enemies, ere fell a sudden fear amongst the Macedins, whereof there appeared no cause; and yet every man was amazed, and a fecret dread entred into their hearts. The lightning that fell out of the air, it being in the Summer-featon, feemed like fre, and the flames fuddenly appearing were thought to come from Darius Camp. If Mazeur, who was fent out to oblerve their coming, had fer upon them while they were in this fear, he might have performed fome notable act. But he was flow in the enterprize, and remained upon the top of an Hill, contented that he was not affailed.

ſe

ke Pi

th th

to

ye E

ov

n

Op con he on

Alexander perceiving the terrour that invaded his Souldiers, made a figure for them to flay, and gave order that they should unarm themselves, and refresh their bodies; giving them to understand, that there was not any cause why they should entertain so vain a sear, seeing their Enemies were yet a good distance from them. At length, when he perceived they had recovered their spirits, he exhoused them to receive courage, and put on their armour; but yet he thought nothing more expedient then to fortiste his Camp in the same place. The next day Mazens, who had planted himself on a high

Book IV. of Alexander the Great. Tag

a high Hill, from whence he might behold his E nemies Camp, either for fear, or else because h Commission was but only to discover the morion of his Enemies, returned again unto Darius. Upon his departure, the Macedons immediately polfelfed themselves of the Hill which he had forfaken, the fame being of more fireigth then the Plain where they remained before, from whence they might behold their Enemies Campa And though the Mift which the mount Hills did call forth, took not away clearly the use of their prospect, vet it hindred them to differn the division of their Enemies Battels, and their order; their multirude overspread the fields; and the noise of their numper did fill their ears, though they were far off. Then Alexandes begun to revolve in his minde. nd to debate with himself one while Parmenio's Opinion, and another time his own, for he was come to fai forth, that he could not retire, except e were Victorious, without the great destructin of his Army. The multitude of his Enemies noved him much, in respect of his small numbers: let on the other part; remembred what great Acis e had done with them? and how many Nations e had vanduilhed : So that his hope furmounting is fear, he thought it of all most dangerous to deer the Battel any longer, left desperation should row amongst his men ; and therefore dissembling he matter, he caused the Metcenary Horsemen . ind the Peoney to pals on before, and divided his balanz (as it bath been faid ) into two Battels. ind impaled the fame with Horlemen on both des. By that time the Mist vanished, and it wax-

ing

Ý.

c

n

C

tt

u

d

d

d

n-

re

n

he

ir

e-

ce.

on

gh

find armed always in a readiness to receive us, whereof I have advertisement, so that they cannot be decreed that way; therefore there duth remain no more, but that you prepare your selves to the Bat-

When he had by these words put them into courage, he diffinified them from Counfel, to refresh their bodies. Darius conjecturing, that his Enemies would have done that which Parmenio did perfwade, caused the Horses to stand ready bridled the whole night, and the most part of his Host to continue armed and to keep good watch. His Camp shone bright with the sires that were made, and he himself, with his Captains and Kinstolks, went about his Souldiers that thood in order and in Arms, making invocation to the Sun, to Mari, and to the Everlating Fire, that they would inspire into them a fortifude of minde, that might anfwer to the Ancient Glory, and the Acts of their Predeceffors: And declared, if the minde of man were able to conceive any tokens or figures of the gods favour or affiltance, it was no doubt but that they were bent on their fide, having already fincken a finden fear among the Macedons, which ( he faid ) might be feen by their numing here and there; by the carrying and calting off their Armour, and that the gods; which took care of the Perfians Empite, were now determined to punish the Cowards, whose Captains (quoth he) being or no other for then the rest, are like unto those wilde Beatts, which through the greediness of the pry that they do cover, do fall into the limes that are fer fur them. of dired, that the Perlians Leep good H

Likel

## Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 133

re

10

3

1-

th

es T-

ed.

to

lis

de,

K\$,

m

ידי,

ire

an-

neir

man

the

but

ady Hida

and

Ar

the

mith

ein

f the

The

The like care was amongst the Macedone; for as though the matter thould have been tryed that night. they passed it over in doubt and fear. Alexander himfelf (that was never leen in luch fear before that time ) called for Aristander to make vows and prayers; who, in a white Garment, carrying Verbenes in his hand, with his head covered, went be-fore the King, calling upon Jupiter, Minerva, and Victoria. When he had thus performed his Sacrince, according to their Religion, he returned into his Pavilion to reft the relidue of the night ; yet he could neither reft, nor tleep, but continually debated with himself, which way he should assail his Enemies: One while he was of Opinion, to give his first On-set upon that Battel of the Persians that hould come on his right hand, Cometimes he determined to meet his Enemies in the very front, and otherwhile whether it were better to encounter them on their left Battel. At length his body became heavy with the travel of his minde, and he ell into a found fleep. When the day appeared, he Captains affembled about the Kings Pavilion. n receive their charge, where they stood amazed the unaccustomed silence: For they could not our wonder, that he who was ever wont to call upon other men, and to reprove fuch as were flow or religent, not to be then stirring in the extremay of the utmost danger: And many were of pinion, that he flept not, but thrunk for fear; yet or all that, none of them that were about his peron, the morning past away, and the Souldiers ight neither put on thir Armour, nor stand in K 3 order 工作。2012年12日1日中国的国际

before any duril pater what they thought were uncertain how the King was in-

at length Furmento spake, and faid:

opinion was ever, that the prisoners taken weld redeem shem, whereby a great fum of momight base been made of them; who now re-tining in captivity; trouble the hands of many man of Services And now I think most necessary all, that you exchange for thirty Talents of Gold, this old Woman, and the two young Dam-zels, which he but impediments and disturbance to your manches. Here is a rich Realm to be gotby Treaty, without any bazard of Battel. For here was never any before you (quoth he) that as Lind of all the Countries in length and bredth. ing between Ister, and Euphrates. He willed him berefore rather to have respect towards Macedonia, to look forward towards Badria and the In-

These words liked not the King; and therefore fo foon as Parmenio had made an end of his Speech, he made this answer: And if I were Parmenio, I would rather defire Money, then Glory. But now. feeing I am Alexander, I am not in any doubt of poverty, and bave in consideration, that I am a King, and no Merchant: I have nothing whereof I will make Sale, I will much lest fell my Fortune. H ere in minde to deliver the Prisoners, it were much better to give them freely, then to ransome them for

Moreupon he called the Embassadours, and an-

Book IV. of Alexander the Orest. its

72

15

÷

~ 'y

of

-

ce

-

or at

ib.

م ال

re

h,

1

W.

of

3,11

H

or

II.

1-

m

Shemyou to Darius, that ! of to an energy and lee him sat think the any respect to his friendship in these things the him impute the Jame in any wife towards him to the inclination of mine own nature's and that send not against mens calamities, but against the sof mine Enemies. Inse not to make war with we end prisoners is for he must be armed to whom I owe my hatred. And though it were so indeed. he meant good faith in his peace asking, yet perade sene I would take advice before I would confent. feeing that at one time be bath provoked my Souldiers besroy me, and as other times stirred up my friends. money to destroy me, I must pursue him to the arten nat as a righteous enemy, but as one that worker his eads by treason. If I should accept the condition of poor that you do bring, I should acknowledge him to be Con querous. His liberality doth give me all that it behind he River of Euphrates, not considering in what place I heak now mito you. Have you forgotten that I a affed the River of Euphrates, and incompad beyon he bounds ve proffer me in Dowry's Prive merfron ence, that I may know the fame to be yours, when with on would infeoff mer. He profferesh me bis Danghess outh no greater liberality when he would do to one of his ervauts. Doth he shink to do me a pleasure in proerring me to be his Sun-in-law before Mazeus? Co and bem this to your King, that both what he hash loft and as be bath yet in possission. Shall be unto me iberepards of the War, which shall determine the bound f both our Empires, and by the fortune of the barrel

226 De Life and Death Book IV.

the line of the law, that I came not into Alia to the to give. If he would have been content to have been the fesond person, and not covered to be equal with me. I would peradventure have granted his request. But at two Sans cannot shine on the Earth at me. I she wise two sans cannot shine on the Earth at me. I she without the subversion of the world. Therefore let him either this day yield himself, or else pre-pass against the morrows sight; nor let him perswade himself to have any other fortune then what he hash

proved already.

The Emballadours replied: That feeing he was cloved to proceed with War, he did Royally that was plain unto them, and did not feed them ish hope of peace. Their is quest was therefore dian they might be dispatched to their Prince, so warn him to prepare himself likewise. When they returned, there was no way but to prepare for the fight. Wherefore Darius fent for Mazeus with three thousand horsemen to keep the passages by which the Macedons should pass. When Alexander had performed the Funerals of Darius wife, leaving fmall guard behinde, with all fuch as were unprotitable for the fight, he fet forward towards his Enemies. His botmen were divided into two Battels, empaled with horsemen on both sides, and his carriages were placed in the midft. He fent Medinas with horsemen upon the spurs to discover where Darius was; but he not daring to adventure far, because Mazeus was there firongly quartered, remirned back and reported, that there was nothing to be heard but the noyfe of men and the neighing of horles. Mazeus also (the Scouts of Alexander being

ng discovered ) gave intelligence to approach of the enemy : Daring, w try the event of the Battel in the open ommanded his Souldiers to be armed, and emy in array of Battel. Two thousand of Strian and the Dahan horse, and sour thous of the Arachefians and Sufiane did make the Wing : These were followed by a hundred ho Chariots. Next unto them was Bellier with a the and Badrian horse, and two thousand of the igete did back him on his rear. To thefe the many Nations, not mixed, but in diffinet R pents, did joyn their formidable power ; after the briobarzanes and Oriobases, with the Mardians a ogdiens, did bring up the Army of the Perfie his part of Darius Army was commanded in chie Orfines, descended from feven Perfian King criving also his Original from the noble King There were other Nations that followed there ut hardly known to their own Neighbours. After thom, Cradates having fifty booked Charlots, place Band of Cassian horsemen before them, and b nde them were the bidians and the other inb ters of the red Sea, rather names of men then go istance. This square was also empaled with the er lifty Chariots, unto the which the mercenan ouldiers were joyned: after them followed the mes Armenia the less, then the Babylonians, and next Bellicans, with fuch as inhabit the Coffeen Moto The Gortnans came next, who lometime folved the Medians out of Emboia; but at those days enerated from their Country-cultoms. The Pheygi-, Corbonians and Parthians did close the reas.

0

Ä

i L

.

A

.

-

b

A

3

C

n

ė

Ø

n

1

h

\*

86 1

5

8

d

t

T

e

2

148 The cife and Death Book IV

Batte on the Hight hand were the people ne greater Armenia, the Cadufians a Cappanes : the fum of his whole Army was forty five thouland horsensen; and two hundred thousand bornen. When they were placed in order of Barthey marched forward ten furlongs, and then were commanded to make a halt. Whileft the Perface after that mander tarried for their Enemies, re fell a fudden fear amongh the Macedins, whereof there appeared no cause's and yet 'every man was amazed, and a fecret dread entred line their hearts. The lightning that fell out of the it being in the Summer-featon, feemed like fire, and the flames fuddenly appearing were thought to come from Darius Camp. If Mageus, who was them while they were in this fear, he might have formed some notable act. But he was flow in e enterprize, and remained upon the top of an Hill, contented that he was not affailed.

th

to

e

Alexander perceiving the terrour that invaded his Souldiers, made a figne for them to flay, and gave order that they should infarm themselves, and refresh their bodies; giving them to understand, that there was not any cause Why they should entertain so vain a sear, seeing their Enemies were yet a good distance from them. At length, when he perceived they had recovered their spirits, he exhorted them to receive courage, and put on their armours, but yet he thought nothing more expedient then to fortish his Camp in the same place. The next day Mazens, who had planted himself on a high

Book IV. sof Alexander the Great. Tag

a high Hill, from whence he might be nemies Camp, either for fear, or elfe because h Commission was but only to discover the motion of his Enemies ; returned again unto Daries. Un on his departure, the Macedons immediately polfessed themselves of the Hill which he had forsa-ken, the same being of more strength then the Plain where they remained before, from whence they might behold their Enemies Camp. And though the Mift which the mont Hills did call forth, took not away clearly the ule of their prospect, ret it hindred them to differn the division of their Enemies Battels, and their order; their multitude overspread the fields; and the noise of their num er did fill their ears, though they were far off. Then Alexandes begun to revolve in his minde. nd to debate with himself one while Parmenio's Opinion, and another time his own; for he was ome to far forth, that he could not retire, except e were Victorious, without the great destructiin of his Army. The multirude of his Enemies loved him much, in respect of his small mumbers: let on the other part, remembred what great Acis chad done with them? and how many Nations e had vanduished: So that his hope furmounting is fear, he thought it of all most dangerous to der the Battel any longer, left desperation should now amongst his men i and therefore dissembling he matter, he caused the Metcenary Horsemen. nd the Penney to pass on before, and divided his balance (as it hath been faid ) into two Battels, nd impaled the fame with Horsemen on both des. By rest time the Mist vanished, and it wax-

c

t

11

d

d

d

7-

re

he

15

e-

c.

on gh The Life and Death Book IV.

ing clear, the order of his Enemies manifeftly appe red on all in rest for infinite pure

The Mucedons then, whether it were of courage, or for that they were impatient to tarry any longes made luch a thout as men of War use when thereign in Battels. The like was also made by the Perfiants Then the Woods and Valleys rebounded with the terrible found : The Macedons could not abitain any longer, but would have gone forwards towards their Enemies : But Alexander thought it better to fortifie his Camp upon that Hills and fo commanded it to be intreuched about : Which work being speedily performed, he entred into his Tent , from whence he might behold the Field Marshalled, and the whole Army of his Enemies embasselled withen the fathion and form of the danger that was at hand, was prefented before his eyes; both Horiemen and Footmen gliftered in their bught Armous, and all things were prepared with extraordinary diligence. He beheld the care of the Captains in his Enemies Camp, how they did ride up and down to fer things in order . And manythings that, were but vain indeed (as the noise of Men the neighing of Horses, and the aliftering of their Armour ) troubled yet the minde that was careful in expectation of the event: Therefore whe ther at were that he was not fully refolved in his minde for elle to prove the refolutions of fuch a were about him, a Councel of War was called to advise what was best to do. Parmenio, who was the most experienced among all the Captains in the feats of War, thought it good not to give his En mics open Battel, but rather to let upon them is

of Alexander the Great. 12 the dead time of the night, whereby he thought they might easily be discomfitted; supposing, that they among whom there was such divertity of Cufroms, and alteration of Language, could never rally well together, especially when in the dead of night they should have their quarters beaten up; whereas in the day time, the shape of the Scythiaur and Bactrians, with their rough faces, and long hair, belide the hugeness of their bodies, should appear errible. He alledged, how Souldless were more noved with the vain causes of sear, and such as were of no moment, then with such as were just aules indeed. He declared also, how their Enenies, by reason of their great multitude, should be ble to inclose their small number round about i nd that they should not now fight in the Streights, nd narrow passages of Cilicia, but in an open and nge Plang

p-

e,

0-

en

he

cd

ot

ds

it

so.

ch

to

ld

ics

III-

his

eir

ith

of

did

na-

of

ng

Nas

he

his

1 35

to the

the

the

They all, in a manner, agreed to Parmenio; and olipercon was directly of Opinion, that the Victory muited on the tollowing of that counsel. The ing, that before had upbraided Parmenio more biterly, then was expedient, would not check him a-

sain, but beheld Polipencon, and laid

That Policy that you advice me, pertaines to Robert and Felini, for it is their propriety to work by arknels and deceit; I will no more Juffer, that either askes abjence, the streightness of the ground, or the sails in the night; shall be an binderance to my globals in the night; shall be an binderance to my globals in the night and plainly determined to fight with him in the sail and had rather repent me of my Fortune; but be assumed of my Victory: Besides, this is to be essidered, that the Persians keep good Watch; and K. 2

find armed always in a readiness to receive us

whereof I have advertisement, so that they cannot be deceived that ways therefore there doth remain no

mire but that you prepare your felves to the Bat-

tel

When he had by these words put them into courage, he diffinified them from Counfel , to refresh their bodies. Daring conjecturing, that his Enemies would have done that which Parmento did perfwade, caused the Horses to stand ready bridled the whole night, and the most part of his Host to continue armed, and to keep good watch. His Camp shone bright with the siles that were made, and he himself, with his Captarus and Kinstolks, went about his Souldiers that thood in order and in Arms, making invocation to the Sun, to Mari, and to the Everlatting Fire, that they would inspire into them a fortifude of minde, that might anfwer to the Ancient Glory, and the Acts of their Predeceffors: And declared if the minde of man were able to conceive any tokens or figures of the gods favour or affiltance, it was no doubt but that they were bent on their tide, having already fireken a findden fear amongst the Macedons, which (he faid) might be feen by their running here and there, by the carrying and calting off their Ar mour, and that the gods; which took care of the Perfian, Empire, were now determined to punish their Cowards, whose Captains (quoth he) being or no other fort then the reft, are like unto those wilde Bealts, which through the greediness of the priy that they do cover, do fall into the funces that are fer fur them. orted, what the Perlians keep good Waten, an

limit 1

Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 133

The like care was amongst the Macedone; for as though the matter should have been tryed that night they passed it over in doubt and fear. Alexander himfelt (that was never leen in fuch fear before that time ) called for Aristander to make vows and prayers; who, in a white Garment, carrying Verbenes in his hand, with his head covered, went before the King, calling upon Jupiter, Minerva, and Victoria. When he had thus performed his Sacrifice, according to their Religion, he returned into his Pavilion to reft the relidue of the night a yet he could neither reft, nor tleep, but continually debated with himself, which way he should assail his Enemies: One while he was of Opinion, to give his first On-set upon that Battel of the Persians that hould came on his right hand . Cometimes he deermined to meet his Enemies in the very front ind otherwhile whether it were better to encounter them on their left Battel. At length his body became heavy with the travel of his minde, and he Il into a found fleep. When the day appeared, he Captains affembled about the Kings Pavilion, o receive their charge, where they flood amazed the unaccustomed silence: For they could not our wonder, that he who was ever wont to call upon other men, and to reprove fuch as were flow or egligent, not to be then stirring in the extremy of the utmost danger: And many were of pinion, that he flept not, but thrunk for fear; yet ar all that, none of them that were about his peron durit attempt to wake him. In the mean leaon, the morning past away, and the Souldiers light neither put on their Armour, nor fland in K 3 order

nich and Ar

the

inith

eing

hole

the

that

The

10

-

1-

th

es

1-

2**d** 

to

lis

de,

KS,

m

75,

ire

an-

neit

nan

the

but

adv

order of Battel, without commandment of their Chief. When they had thus tarried a great while, Parmento gave commandment that they should fall to meat. At length, when the time came, that of hecessity the Army must be drawn into Battel, he entred into the Kings lodging, and called upon him divers times by his name: but when he could not awake him with his voice, he stirred him with his hand, and said:

It is far forth day, and your Enemies come forwards in order of Battel, and your Souldiers being yet unarmed, have not commandment given them what they should do: Where is that chearfulness and courage of yours become, which were wont to stir up even those

who were most watchful?

Alexander made answer unto him:

Think you that I could sleep before that I had rid my self of the care that hindred me to take my rest? And thereupon caused the Trumpet to sound to the

Battel.

פוננו

But when Parmenio continued full in his admiration, that he in such a time could sleep so quietly: It is no marvel (quoth Alexander) when Darius burned the Country, wasted the Villages, and distroyed the Vilinals. I could then in no roise be quiet: But now what cause have I to fear, seeing he now prepareth himself to sight? He hath now fulfilled my desire; resort you where your charge lieth, and I will straightway come to give order amongst you, and we will dispute this business afterwards.

He used seldom to take his friends advice when any doubt or danger was at hand. When Parmenia was gone, he armed himself, and came forwards amongst

Book IV s of Alexander the Great. 13

amongs his Souldiers: They feeing him look to chearfully as they had not feen before time; couceived by the courage of his countenance a certain hope of the Victory: Then he caused the Trenches of his Camp to be call down that the Souldiers might have free passage forth a and in this manner did fer his Battels in order. The Horsemen, of whom Clitus was Captain, were fet in the wing on his right-hand Battel, to whom he joyned Bhilotar, and other Captains. The last Band of Moulemen was Meleagers, which were next puto therin are Battel of Footnen, that the Macedons irania Phieland: After the Phalank, followed the Arandinis des, of whom Nicanor, the Son of Parments was Captain : Cenus, with his Band, was appointed to he a Relief: Hurestes and Linnestes advanced next ; and after them Polipercan, that had the Rule of the Strangers; and Phylagus, who had the Rule of the Balacrone: And this was the order of Alexenders Battel in the right wing, whereof Aminor was Chief waste open by the salettes and even waste waste

ofe

id

ne

a-

71-

ed

ut a-

leill

we

ien

nia rds

ight

In the left Battel, Craterus had the charge of the Peloponuesan Horsemen; and with him also were the Bands of the Ashrians, Locrenhams, and Materials; and the hindmost Troops were the Horsemen of Thessaly, under Philip their Captain, Finns the Horsemen covering the Foot, made the Front of the Battel; A d left their Enemies, through their multitude, thould inclose the Battel about, he planted a great Force behinde for a Reserve, and left a Relief also upon the Wings; not in Front with the sest, but upon the sides, to the intent, that if the Enemies attempted to compals round R4 about

about the Battels, they should be ready to keep them in action.

them in action.
Those that maintained the places of Reserves, were the Agrians, of whom Attalns was Captain, and the Archers of Greet were joyned unto them : Such as stood in the Rear of the Battel; were ord red to turn their faces from the Frontwards, because that being in a readiness every way, the Battels in every place should be of an equal force. They which food with their faces contrariwife, were the Illyrians, and the Mercenary Souldiers, with the Thrucians that were light armed. Thefe his Battels were for aptly fet to move every way, that fuch as stood in the hinder parts could not be inclofed about but might every way make their Front ; for the Front, the Flanks, and the Rear, were all of like force. When he had let his men in order after this manner, he gave Commandment, that if the Ferfians should attempt upon them with their Hooked Waggons with a cry, or noise, that then they should open their Battels, and receive them with filence, not doubting but that they should pass through without any harm, if no man did relift them: But if they should come without any shout or clamour, that then they themselves should make a cry to fear the Horfes withal; and fo with Pikes thrust thein through on every fide. They which had the charge of Battels, were commanded to extend them to much in bredth as pollible they night, left by flanding over-close, they might be environed; and ver hot to livetch them fo far out, as to leave the Ranks void , and thin in the midfl. The Carriage , and the Priloners , amongst whom Darius Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 137

Darius Mother was one) were let in the top of an Hill, with a small Guard about them. The charge of the left Battel was committed unto Parmento, as was accustomed before-time, and Alexander

himself was in the Main Body.

,

e

t

-

of'

r

le (-

y

S

ft

ut

esi

ch

to

ey

be

n,

ius

When they were drawn near to one another, one Byon came flying from the Perfian Hoalt in a full gallop, and declared unto the King, that Danie had planted iron Galtops where he thought his Horfemen should pass; and by a certain signe, shewed him the place, because it might be avoided: Alexander willed the Fugitive to be kept safe, and assembled all his Captains together, declaring the matter, and exhorting them to make their Souldiers privy to the danger, for eschewing the place pointed out to them: But all that were in so great an Army could not hear the warning given, the noise of both Armies taking away the use of the cars. But Alexander riding betwirt the Battels, gave Exhortation to the Captains, and to all other that were within hearing.

He declared, that there was but one hazard remaining to them that had passed through so many Countries in hope of the Victory, which they were now ready to fight for: Thereupon he reduced to their memory the Battels they had sought at the River of Granike, in the Mountains of Cilicia; and with what speed they had passed over both Syria and Egypt: The rehearsal whereof put them in treat hope; and did intice them sorwards to the delire of glory. He shewed, that the Persians being withdrawn from their former slying, were now compelled to highe of necessity, because they could

fly

138 The Life and Death Book IV.

By no further ; and how that three days together,

inazed for fear, they had remained still in one defnair (he faid) there could be no greater argument, then that they had fet on hire their own Country, confelling all to be their Enemies that they destroyed not. He exhorted them not to fear the vain name of unknown Nations; for it was a thing nothing pertinent, which were called Sevebians, or which Caducians; for being unknown Nations, it was a fure token that they were men of no valour, because such as be valiant could never be unknown in the world: And contrariwife, Dastards, when they come forth of their Dass, bring nothing with them but names of men; whereas you (quoth he) that be Macedone, have obtained by your Vertue and Manhood, that there is no Country in the world ignorant of your Acts. He wil-led them to behold the evil order that was in their Enemies Hoft, of whom some had no weapon but a Dart, others a Sling to call stones, and very few had fuch Armour as they ought to have: So that though there was a great number on the other part, yet he faid, they had more on their lide when they should come to fight hand to hand; and that for his part he would not require any man to adventure himfelf, except he were an example to him of Fortitude and Courage; for he affured them, that he would be feen lighting with the foremost, knowing that fo many wounds as he should get, should be fo many ornaments to his person: He said, they themselves knew that he would be no partaker of the prey; but that it was ever his custom, to betow flow the rewards of his Victory upon the Souldiers. His former words he thewed to be spoken to men of courage; but if any were of another temper, he was to inform them, that they were come unto the place from whence they could not fly, having left so many Countries behinde them which they had passed over, and so many Rivers and Mountains at their backs; so that now there was no way to their own houses and Native Country, but such as they must make open with their own hands.

1

1

This was the Exhortation he gave unto the Captains, and to such of the Souldiers as were next unto him. Daries, that was in his left-hand Battal accompanied with a choice Band of Horsemen and of Footmen, despited the small number of his Emmiss, their Battels appearing to him thin, and void of men, when he saw their Wings stretched so far abroad: He stood therefore on his Chariot on high, and turning himself both on the right hand and the left, he spake in this manner to such as were about him:

We that were not long fince Lords of all the Countries lying between Hellespont and the Ocean Sea, are compelled now to fight, not for Fame and Glory, but for our Safeguard, and our Liberty, which chiefly is to be esteemed: This day shall either establish or make an end of the greatest Empire that hath been in any age. At the River of Granike me fought with a small part of our Power: When we were vanquished in Circuia, Syria was able to receive us, and the Rivers of Tygtis and Euphrates were as Bull-warks to defend our Kingdom: Eut now we are come to that extremity.

that

he Life and Death Book IV. that me have no place to fly winto if we be put to hight: All things behinde our backs are wasted with this long Way; neither Cities are inhabited, nor men test to till the ground: Our Wives and our Children do follow this Army, a prey ready for our Enemies, except we put our bodies for the defence of such as be dear unto us. So much as hath concerned me, I have performed, preparing fuch an Army as this buge Plain is able to receive. I have distributed amongst you Horse and Armour, providing that Victuals should not be wanting for such a multitude, and have chofen an apt place to arange our Battels in : All the relt remaineth in your bands; do but dare to fight, and the Victory is yours; and despise you the Fame of the Enemy, which is but a weak weapon against men of Valour : It is raffones which bitherto ye have feared as a Vertue, whereof when the first brunt is spent, it waxesb dull, as are Drones baving once lost their stings. This Plain bath disclosed their small number, which be Mountains of Cilicia did hide : You fee bow empto their Ranks are , bor thin their Wings be extended abroad, bow their Battels be empty and void of men, and fuch as are in the Rear have already turned their backs: They may be overthrown with your Harfes feet, though I fend none against them but the Hooked Wagrous . And if we win the Battel, we make an end of the War, for they have no place to fly to: They are shut In with Tygris on the one side, and with Euphrates on the other; and such things as before made for their purpose, now are turned; and do make clear against ibem i Our Army is light, and without much Baggage, and they are taden with preys and booties; we wall all them as they are wrapt in spoils: And the fame 11.01

one thing hall be both our gain and the coufe of a clory. If any of you be moved with the Fame of Nation, you must think that the Armour, with the ward frem, and not the bodies of the Macedons there present; we have consumed so much of their blacking the War began: And seeing they are has see their loft must needs be to them the greater. For bo great foever Alexander duth frem to them that are G wards, be is but a man, and if you trust me, both rate and without confideration, and bitberto more farturate through our fear, then by his own valour. There is he sbing can cominue that is not governed by reason , for though Fortune feems to favour for a while, yet at talt the will not Support his tasbness . Besides that, the estate of things are full of change, and no man bath a perpenual felicity. It may be that the providence of the gods have to ordained it, that the Empire of the Pernans, encreased with such prosperous success by the space of my bundred and thirty years, and brought to great a beight of fertune, found now rather be thaen then merty oversbrown, thereby w admonith as of mans fragility, who useth to forget himself oversuch in profperous estate. It is not long ago, fince of our own motion and courage, we made War against the Grecians, and invaded their Dominions ; but now we fland as defence for our own Country. Thus we are toffed one against another by change of Fortune for one Nation carries suffice the greatness of the Empire which we both do cover : But be it fo that hope were taken from us, yet necessity ought to encourage us, the Wer is brought to such extremity. He keepeth now as Prisoners both my Mother, my rwo Daughters, and Ochus my Son, born to the succession of the Empire He

to

ith

len

es, be

we

in

ld

つ一社

r

the Life and Death Book IV.

epeth Coprine your Peince, the Iffue that is descended of the Blood-Royal; yea, and your Captains equal with Kings; and if you do not now bestir your bands, Im felf am like to become a Captive: Deltver you fore my Bowels out of Prison, and restore to me ey Children, for whose sake I do not refuse to die. for my Wife is dead in Prison) are holding up their crying unto the gods, and calling for your belp, your courage and fidelity, that you would free them from Servitude, from Fetters, and from the Estate they are in, living at other mens will and appointment. Thank you that they can be consent to live under such, is they could scarcely vouchsife to have for their Subjeds of I fee that our Enemies Battels do approach, and the nearer the danger is at band, the less the words I have spoken do fatisfie me. I make request to you by the gods of our Country, by the Eternal Fire that is easied upon their Attars, by the brightness of the Suit that rifeth within the bounds of my Empire, and by the everlasting memory of Cyrus, who did take the Empire from the Medes and Lydians, and gave it to the Perlians, to deliver their Names and this Nation from shame and reproach. Go forth obearfully, bave you good bope, and fee that you restore to your Posterity the glory you received of your Predecessours. Behold, you carry in your hands your Liberty, your Help, our Hope in time to come. Whosever contemneth death escapeth it, and death only overtaketh such as do flie from it. I ride here in a Chartot, not only for that it is my Countries Custom, but also that I may be penof you all: And I defire nothing fo much as that you will follow me, whether I shew you an example of Com age, or of Cowardliness.

Book IV. of Alexander the Great, 122

In the mean feafon, whilest Alexander did con to eschew the place of peril whereof he was added rine left Barrel , where he remained in person I he was compelled to fetch a compals about whom when Darius perceived; he turned likewife own Battel nowards him , willing Bellin, to appo the Horse of the Massageta, to give a Charge on Alexanders left Battel. He fent before him his H ed Wagons, which by a tigne given, brake Indde ly upon their Enemies with a full course, to the me tent, that by their coming unawares, they might work the greater defiruction. The Pikes that we fet before in the Wagons; defroyed divers, and many were torn afunder by the Hooks that were on both fides: The Macedone gave not place to them by a little and little , but troubled their Array with a main flight. When Mazeus faw their diforder he pur chem in more fear; and appointed a thous fand Horfemen to fetch a compass about the Man dons Battels to spoil their Carriage , supposing the the Prisoners which were there kept would break their Bands when they should fee their own Name approach: Parmenio, who was in the left wine did calify perceive it, and immediately fent Police mis unto Alexander, to thew him the danger as know his pleafure what he would have done : which when he understood by Polidamus & Gothy por (quoth be) and hew Parmenio, if me wintebe Buttel we shall not only recover again our own, but shall bute alforbe Spail of our Enemies : Therefore I would not that any part of our Force should be removed one of the Main Battel, but les him fight it out monfally,

ir bie it of ill

e, In 114. The Life and Death Book IV

and not regard the lose of Baggage; wherein he shall observe the Honour of me, and my Father Philip, whose

Coffon was to do the like.

In the mean feason , the Perfians were entred among the Carriages, and had flain divers that were left there in defence thereof: whereupon the primers began to unloofe themselves; and taking up whatforvercame to hand, took part with the Horfemen and harply affailed the Macedons divers were so joyful, that they ran to bear tydings to Sifigambis, how Darius had won the Victory, and had overthrown his Enemies with a great flaughter, and also that their Carriages were taken, thinking the like Fortune had been every where, feeing they faw the Perfiam fall to Spoil. And although they exhorted Sifigambis that the should leave her heavinels, and rejbyce, yet the continued in the fame Estate she was in before, without speaking one word, or changing colour or countenance, but face fill immoveable: She was fo overcome (as it was thought) with fudden joy, that the durft not flir , nor attempt. Fortune , for fuch as did behold her, could not perceive which way the was inclined. In the mean feafon, Amintas that was Mafler of the Horse to Alexander, came with a few Bands of Horfemen to relieve the Carriages; but underrain it was whether he did it of his own head, or by the Kings appointment! He was not able to endure the force of the Cadifians and Soythians; for feareth attempting the skirmith, he was driven back, and fled again unto Alexander, being a witnels rather of the loss of the Carriages, then a Refour of the fame. The grief that Alexander conceived

HOOK IV. of Alexander the Great, 14 ceived at this matter, overcame the purpole la took before in hand, and feared (not without cause) lest the Souldiers, through the carefulness to recover their own, might leave the fight, and refort towards their Baggage : He sent Aretes, Captain of the Spearmen that were nam'd Sauffopberiz, against the Scyrbians. By this time the Hooked Waggons, which had before troubled the fore-front, were come within the square ( which the Macedon's call Phahanx ) yet the Souldiers never thrunk at the matter, but received them into the midst of their Battel whereas joyning themselves close together, they stood like a wall on both fides, thrusting their Pikes into the Bowels of the Horfes; and ran about the Waggons, throwing down such as shood in them ar defence. The whole Battel was intangled and troubled with the ruine and killing of the Horles, with such as governed them: They could not rule their Horses when they were once galled or hurts who with much leaping and firugling, not only brake out of their Traces, but allo overthey the Waggons, drawing at their Tails the men that were flain i neither being able to fland ftill for the fear they were in, nor yet go forwards, being fo faint of their wounds: Yet a few of them palled through the Battel; whereby such as the Waggons did light apon, were miferably flain, lying upon the ground with their Members cut in sunder : Yet because that through the greenness of their wounds they felt little pain, they kept their Weapons fill, notwithstanding they were maimed, and without Arength, till fuch time as, by continual bleeding, they lunk down dead. Aretes, in the mean time, had ilain

ball

bofe

la-

ere

ri-

up

le-

rs

to

be

r,

g

y

y

.

ė

e

t

t

t

146 The Life and Death Book IV.

flain the Captain of the Scyibians that were fibiling of the Carriages; and repulled then back : But fraightway came the Ballrians, by Darins fending, and turned the fortune of the Field again. Many Macedons were flain at the hist encounter, but more fled unto Alexander : Then the Perfians made fuch a shout as men are wont to do that win the Victory, and fiercely affailed their Enemies, thinking they had in every place been put to flight. When Alexander perceived his men shrink, and begin to faint, and give ground, he rebuked such as he faw afraid, and encouraged many that withdrew from the tight; fo that he alone restored the Battel again. When he had put them in heart, he required them to press forwards, and go freely against their Enemics. Alexander perceiving that the Bactrians were depaired to the defeating of the Carriages, and by their going had left the righthand Battel of Darius thin and naked, he bent his force wholly that way, and there made a wonderful flanghter and deftruction of his Enemies, who by reason of their loose Array, were not able to withstand him; which the Persians in the left wing observing, were in hope to have inclosed Alexander tound, and came forwards to fer upon his Rear, whereby great danger had enforce to him, being invironed both before and behinde, if the Agrians had not put their Spurs to their Horses, and given a gattant Charge to their Enemies that were invironing the King about, and to compelled the Perfiant to turn their taces again towards them.

The Battels thus were fore travelled on both fides; Alexander had his Foes both before and behinde.

Book IV. of Alexander the Great.

.

5

11

•

ď

b

-

e

e

-

t

e

-

is

-

0

0

5

1-

E,

g

15

a

1-1

CO!

. 1

b

2

e,

hude, and his Enemies that come on his back were fore oppressed by the Agrians: The Bactrisns also that had spoiled the Carriages, were excluded from their own company, and could not recover their place again. Thus the Battels were divided in divers parts, and fought one against another, as their chance fell out. The two Kings, that juyned their Battel hard to one another, renewed again the fight : There were molt of the Perfians flain; but the number of the wounded were like on both fides: Darius did ride in a Chariot, and Alexander upon a Horse: They both had a choice Band about them; which were careless of their own lives; for if their Kings should misearry, they neither could be fale nor yet delire to live. Wherefore every one of them thought it a Noble thing to adventure, them-Iclives before the face of their Prince; and he that coveted most to defend his Master, was in most peril; for each man delired the honour to kill the Ring of the contrary part. There (whether it were an imagination of the eyes, or vilible indeed) fuch as were about Alexander believed, that they faw an Eagle fluttering above his head, which heither feared with the elashing of their Harnels, nor by the crying of them that were dying, hovered fill in the Air a little above him. Then Aristander, who did wear a white garment, and carried Lawrel in his hand, the wed this fight unto the Souldiers, being butie in the fight; as a certain token of Victo-This light cauled them, which before were in ome doubt, chearfully and with great confidence to affail their Enemies.

The fight continued after this fort until the time

148 . The Life and Death Book IV.

That he was flain who governed the Horfe that drew Darius Chariot: Then neither the Persians nor Macedons doubted, but that Darius had been slain: And the Persians, upon that imagination, made a barbarous noise, and a forrowful howling, wherewith they fore troubled and altonied their whole Hoast, that were yet fighting with equal Victory: Darius Kintmen, and the Squires of his Body that were on his lest hand, lest him, and fled away with a main slight: but such as shood in his defence on his right hand, conveyed him into the heart of the Battel.

It was faid that Darius drew out his Sword, and was determined divers times to kill himself., rather then to fuffain the shame of flying away: But winn he faw, as he fate aloft on his Chariot, that a great part of his Army, remained yet fighting, he was afhamed to leave them in such fort. And while he thus wavered in his bwn minde, the Persians by little and little gave ground, and shrunk from their order. Alexander that had tyred many Horles, did at that instant change his Horse anew, and Make at the faces of them that did oppose: there was none then that made reliftance any longer, but felt flaughter fell on the Perfians, and Dathreed his Chariot to fly away: The Maceby purfied hard after them that fled and the dust that slew up to the Sky took away their pro-Thech. To that they wandred as in darkness, and ever drew together when they heard any voice they knew I only the rathing and noise of the Chariots was a token for the Macedons to follow in the purfuit. of the ingrescontinued even sole fore until a de time Book IV. of Alexander the Great. 14

As Fortune was prosperous to the Macedons, o this part, and contrary unto their Enemies, lo or the other fide, where Parminio in the left wing countred with the Persians, they had the bette and the Macedons the worse, Mazeus with his whole Band gave a violent charge, and put the Horsemen that stood in the wings to a fore diffress and thereupon, by reason he abounded with multitude, he began to inclose the Footmen round. Then Parmenia sent word to Alexander in what danger they were; which he tignified to be fuch that except they had fuccour in time, they could not relift, but be inforced to fly away. Alexander was gone far in the Chale when this forrowill message was brought him; wherefore he commanded his Horsemen to stand, and chased wonderfully that the Victory should be thus taken out of his hands, and that Darius had better fortune in Ayr ing, then he in following. In the mean Calon, the fame of Darius overthrow was brought unto Mizeac, wherefore, though before he had the upper hand yet he was so stricken with fear at his Fellows milfortune, that he made a flack pursuit upon their b nemies. Parmenia was ignorant of the caule why the fight did flack to willingly on their parts and boldly using the occasion, called the Thesselian Horsemen unto him, and said : See you not home our Enemies, that even none gave us a fierce on fet; iddenty be afraid? I fee the fortune of our King give us the Victory & All the Field is stronged the she Perlians that be floin : Why do you there? re flay? Are you not good enough for men that

L3

be Life and Death .\_ Book IV.

they saw that his words had some appearance of truth; and therefore by and by they took courage, and putting their Spurs to their Horses, gave a sull energe upon their Enemies, who retired not by little and little, but marched away a great pace; and they wanted nothing of flying; taving that they had not yet directly turned their backs: yet for all that, in so much as Parmenio knew not what was become of the King, nor of his Battel, he having liberty given him to fly at his leisure, passed the River of Tire, not the next way, but by a surther compass about with more surety, and recovered the City of Babylon with the remainder of that

vanguished Army.

In the mean featon, Darine, with a few that accompanied him in his flight, came to the River of Lious, where passing over, he stood in doubt whether he should break the Bridge or no; for it was shewed him, that his Eneroies were at hand; but considering how many thousands of his men by the breaking thereof should become a prey to his Eneroies, he left the Bridge standing; and at his departure said, That be had raiber open the way to them that pursued him, then to sout it against them that sledge spire him. But Darine left not his stying till he came to Arbella, where he arrived about mid-night; Who is able to concrive in his minde, or express in words, the manifold chance in this discomsiture, the slaughter that sell both upon Captains and Souldiers; the chasing of them that were put to slight, and the destruction in general, and in particular; Fortune heaped together in that one day

day the chances of the whole world. Some too the way that came next to hand, others fled into the Woods, and fought out by ways to escape juch as had them in the chase: There was a constition of Horsemen and Footmen mixed together without any head; the armed with the unarmed, and the

whole with the hust-

At length; the compassion that one had of another, was turned into fear; and they that could not follow, were left bewailing themselves one to another: But Thirlt chiefly afflicted the wounded and wearied, who lay along every where in the ways where any water was, galping after it with open mouth; and when for greediness they had gulled in the troubled water, they began to fwell, when the Mud once entred into their Intrails; and being thus not in case to move, the Enemy came and stinred them up with fresh wounds. Some, when the Brooks near hand were taken up by others, fought out for Springs in every fecret place: Nor were there any Puddles to dry, or to far out of the way. that could be hidden from the thirst of them that earched them out: The old men and women were eard hawling and crying in all the Villages near the way lide, how Darius was yet their King.

Alexander (as it hath been faid before) purlying the Chale, was come to the River of Licur, at which the multitude of the Flyers were more then could pais the Bridge; so that many, when their Entiries pursued them, leaped into the water; and there laden with their Armour, and wearied with fighting and flying, were consumed in the stream: But within a while, neither the Bridge nor the River

Ado acvision West

The Life and Death Book IV.

were able to lecelve the throng that continually increased by their indifferent flying: For when fear had once entited into their hearts, they doubted only that which put them first in fear. The Macedon's were very eager in pursuit of their Enemies, and required Alexander, that he would not furser his Enemies to cleape free away: But he to stay them, alledged, that their weapons were dull, their hands weared, their bodies faint in the long pursuit, and the night besides fast approached on them: But in very dead, the care of his other Bastel, which he thought to be yet fighting, caused him to return to.

their fuccour.

He had not to foon turned his Enfignes, but that certain Horsettien brought him word from Parmethat he likewise had put his Enemies to flight. He was not in to great danger all that day, as when he was coming towards his Camp; for there were but few that followed him, and they were out of order as men that rejoycing of the Victory, judged all their Enemies either to be fled, or llain in the Field Suddenly there appeared a Band of Perfian Horsemen coming against them, which at the first staved but afterwards perceiving the small number of the Macedons, gave-a charge upon them. The King rode foremost, rather differibling then deforing the peril he was in : But his perpenual feliciw never failed him in his extremities? for at the first encounter, he frake the Captain of the Perfant ( who in eagernels of the highe mad wifedly came apaint him) through with a Spear when he with that blow was finishen to the ground, Alexander flew the next unto him with the same Staff, and When efter him, divers others.

STORE AND PARTICIPANTS CHOICE

When his Company law their Enemies amazed with his doings, they brake upon them, and threw many to the earth; yet they, for their parts, were not unrevenged ! for the whole Battel did not lo carneftly fight, as that small Band assembled so by chance. But at length, when they saw flying in the dark to be more safe unto them then fighting, they fled away in divers Companies. Alexander baving escaped this extraordinary peril, brought his

There were flain of the Perfiant, which came to the knowledge of them that had the Victory, forty thousand; and of the Macedons, less then three hundred: which Victory Alexander won more by his own Vertue, then by any fortune; and with hardiness and courage, more then through any advantage of the ground: for he both ordered his Battels politickly, and fought manfully: With great wildom he contemned the loss of the Baggage, confidering the weight of the whole matter to confift in the Battel it felf. Whilest the fortune of the Field remained doubtful, he used himself as assured of the Victory; and when he had put his Enemies in fear, he ceased not till he had set them flying: and that which scarcely can be believed, in that herceness of courage, he pursued in the Chase more wifely then greedily: For if he should have followed on fill, part of his Power yet fighting in the field, he should either have lost the Battel through his own fault, or elfe have won the Victory through the prowels of another: Or if after he had obtained the Victory, he had shewed himself afraid of the Horsemen that he met, he must either **Chamefully** 

fhamefully have fied, or have been milerably

Nor were his Captains to be defrauded of their due commendation, for the wounds that they did receive were tokens of their Manhood; Epbelions arm was wounded with a Spear, Perdieus, Cenos, and Medinus, with shot of Arrows, were almost slain out-right: And if we will give a true judgment of the Macedonis that were there, we must contess, that he was a King worthy of such Ministers, and they men worthy of so great a Master.

Book V. of Alexander 14 Great. 155

AY

ir id

HS.

is, off ot

id

## FIFTH BOOK

O F

## QUINTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Asts of Alexander the Great, King of Ma-

The mean leafon intervened both in Greece, Italy and in Thracia, and of the Revolters that were sheeked and subdued by the appointment and Commission of Alexander, the proceedings in Asia would thereby be interrupted, which I thought most convenient to put wholly together, until the death of Darise; and then to joyn them in this work, as they agree with the time. I will tirst speak of those things that ensued after the Battel of Arbella, where Darises arrived about mid-night; and, as it chanced the greater part of his friends, whom he called all together, and spake to them to this effect:

That he doubted not but Alexander and his Souldiers, greedy of the abundance of the spoil which was we a readiness for them, would visit such Cities and Countries of his as were mylt samous for their scienation on and wealth; which thing; he said, considering his

estate

sald not but turn at length to bis advantage. an in a first March, to repair into the Defarts: And feeing the uttermost bounds of his Kingdone were yet untouched, be might eafily repair his

Power from thence to renew the War.

Let oberefore that greedy Nation (quoth he) take my Treasure, and satisfie their bunger with gold, which bortly shall cause both the same, and themselves also. noe a prey unso us? For (he faid) he had learned by experience, that the Flocks of Concubines and Eunsichs. were nothing elfe but burdens and impediments; which Alexander possessing, and carrying about with him, it would at the last make him inferiour unto them of

pobom before be was Victorious.

His Oration seemed to all men to be full of de-Poeration; for they faw thereby, that the rich City Babylon fhould be given up unto the Macedons, and Safe thorry after, with all other Ornaments of the Realm, which were the caple of the War: But he proceeded in perswading them; how that men meadversity ought not to do things that should seem goodly in the speaking, but necessary in the experience: That Wars were made with Iron, and not with Gold; with men, and not with the walls. of Cities: for all things follow them that are armdoes, famous for their Archievements, were afflicted after this manner, in the beginning, and yet recovered quickly again their former eltate. After he had spoken these words, either for that they were thereby incouraged, or else that they rather obeyed his Authority, then liked his Counfel, they for Toward him into the bounds of Media. Shortly after, Arbella

Book V. of Alexander the Great

Arbella was delivered up to Alexander ull of Treasure, and precious Moveables, an ides; the pay of the whole Army was left t The fickness that began in Alexanders Camp, arith from the favour of the dead bodies which were scattered overall the Fields; was the cause that he did the fooner remove. The plain Country of Arabia famous with the abundance of sweet Odours there growing, lay upon the right hand as they marched: and so passing through the Country lying between verisand Emphrates, which is so fat and plenting a round, that the Inhabitants are fain to drive their Beafis from feeding, left a Surfeit should destroy them. The cause of this fertility, cometh by the moulture that issueth from both Rivers, sweating by veins, through the ground. Both these Rivers have their beginnings in the Mountains of Armenia where they are diffant twenty five hundred furlongs: and fo run forwards, keeping their diffance, till they some near unto the bounds of Media and Gordia: for there, by little and little, they draw more near ogether, leaving less space betwixt them. They inclose on both fides the Country that is called Melips. lanta; from whence they run, through the bounds of Babylon, into the Red Sea.

After Alexander had changed his Camp form times, he came to a City called Memnium, where there is a Fountain within a Cave, that belcheth out great plenty of Pitch: So that it appears the Baby-lonians had their Cement from thence, which they imployed about the making of their walls of an intendible bredth and compass. As Alexander was soing from thence towards Babylon, Maxeus; who

Was

ge.

be

g-

ris

ke

cb

600

by

23,

cb.

it

éf

£-

ty

٢,

of

ut

en.

m

<-

id

ls

Q-

5

t-

et

çr

re

y-

st-

r,

la

was (aid before to have fled from the Battel, came to meet him in most humble manner; whereas commixing his Children into his hands, he yeilded himfell, and rendred up the City. His coming was very grateful unto the King, confidering what travel he thould have fulfained in the fiege of to ffrong a City, if it had been kept against him: And besides, for so much as Mazeus was a man both famous and valiant, and much commended for his atchievements in the last Battel, and conceived his example should provoke others to do the like, he received both him and his Children in gentle manner; and yet gave order to his men, that they should enter into the City in such Array of Bartel, as if they were prefently to fight. A great number of the Babyloniani food upon the walls, delirous to behold him that was their new King; but the most part went forth to meet him. Bagistines that was Captain of the Cafile, and Keeper of the Kings Treasure, because he would shew himself to be no less affectionate to wards Alexander then Mazeus was, strowed all the ways, where he should pass, with Flowers and Garlands, and fet Altars of Silver on both fides, with Frankincense burning upon the same, and all other kinde of sweet odours. Next unto him came Droves of Beafts, great number of Horfes, with Lyons and Pardals lying in their Dens, which he brought as Presents to give unto Alexander, and after them the Wife Men, finging according to their Country manner: The Caldeans followed next, with their Diviners and Prophets , and then the Mulitians with leveral kindes of Instruments, whose property was to fing the praises of their Kings; and the Calde-

ansi

con V. of Alexander the Great ens, who nied to declare the motion of the Plan with the course and revolution of the times. L n order, came the Babylonian Horiemen, what unipruous furniture, both for themselves and their Horles, tended more to voluptuoufnels and delicay, then to any magnificence: Alexander, that was melofed about with armed men, willed that the Baylonians should come behinde his Footmen; and he iding aloft in his Chariot, entred into the City and afterwards into the Palace; where, the next day, he surveyed Darius his Wardrobe, and his Trealures. The beauty and pleafantness of that City gave just occasion to Alexander, and such as were with him, to admire it much : Semiramis was the Builder thereof; or as fome affirm, Belws, whole Palace is to be feen there: The walls are made with Brick, interlined with Pitch; they are thirty two foot in bredth; fo that two Carts may eafily go upon them on front: They are in height one hundred Cabits, and the Towers are ten foot higher then the Walls; the compais of the whole work about s three hundred fixty eight furlongs, being builded (as it is left in memory) in fo many days: The noules stand the bredth of an Acre distant from the walls; they are contiguous, house to house, by the pace of ninety furlongs; in other places not joynnear to one another, but for fome confiderations lo divided afunder. The rest of the ground is fowand tilled; to the intent, that if any Foreign wer come against them, they should be able to be relieved by the fruit thereof. The River of Emphra down run through the midst of the City, and is of in on both tides with walls of a wonderful workman-

0

-

el

4

s,

tà

d

1

78

i

e-

n\$

at

tH

a-

he

01

he

U,

th

er

ves

nd

25

em try

eit

ich

W49

de

ans}

bip : But the great Channels made of nick, and faltened with Pitch inflead of Mortar, and wrought low within the ground, to receive the violence of the Stream, do exceed all the rest of the works there made: for except the same were of quantity and largeness to receive the water when the Stream floweth over the Banks that are made to keep it in , its violence would beat down the houses of the City. There is also over the River a strong Bridge, which joyneth both parts of the City togeer, counted amongst the marvellous works of the Orients For because that Emphrases is so full of Sand and Owfe, there can hardly ground be found to lay that Foundation upon; and the Stream bes calleth up fuch heaps of Sand against the Bridge, that it is an impediment for the water freely to pals; and therefore the River beateth upon the Bridge with greater force, then if it had his free courfe.

There is also a Caltle that is twenty furlongs about, the Towers whereof are thirty foot deep within the ground, and sourcore foot in height above the ground; where also the Wonders are to be leen so often mentioned in the Greek Poets; sof in the same are whole Groves of Trees set by wonderful Art, as if hanging in the Air, and so high as are the tops of the Towers, which Trees are marvellously beautiful and pleasant through their height and shadow which they make: The whole waight of them is sustained and borne up by huge Fillars made of Stone, upon which there is a Floor of square stone; that both upholdeth the Earth that heth deep on the Pillar, and also the humour where with

wherewith it is warred. The trees that grow thereupon are right cubits about, and as fruithing if they grew on natural Earth. And although that process of time by little and little doth not only delitory things made with hands, but also the very works of nature: yet this work, for all it is oppressed with the tweight of so many trees, and burthened with the tweight of so much earth, doth yet remain imperished; being sustained up with twenty broad walls distant eleven soot one from another. When these trees are seen also off, they seem to be a wood growing upon a mountain. It is said that the King of Syria reigning in Babylor, builded this work for his wives sancy, who for the love she had to Groves and shadowy places, moved her Husband in doing thereof to sounterfelt the pleasantness of nature.

d

S

d.

e.

e

e.

1-

P

at

to

ot

nas

re

ir

ge

or th

JUC

rich

Alexander tartied longer here then in any other City, which corrupted more the disspline of the Macedons in their Wars then any other place. For nothing was more licentious then the manners and cultomes of the City; nor was any other place more abundantly furnished of all things, where with men are allured and furred to excels of pleasure. The Parents and Husbands were contented that their children and wives should for gain embrace such strangers as came amongst them. The Kings and Nobility of Persia delight much in plays and banquetting, but the Babylonians are specially addicted unto wine and drunkenness where the women use a custome, that in the beginning of the Feast their apparel secmeth civil and demure; but afterwards by little and little they

162 . The Life and Death

hey put off their uppermost garments, and laying alide all modelly, they at last discover themselves naked. Which vile cultome is not used by harlots only, but by all women in general, who efterm the making of their bodies common but civility and good manners . 'in this' voluptuoutness the Conquerour of Asia wallowed by the space of thirty four days, whereby he became much the weaher to have done other enterprizes, if there had been an enemy to have flood against him. But to the intent the damage thould be the less perceived, he increased his power with a new supply out of Maccaonia. For Amintas the ton of Andromenes brought him from Antipater fix thousand footmen, and hive hundred bottemen, and with them five fundred of the Thracian horfemen, and thirty five hundred footmen of the same Nation. He had also out of Peloponnessus four thousand footmen, and four hundred eighty horfemen, being all thercenary Souldiers. Amintas also brought him fifty of the young men of the Nobility of Macedonia, to at-tend upon Alexanders person; whose other it was to serve the King at Table, and to bring him his horse when he went to Battel. They accustomed to be about him when he hunted, and kept warch by course at his chamber-door. These were they who afterwards proved great Captains, and out of whose loins the Rulers of the men of War did come.

Alexander appointed Agathon Captain of the Calife of Babylon, with seven hundred Macedons, and three hundred mercenary Souldiers, and left Nauctus and Apolidorus Governours of the City and

14

Vonia.

and Countrey, to whom he affigued two chouland footmen, and one thouland Talents, giving them Commission to levy more Souldiers. He made Maxeus that gave the City into his hands. Lieutenant of the whole, and caused Bagistines that yielded up the Castle to follow him in his Wats. Armenia was given to Mithrenes that betrayed the City of Sardis; and to encourage his men to enterprize new atchievements, he gave out of the treature of Babylen to every Maxedon Horseman his hundred Deniers, to every Horseman of the strangers five hundred, and to every Footman two hundred. When he had set all shele things in order, he came into the Countrey called Atrapene, which being plentiful of all things, and abounding in Victuals, caused the King to tarry the longer there.

e

d

0

d,

of

n, ve

ty

nd uty

he

atvas his

ned

tch

hey

out

did

the

ons,

lett

City and And less idieness should be any abatement to the courage of his men, he contrived a way to stir up their spirits, and to keep them occupied, by appointing Judges to try out such as had shewed themselves most valiant in the Wars, to whom he assigned Rewards due to their deservings. There were Eight sound out, whose manhood appeared above the rest, and the charge of one thousand Men was committed to every one of them, who were then called Chiliarchi: this was the first time they put one Thousand into a Regiment; for before this they were divided only into five hundred, which was not counted any great preferment, or reward of service. The number of them were great that came to plead their right in this behalf; who before the Judges that gave sentence, brought

M 2

10

164 The Life and Death Book V.

in a teltimony of their atchievements, whereby it could not be unknown which of them had justly purchased such honour or not. The first place was adjudged to the elder Adarchias, for his valiantness in the Eattel at Alicarnasson, where he chiefly did restore again the fight, when the young Souldiers had given it over. The second place of honour was given to Antigonus, and Philora Angeus obtained the third ; the fourth was adjudged to Amintes, the fifth to Antigonis; Amintas the Son of Lyn-cefters obtained the fixth, Theodorus the seventh, and Hellanicus the laft. He also profitably altered many things that were used by his Predecessours in the discipline of War; For whereas before the Horsemen of every Country were in several Bands by themselves, he without respect of any Nation, appointed them such Captains as he thought expedient. And whereas at the removing of the Camp, warning was wont to be given by a Trumpet, the found whereof in any noise or tumult could not be sufficiently heard, he caused an high Pole to be al-ways set up before his Pavilion, on the top whereof an Enlighe was fastened, apparent to all men: the other tokens which they observed, were hie in the night, and smoak in the day.

As he was marching towards Susa, Abulites that was Ruler of that Region, either by Daring commandment, thinking by means of the spoil either to divert Alexander, or by his own free will, sent his Son to meet him, proffering the delivery of the City. The young man was intreated very gently, and by his conduct Alexander passed sorwards, till he came to the River Hydas., which

## Book V. of Alexander the Great. 166

5

d

rs

ie

ls

è-

P,

e

oe

1-

of

he

ne

es

H

oil

ll,

of

17

n-

ch

is

there met Alexander with many and Princely gitts, and presented him among other things, Dromedaries that were wonderfully swirt, and with twelve Elephants that Darius had sent for out of India, to be a teriour to the Macedini, which now were become an increase of their strength. When the riches of the Conquered was come into the hands of the Conquerour, he found in that City an incredible Treasure, fifty thousand Talents of massie silver uncoyned: which Riches gathered together in the space of many years by divers Kings, for their succession and posterity, came thus in a moment into the hands of a torre in Prince.

Alexander being lodged within the Palace, did fit down in Darins seat, which being higher then Terved for his stature, by reason his teet could not reach to the ground, one of the Kings Pages put a board for him, underweath, to tread upon; whereat one of the Eunuches that belonged to During looked heavily, and tetched a deep figh; whole fadnels when Alexander perceived, he enquired of him the cause: He answered, that when he beliefed the board whereon Darius was wont to eat, employed to so base a use, he could not behold it without grief. Alexander being atham d fo much to milule the thing that before was had in luch reverence, caused the same to be taken away : B. t Philoton made request be should not do so, but rither take it as a divination of his good luck and fortune, that the Table whereon his Enemy did cat thould now become subject to his teet.

M

Alex-

Alexander purpoling from thence to pals into Perfia, committed the City of Sufa to Archelaus. with three thouland men of War, and to Zenophihis the charge of the Castle, leaving such Micedons as were aged there in Garison, but bestowed the keeping of the Treasure unto Celicrates, and restored to Abulites the Government and Principality of the Countrey of Sufe, leaving within the City, the Mother and the Children of Darins. And for as much as Alexander had at the same time plenty of cloth of Purple fent him out of his Country, with Garments ready made after the Macedons manner, for the honour he bare to Sifigambie (whom he had in reverence as if the had been his mother) he thought good to prefer part of them unto her, with the persons that used to make them, and willed that if the liked them, the should accustome her Neeces to make the like, and give them for Prefents. At the diclaring of which Message the tears slowed down her eyes, which declared the gift not to be acceptable to her; for the Persian Ladies take nothing in more contempt then to put their hands to Wool. When report yed his Present, he thought the rudeness meet to be excused, and her to be comforted, therefore he came to visit her, and said:

This Garment which I wear was both of the gift and making of my sisters: our Customes brought me into errour. Therefore I desire you, that you will not take mine ignorance in evil part. I trust that sibernise I have observed sufficiently all things which I knew to be your Customes. When I under-took

Book V. of Alexander the Great. food that it was not lawful fir the Son to fit in the Mothers presence except she doth give him leave, I would never whenshever I came into your presence sit, until you willed me so to do. You would oftentimes bave fallen down and worshipped me, but I would not suffer you; but have ever bonoured you, and given you the name due to my sweet Mother

Olympias.

のはよう一味

When the King with there words had pacified her, he departed; and by four encamplings came unto a River that the Countrey-men call Passingen, which springing in the Mountains of the Ustans, it runneth neep down amongst the Rocks with woody banks by the space of fitty faitlongs; but then descending into a plain, it become it havigable, and fo runneth with a more quiet ffream, and in a foster ground, by the space of ha flindred Furlongs, tril fuch time as it doth eliter into the Persian Sea. Alexander passing this River with nine Thousand Footmen of the Micedons, with the Agrians , the mercenary Greeks, and will four Phonfand Thracians, came amongs the Carry whose Country is near unto Susa, and fire. our into Perfia, leaving between it and Sufe and row streight. Madates had the rule of that Course try, who was fuch a man as was rare at that time for he determined to abide all extremities for his duties take. Such as knew the Country, did inform Alexander that there was a privy way through the Mountains, whereby men might getare the surthermost lide of the chief City of that Country of and if he would lend but a few that were light will med, they might be brought to a place where they should M 4

ald appear above their enemies heads. This afel liked him to well, that he made thefe Counfellours Guides for his Army, and committed them to Tamen, whom he appointed chief of the Enterprize. Heafligned unto him fifteen hundred mercenary Souldiers, and one thousand Agrians, with whom, after the Sun was gone down, he entred into his journey. Alexander in the third watch removed his Camp, and by the Spring of the day had palled the Streights: there he fet his men in hand for the cutting down of Timber for making of Towers, and all fuch other things as pertained to the affault of a City, and to began his fiege. It was a difficult matter to make the approach; the City flood to high, and the Rocks gave fuch impediment, that the Souldiers were repulfed, and recrived many hurts, contending both with the Enemics, and the frituation of the place : notwithstanding they gave it not over, by reason the King was always amongst the foremost, asking if they were not allumed, being the Conquerours of fo many Lities, to be so long in the winning of a small Castle, that was so oblique and unknown in he world. As he was travelling amongst the fore-

from the walls; but the Souldiers defended him with their Targets, because they could not perswade him thence. At length Tarron appeared above the Castle of the City, at whose sight his Finemies hearts sainted, and the Macedons more hercely did assail them. When they saw them-

felves in this extremity, and perceived their pow-

Book Vi of Alexander the Great.

came of divers difficultions; For forme were mined to die, and many to fly away. But the ter part retired themselves into the Callie. whence they fent unto Alexander thirty Emballa dours to ask mercy. But he returned a fad antiwe to them, that there was no pardon to be obtained at his hands: whereupon they being in the utmost danger of death, and excluded from all other remedies, fent unto Sifigambio, by a privy way unknown to their Enemies, making their request the the should vouchfafe to be a means to Alexander for the pacifying of his rigout towards them. In her only they put their hope, knowing how much Alexander loved her, and that he effectied her if the had been his mother. And they thought the would the rather incline to their delire, because Madates that was Captain there had married her lifters Daughter, whereby he became a Kinfman to Darius. Sifigambis stood long in denial of their request, shewing that it agreed not with her fortune to become an intercessour for others; adding thereunto, that the feared left the might mufule his fayours, and make him weary of her importunities; for the faid, that the had more remembrance that the was a priloner, then that the was a Queen. But at length the was overcome with their folicitations, and by her Letters made intercellion unto Alexander. after fuch fort, that the first excused her felt of her fute making, and after required him that he would pardon them, or at the leastwife that he would lorgive her, being Petitioner only for the life of fuch a one as was her Friend and Kinsman; and now no longer an enemy, but in reading is to submit hime

The Life and Death Book V. himself. This one thing is fufficient to declare the

himself. This one thing is sufficient to declare the moderation and elemency that was then in Atexander's for he did not only pardon Madates, but also left the City untouched, granting to all that were within it their liberty, with enjoyment of their Lands and Goods, without paying of any tribute. More then this she could not have obtained of Darius

being her Son.

When he had thus subdued the Uxians , he united them to the Province of Sula, and purposing to pass forwards, he divided his Army into two parts; whereof he committed the one to Parmenio to be conducted through the plain Country, and deferving fuch a part as was pellered leaft with baggage, he took the way of the Mountains, which with a continual ridge runneth out in length from thence into Persia. In his passage he plundered all the Mountain-Country, and attived the third day in the confines of Persia. The fifth day he entred into the Streights of Pyle Sufie, which were defended by Ariobarzanes with tifteen thouland Footmen, who on the tops of the high and steep Rocks that hung over on both fides the way, at the first kept themselves quiet on purpose, pretending a fear, until fuch time as the Army was entred into the narrowest of the Streights. But when they faw the Macedons pals on forwards in contempt of them, then they threw down great stones upon them, which falling upon the undermost Rocks, and there breaking in pieces, rebounded amongstthe Macedons, falling with fuch violence, that they diffressed whole Regiments at once. And beides this, they did them great damage with thor of

ook V. of Alexander 100 Great. Arrows and Stones that they calted out of Sile inch as were men, of courage were not to thick aw there prefent, as that they thould be flain af-ter fuch a manner, like beatls caught in a pir, where-as they could not be revenged upon their Lucinies. Their wrath hereupon was turned into fuch a rage. that they ran up against the Rocks, and there en forced themselves by taking hold and by heaving up of one another, to mount up unto their Ehe mies. But when they had caught hold of forme outward part, and thereby laboured to alcend by force of to many hands that faltened to it at once they pulled in funder the thing they held by, and fell down all together. In this cale they could neither remain, go forwards, nor yet defend themselves by any device they could make with their Targets, feeing the stones were of such weight that were thrown down upon them.

0

Alexander was in great trouble of minde, not only for the grief he received by the destruction of his men, but much more for the shame that he had so rashly brought his men into such a dangerous straight. He had been invincible before that day, and never attempted any thing in vain: He had passed the Streights of Cilieia without damage, and opened to himself a new way by Sea into Pamphilia; which telicity of his seemed to be now at stay, if not to retreat; for he could perceive no other remedy, then to feturn by the way he came. He caused the retreat therefore to be sounded, and taye order to his Souldiers to go close together, and by satting their Targets over their heads, to seturn

the lane way they came, baving then marched this.

When he returned, and had planted his Camp in an open ground, confulting what was bell to do, such a superstition invaded his minde, that he called for the Priests and Diviners to help the atter by their invocation: But Ariftander to whom he gave most considence, could do nothing in that nices, which he thought then done out of time, alled for fuch as knew the Countrey: they shewed him of another way that was plain and open e-nough; but yet he liked it not, he was so ashamed to leave his Souldiers unburied that were flain: For emongst all other Ceremonies observed in the discipline of their Wars, there was not any more religiously kept, then the burying of the dead. He cauled therefore such prisoners as were lately taken to be called before him; amongst whom, there was one expert both of the Greek and Perfian tongue, who shewed to the King that he laboured in vain, if he thought to convey his Army over the tops of those Mountains; which (he said) began at Mount Cancafte, and closed in the one fide of Perfia, by the space of fixteen hundred Furlongs in length, and one hundred and forty in bredth, till fuch time as they descended unto the Sea, which makern another Fence where the Mountains ceased. The Country lying at the foot of the Mountains, he decribed to be plain, fruitful, and replenished with many fair Cities and Villages, and that the River Araxes running through the fame, falleth into enother River called Medie, bringing with it tho

Book V. of Alexander the Creat. Tributes of trainy finally, theams; which River: Medie being much less then the same which it do receive, runneth from thence towards the Sou No place could be more abundant of graft, the ver every where cloathing with Flowers, what had bedewed with its waters. The River was the dowed over with Plantain and Poplar-trees, wh by reason they stand somewhat high, and the w ter runneth low in a deep channel, feem to fur as be afar off, to be woods adjoyning to the to tains. He accounted no Country in Age to be in wholefome, or to have a thore temperate air the this, both by realon of fladowy Mountains evermore keep off the heat; and allo of the S which on that part being at hand, with a coult

P

0

ıt

C

h

t

t

ł

ŗ

When she priloper had made a defeription of the Country after this manner, the King enquired of him whether he knew those things by report, or else had seen them with his eyes. He said that he had been a Herds-man, and knew the Country very well, and all the pallages, and that he had been twice taken priloper; once by the Perliant in Lycia, and now the second time by him upon these words Alexander called an Oracle to memory, whereby it was signified to him, that a Lycian should be his Guide into Perlia. Whetefore promising to him such rewards as the present necessity required, and as his tiste was meet to receive; he willed him to be armed after the Macedonia manner, and to be their Guide to shew them the way; which way, though he had declared to be streight, and distinctly, yet Alexander made no

doubt to pass it with a small number, thinking it no difficult matter to pass that place for his glory, which the Herds-men had passed often-times for the profit of pasture. Then the guide lest not to alledge the difficulties of the way, specially for such as wear arms: but the King said to him, Take me for surety, that not one of them that are appointed thee, shall resule to go where thou shalt pass.

That done, he left Craserus with the charge of his amp, and he himself passed forwards with such cotmen as were accultomed to his person, with those bands of whom Meleager had charge, and with a thousand Archers on horseback, taking first order with Craterio that he should keep his Camp in the same form it had been used before, and cause many fires to be made of purpose, that the Ene-mies might rather think him to be there still preent : he advised him further, that if he perceived Aribbarganes to get knowledge of his Enterprize, and to to fend part of his power to the fropping of his passage, that then by pretending of an assault, he should show all the terrour he could to draw his Enemies from him, to the defence of that place. But if that he himfelf should deceive his Enemies. and recover the Hill upon them, that then upon the hearing of the alarm in the Camp of the Perfiane, preparing themselves to relist him, he should not doubt to pass that way from whence they were repulled the day before, judging they bould finde no reliftance, the Enemies power being converted cowards him. In the third watch he fet forwards in great filence, without founding

of Trumpet, and passed on by such a way as was shewed him by the Guide; every Souldier that was light armed carrying three days Victuals. But when he was on his way, besides the wilde Rocks and sharp stones that caused them off to fail their footing, the Snow driven by the winde was a great impediment to them in their journey; for they fell divers times down into pits; and such as coveted to pull them out, were often-times themselves drawn after. The night also, with the Country unknown, and the Guide, of whose sidelity step doubted, increased much their sear, considering that if they should not deceive their Enemies watch, they should be taken and perish like beasts. They considered also, that both their safeguard and the Kings lay in the hands of a prisoner.

•

r

e

-

lt

is

h

h

d

ft

P

**C•** 

d

e,

of

t,

¢.

S,

n

he

he

ce

ey

ē-

ch

of of

At length they came to a Mountain, where the way towards Ariobarzanes lay on the right hand, where he fent before, under the guiding of fuch as they had taken prisoners, Philotas, Cenon, Amintas, and Polipercon, with a band of the lightest armed, whom he advised, that for asmuch as they had both horsemen and sootmen, and the Counmy fertile and abundant in forrage, that they should make no halle, but pass forwards fair and ealily; and he, with the Esquires of his body, and the band of horsemen whom they called Agemas was guided by another by-path, far off from the place where his enemies kept their watch: But the pallage was to firaight and to hollow, that they fuffered great trouble and vexation in passing thereof. It was now mid-day, and they were to wearing that of necessity they must take rest, having to far to go, as they had travelled already, laving that the way was not altogether to difficult and rough. He refreshed therefore his men with

and rough. He refreshed therefore his men with meat and fleep, and in the second Watch did rise up, and passed the rest of his journey without any great distinctly, saving in that part where the Mountain began to fall aflope towards the plain; their passage was there suddenly stopped by a great nil, occasioned by the violence of the fireams that ran down the Mountains, by wearing away Earth; and belides, the trees standing so thick, and the boughs that grew one within another, appeared before them as a continual hedge. they law themselves stayed after this manner, such peration fell amongst them, that they could scarcely abstain from tears, the darkness being a great increase of their terrour, seeing they could not enjoy any benefit of the Stars; for if any gave light, the fame was taken away by the shadow of the trees. And the use of the ear could not serve for one to receive countel and comfort from another, the winde whirling amongst the leaves, and the shaking of the boughs making an amazing noise. But at length the day increasing in its light, diminished the terrours that the darkness of the night had made. Then by fetching a little com-Pais about, they pailed the hollow gull; and every man began to be a guide to himfelf. At last they got up on the top of the Hill, from whence they might behold their Enemies in their Camp. Then the Macedons shewed themselves stoutly in their Armour, appearing suddenly on their backs, when they mistrusted no such thing, and there

flew

ame full to encounter one parts the gridvous n at were llain, and the milerable shrick an in for fuccour amongst their own company, t the rest to slight without making any relistance hen the Alarm was once heard in the Camp where Conterm lay, the Army by and by passed forward to go through the Streights, in the which they were repulled the day before. Philotos alfo, wit Polipercon, Cener; and Amintas, who were som the other way, arrived at the same time, and gove a further terrous unto their Enemies. When the Perfunt faw their Enemies affailing them in all parts at once; though they were to oppress with icit fudden invation, that at the first they were in doubt what to dos yet at length they affembled together, and fought notably, necessity sirring up the taintness of their hearts; for often-times despair is the cause of good hope. They being unarmed, closed with them that were armed, and with the eight of their bodies pulled their Enemies to the Earth, and killed divers with their own Weapons! briobarcanes with forty Horlemen, and five thous and Footmen that kept about his perfor , brake rough the Battel of the Macedons, to the great menter of his own men and his Enemies; and by making halte, recovered Persepolis the chief City the Countrey. But when he was excluded from thence by fuch astwere within, he tenewed again light with such as were with him, and so was

'n

è

e

,

t

S

y

١,

)-

n

h

d

2

d

e

of

e

)-

id

g

ıt,

he

n-

e-

ft

ce

p. in

5,

re ew

that time Coaterus, that made all the speed he eld, was come unto them, Alexander fortified his

198 . The Life und Draib

where he di Enemies. For though they were all fleat and he certain of the Victory, yet because he found his way stopped in many places with great and deep Ditches; he thought good to ule circumspection; and not to make too great a speed a not to much by fear of his Enemies Force; as by reason of the nature of the ground, which he found apt for them to day ambuthments against him. As he was pasling forwards, he received Letters from Tyridates the keep's of Davine Treasure, fignifying that the inhabiters of Perfepolis hearing of his coming, were about to spoil the Treasure; and that therefore he should hatte to prevent it, for the way was ready enough, notwithstanding the River of Araxes interpoled. There was no vertue in Alexander more commendable then his celerity, which he showed specially in this; for leaving his sootmen behinde, he travelled all night with his herfemen, and by day-light came to the River of Araxes; there he found many Villages and Houses, whose Timber being taken down, a Bridge was raised in a moment, by the help of flones which were found in the borrom of the River

When Alexander had passed the River, and came pear unto the City, a company mer him so instead ble, as seldom have been found in any memory. They were Greeks, to the number of four thousand, whom the Persians heretotore had taken prisoners; and afflicted with divers kindes of torments. For some of them had their seet cut off, some their lands, and others their cars, but all were marked in the sesh with hor trons. The Personal having

of Alexander the Great. having malmed and deformed them after this manner, kept and releaved them fill, as a memor of their delpite towards the Nation, But when they faw they should come under the obedience of mother Prince, they suffered the Greeks to meet Alexander. They feemed rather to be Specters then men! for nothing could be discerned or known but their voice. The compassion of their wretched estate, caused the beholders to let fall no fewer tears then they did themselves. For it could not appear which of them were most milerable, though their afflictions were divers. But when they have cried out before Alexander, that Jupiter the revenget of Greece had opened their eyes in beholding him that should deliver them, they judged then all their gifts as one. Alexander wired the tears from his eyes, and willed them to be of good chear; for that they should both see their Countrey and their Friends: and he encamped at the fame place where he mer them; being two furlongs from Persepals. The Greek drew themselves together to conful what was belt for them to demand of Alexander; and when some were of opinion to ask dwelling places within Affa, and others had more minde to return into their Countries, Euclemon the Cymean spake thus unto them : We that even now were ashamed to put our beads out of the prion and darkness we were in , to make fuit for our own and and relief, are become of such simplicia pleasant spectacle, our desormities and mains,

obereof me have as much cause to be albamed, as

grieved. Tou muft think that fuch bear their

miferies

ł

C

r

4

E

C

-

٧.

-

. [-1

**[-**

re

13.

g

miseries belt; who can finde the means to bide them most; and that there is no Countrey so familiar 10 men that be unfortunate, as folitarines, and forextfulness of their former estates For they which make an account of their Friends pity and compassion, know not born soon their tears may dry up no Creatures can love shofe faithfully show they abhar. For as columity of her own Nature is full of complaint; so Felicity is always proud, and every one doeb use to think of his own Fortune, when be judgeth of bis Neighbours : For except me had all been in milery, one of w long ago had been weary of another. What marvel is it shen, though men in felicity feek alwaies their equals? My opinion is therefore, that we (who as men long ago were as dead in this life ) seek us a place wherein we may bide our mained members, and whereas exile may concest our borrible deformities. If we shall return into our Countrey, being in this case, born can we but be unwelcome to our Wives whom we married young? Or shall our Children or our Brethres now acknowledge us, being the vomits of so many Presons? and though all things should there succeed as we could wish, jet bur small a number of us are able to travel through fo many Countries? How is it possible for us that are here banished into the uttermost bounds of the Orient, being aged, impotent, and mained, to endure those travels which have wearied men who have been both armed , and Conquerours ? It is to be asked what fall become of our Wives whom Chance and Nescfity bath bere procured us, for the only comfort of our imprisonment? what shall we Book V. of Alexander the Great

do with our Children & Shall we take them with us, or leave them behinds us of me terms with fuel as we have here, none of those in Greece will accumulately and shall we then he so made leave these comforts we have already, being uncertain whether we shall arrive at those which we define, or not? Verily much better it were for us, to conceal our selves amongst them who have been acquainted with us in our misery.

These were Endemon his words: but Theres,

the Athenian, reasoned to the contrary.

,

k

16

11

el

01

ds

10

bo

to

m

be

do

There is no wife man (quoth he) that will effect us by, our outward shape, seeing that our calamity is not come by Nature, but by the cruelty of othe Enemies: Such as are alkamed of the injuries of Fortune, are well worthy to fuffer mifadventure: They give a grievous sentence upon the state of mans Mortality, and despuir much of mercy, who deny sheir compassion to men in misery. Now therefore, fince the gods have offered to you what ye darft never have wished for, that is, year Counthings which men eftern more then life, and releem oftentimes with death; Why do you doubt tor the emoyment of those things, to break unt of this imprisonment? I judge the Air of our own Country most natural to us, where there is anower manner of living, other Customs, other Religion, and another tongue; which for the pleafantucis of it, is covered of the Burbarous Nations. What great things then be those which we would willingly leave, the want of which onely is the early of your mifery's My Opinion is plain; abat

on he decanad with the love of fuch wiver and ch dern as they have gatten here in fervisude, let fuch he no impediment to others, that efteen most their natural Countrey.

There were but few of this opinion; for custome, that is of greater force then nature, prevailed in that point. They agreed therefore to demand of Alexander the gift of fome place to inhabit in , and choic out a hundred to be Petitioners to him in that behalf. When Alexander perceived them coming to-wards him, thinking that they would have required

what he had conceived, he faid unto them;
I have appointed to every one of you Beafte to carry
you, and a thousand Daniers; and when you shall sconte to Gracce, I will so well provide for you, that excepting your misfortune, no mansball think himself in

But when he law them looking hill toward the ground, and that they neither lifted up their eyes, nor spake one word, he enquired the cause of their heaviness. Then Endemon rehearled again thole words in effect, which he had spoken before in Conneel. The King therefore pitying no less their demand, then he did their mistortune, commanded three thousand Deniers to be given to every one of them, and ten fuits of apparel, with Ca tel and Corn, whereby they might Till and Sow the Land that should be appointed to them. The next day he affembled all the Captains of his Army to-gether, and represented to them, that there was no Lity more themy to the Greeks then the same that

nto Create thow Daring hill and after him come out of that place to move their War against Europe, with the destruction of City he shought good to revenge the blood of Predecessours. The Inhabitants had about nat Cary, and fled where their fear die hem. Whereupon, the King fireightw all the *Phalant* to the ipoi efore that time wen many Citi d fome by composition, that w nd of Princes Treasure; but the aboutance ity did exceed all the rest, as being the here the Persians had laid up all their subla ld and Silver was found in heaps, and grency of rich habiliments and furniture of houses, only for necessary use: but for excess and oftenone which was fogueat; that it gave the Concrours occasion to right for it amongst themselves, it taking other for their enemies that had gottest richest spoil. The abundance there was such, they could not imploy the riches which they nd; but when they law things of value, the med them rather, then took them away. A every one of them covering to have a part of thing, did tear and break alunder the Princeand the precious Plate of curious workwith the Images of Gold and Silver, were plucked in pieces, as every one caught nothing was left untouched, not any thing d away whole; cruelty bearing no lefs rule n coveroulnels, every one was to laden with gold

ontoners, har killes such as at dirti in hope of gains. There were many refore that prevented their Enemies by a warm ary death; and divers cloathing themselves in heir most precious apparel, leaped down from the walls with their wives and children. Certain there re that let their own houles on fire, (which they Enemies would elfe have done) and elves with their Family together. At ing did forbid any violence to be don id that no man should meddle with ing thing pertaining to them. The furn of money an well credit; but either we must doubt with others, or elfe believe what hath been left in me-mory; that the Preafure there found, amounted to a hundred and swenty chousand Talents: which Treasure, because Alexander would employ Wars, he caused Horses and Camels to be but taking of the City of Perfagadis; wherein w found fix Thousand Talents, was an increase this tem; which City being built by Co vielded up by Gubares, who had the Governmen thereof.

Allexander left in the Castle of Reefepotic three thousand Macedons in Garrison, under Meander Captain of the same and referved to Tyridaes, that delivered him the Treasure, the same honour that he enjoyed with Darius. Leaving in this City the greater part of his Army, with his Carriages, under the Rule of Parments and Crateries, he with a thousand

Book War Ale

dimilanti fenement am a Band out any Laggage, went to other in the Wing ele-fencial inward parts of Poplar There he was no ed with Storms and Tempelis that were in a manne intolerable; but yet he advanced forwards in he Enterprize, to the place appointed. In his march he came unto a Country that was covered with Snow, and frozen by the violence of the cold. The melancholy of the Wilderness out the Souldiers that were wearied with travel in fuch terrour, that they imagined they had feen the uttermost bounds of the world : For when the held all things waste, and no signe appearing of the habitation of them, they were amazed, and made request to return again, before that the Light and Elements thould fail them. The King would not challife them, being in this terrour, but leaped from his Horie, and marched on foot before them if the Snow and the Ice: Which thing when his reiends law, they could not for thame but follow; en the Captains did the like, and finally the Souliers: The King was the tirle that made himself a way, by breaking the Ice with a Pick-Axe; whole example the rest did follow. At length, having these fome appearance of habitation, and discovered Flocks of Sheep: When the Inhabitants, who welled in the Cottages dispersed thereauther, law armed men advancing, whom lged to be their Inemies; thinking they had been inclosed thour, they flew fuch as were not able to follow them, and fled themselves to the Mountains that were fell of Show. But at length, syctomizationtion

and they vielded diexander, who did them to hurt ned all that part of When he had conquered all that part of ad brought the Towns under his obedience, me into the Countrey of the warlike-Mardiwho did differ much from the rest of the Persons in their manner of living; They their wives and children did dig themselves s in the Mountains, and lived with the fieth of and wilde Beafts: nor had the women any men a their threeged hair hung down before n their faces, and their garments came but to r knees; the bands of their Slings were fillets for a fore-heads, which they uled both for ornaent and defence. This Nation, for all their uncivility could not escape from being subdued with the thirtieth day after he departed from Perfein, he returned to it again. Then he gave rewards to his friends, and to all the rest according to their deservings, distributing in a manner all the riches which he found within that City. But all the excellent vertues of his minde, his Princely qualities, wherein he excelled all Kings, that confiancy in all dangers, that dexterity in contri-ving and performing all Enterprizes, the keeping of his promise with those that submitted, his cletrency towards prifoners, and that temper ace in awful and accurrentity pleasures, were harough the intolerable defire and deli ad in detakings for notwithflanding that

Book V. of Mexander the care

my which contended with him for the Empire and make then great Levies for the Wars, and was greathering his power together; and although the people newly conditioned were not ver in a since subjection; yet he gave himself continually to feating and banquetting, where women were ever prefent; not such to whom men had respect for honesty, but Harlots; who had in the Camp more liberty, then beforemed the discipline of men to War.

Amongs them there was one Thate, who a day in her drunkennels, affirmed to Alexa that he thould wonderfully win the favour e Greek; if he would command the Palace of fepolis to be let on tire; the definition whereof taid) they greatly defired; for formuch as the f was the Seat of the Kings of Persia, which in tu out had definoyed to many of their Cities. When the inches Barlot had given her. Sentence, a lecon nd a third (they being likewife drunk) conhim ner words. Alexander, who then had in him more lination to heat then patience; faid, Whyde a or then revenge Greece, and the city on fire they were all high with the and role imme stely upon those words to burn that City in the trunkenness, which the tuen of War had spared their fairs. The King himself first, and after his Guests, his Servanes, and his Concubines let h on the Palace; which being builded for the mot part of Cedar; became fuddenly on a flame When the Army that was encamped near unto the d the fire, which they dought indica by fome calualty, her came

£.

the large and Dodon Book V.

spends the fame: But when they faw the King
there prefent moundhing the flame, they poured
out the water which they brought, and helped likewife to increase the fire.

Palace that was the Head of the whole Drient, from whence to many Nations before had many Kings, the only Terrour fometimes of Greece, that had let forth a Naty of ten thousand Ships, and Armies that overflowed all Europe, who made Bridges over the Sca, and undermined Mountains where the Sca hathriow his course, was conbe Ages that did enflies for the Kings of Micedothe hands of the Paribians. The definition of his City was fuch, that the Foundation thereof, at his day, cannot be found, but that the river of Arfrom Persepolar (wenty furlongs), as the Inhabitants rather do believe then know. The Mactions were sthamed that so Nobles City was destroyed by their King in his drunker was yet at length it was turnmance, and they were content to think it expedi-ent, that the City hould have been to defineed. But it is certain, that when Atexamler had taken his rest, and was better advised, he respented him of this deed, and said. That the Pertians should bave done the Greeks more barm; if it had been bis chance to have Reigned in Xerxes Read. The next ca) he pave thirty Talents for a reward to him that was his Guide into Perfix; and from thence he advanced Book V. of Alexander the Greek. He advanced forwards into Media, where a new timeply of Souldiers ( of whom Plane) where had the Conduct,) came to him our of Cilians being his hundred Footmen, and a thouland Horlemen.

When he had by this means increated his po he determined to purfue Daring wh Echarana, the Head City of Media, and was pr poled from thence to have palled into Battria: fearing to be prevented by the speed which his E mies made, he altered his purpole, and his journ Alexander was not come near by fifty hundred longs; but he could not think any dillance funfore prepared himself rather to fight, then to fight He had with him thirty thouland Footmen, amon whom there was four thousand Greeks, whose Fi delity never failed in all his adverte Fortune: He had also four thouland Archers and Slingers, belides thirty three hundred Ballrian Horlemen, which were under Beffus charge, being Governous both of the City of Badria, and the Country. Daries with those Forces, withdrew a little from the high-way, and commanded such as had charge of the Carriage to pais on before: He called a Counce where he spake to this effect !

If Forume had marched me with Cowards, and with such as preserved a vile life before an honest death. I would rather have beld my peace, then at this instant consume spords in vain. But I have had greater experience then I could mish, both of your valour and sidelity towards one: So that I for my part, another the seem worth to have such triends as you are, then to doubt whether ye year

TEM 41/4

2212.4

le

d

b

ə£

d

0

1-

1-

11

w

of

at

åt

ts re

ir I-

d.

n

ld

W XX

m

nt

ed

me men lowards me ve were before to many thoulands that were under my Emyou only have followed and adhered to me: h I have been twice overthrown in the Field, twice inforced to fly away, your fidelity and contancy doth make me think that I remain a King. Traytors and Fagitives do reign in my trues a not for that they be thought tworthy of uch honour, but that you might be provoked by her rewards to revolt against me. Notwithstanyou have chosen rather to follow me in my some then be partakers of the felicity of the querours. Tou are worthy, whom the Gods wall reward if I may not, or undoubtedly they will. There can so Posterity be to filent, nor Same fo engrareful, which hall not with due comnendations extol you to the Stars. Though I had within me thoughts of Flight, whereunto my beart ever agreed, yet I have now conceived such a trust of your Vertue and Manbood, that I purpase to advance against my Enemy: How long thall I be is a banished man within mine own Dominion, and fin from a france and Porreign Prince within the bounds of mine own Kingdom? When may by hazarding the Battel, either recover what I ave foll, or elle die an bonourable death? Except peradventure it scemeth better to some men, that I should submit my self to my enemies will, and by the Example of Mazeus and Mithrenes, receips by Perition the Dominion of some one Nations wherein I judge that Alexander had rather follow be inclination of his glory, then of his wrath No, let the gods never grant, that it may he in a mani

mans power, either to take away this Liadem spon my bead nor the Empire, so long as I bave breath. For in refolved, that my Life and my Kingdom J both together. If this minde, if this remain in you, there is none of you that can liberty, there is none that shall be compelled to dure the arrogancy of your Enemies. Every right hand shall give unto himself either a rev or an end of his evils. I my felf am an End of Fortune, and therefore it is not wishout that I look for a better change. And if the fall out, that the gods do continue against our Wars that be lawfull and bonest; yet this not be denied; but that we may manfully an neftly die. I require and conjure you, by the nour of our Predecessours, who with find F. and Glory bave possessed the Kingdomes of a whole Orient; by those men to whom Macedon some times was tributary, by fo many Names of Ships fent into Greece, and by so many Victories won ibet ve will take such courage with you, at feem worthy your Nobility and your Nation's that with the same constancy of minde where with have endured things palt, you attempt whatfacue Fortune shall produce bereafter. I am resolues my part, to purchase to my self a perpetual Fame either by Victory, or by some notable Adventure in the

When Darius had spoken these words, the representation of the present peril so amazed them all, that they were not able either to shew their advices, or to speak a word; until such time as

Arta-

realistics, the molt ancient of his Friends (who betime had been with King Philip) began to de-

We are some into the Field (quoth he) with you that are our King, in our most precious Apparel, and richest Armour with intent to win the Victory's and me do neither despair of Victory, nor do we resuse to

E

B

24

b

S

n

B

Sa

of di

**‡1**1

CH lik

a

To those words all the rest with one voice seemd to agree, faving Nabarzanes, who being present in that Councel with Beffits, and of his Opinion, confound a Treaton to prodigious; that the like th feldom been heard of Their determination by force of the Souldiers they had under their charge, to put their King in hold; with this purpole, that if Alexander pursued them, to deliver him then alive into his hands, to win thereby his avour, as a thing which they thought he would greatly effects! But if they could escape conveniently, then they were in minde to kill Darine, and di-War against the Macedons. They having imagined this Treaton long before in their mindes, Nabarzanes thought this an occasion to make a preparative to his wicked intent, by this perswafion which he uttered:

I am confident (quoth he) shat I (ball speak sobat at the first appearance shall not be grateful unto your pars : But Physitians use to ture Difeafer that. be great with flour and bitter Medicines: And the Ship-Masters; when they fear a Ship-wouch; acne to redeem such things as may be faved, while the destruction and loss of the rest . Let this m bat

Book V. of Alexander the Great

what I shall perswade unto a not to your but an Expedient by what means you may prefere wour felf and your Kingdom. We make a War wherein the god's feem manifestly to be against us, and fortune ceaseth not oblinately to pursue us: It is needful sherefore that we lay new Foundations, and feek out men who have other Fortunes : My Opinion is, that you deliver up your, Kingdom unto some mans bands who shall have the Name of King, fo long as your Enemies are within Alia: And when they be once departed (which my minde giveth me to be shortly ) be shall restore unto you the Same again: The Country of Bactria u yet untouched; the Indians and Sacans be at your appointment : So many People , so many Armies, fo many thousands of Horsemen and Footmen bave their Forces in readiness to renew this War: So that a much greater Force remaineth, then that which the War hath confumed. Why do we then like Beafts, wilfully run to a deffruction that is not necesfary? It is the property of fuch as are men of conrage, rather to despise death, then to hate life; and oftentimes, by meariness of travel, Cowards are driven to take little regard of themselves; but Verthe leaving nothing unproved, and Death being the end of all things, it is sufficient if we go not to it like Sluggards: Therefore if we shall go unto Ba-Ctria, which is now our next Refuge, let us, for the present, make Bussias our King, who is already Ruler of that Country; and when the Affairs be once brought to some stay, be shall restore to you the Empire again, s to their Kight King.

1

h

14

0

14

d

14

,

is. St Although Darius perceived not the greatness of the insiched that by hidden under his wicked words.

194 The Life and Death Book Va

words, yet it was no marve) that he could not abstain; for he turned towards him, and said, Thom
wile Slave, hast thou now found out a time meet to
disclose the Treason that syeth in thy heart? And
therewithal he pulled out his Sword to have slain
him, if Besser, and the other Bactrians about him,
had not hindred his purpose. These pretended to
be forry for the marter, but minded in very deed
to binde him, if he had continued in his pur-

pole.

EL IOW

In the mean feafon, Nabarzanes escaped away, and Belfus followed after; who immediately did feparage the Bands they had charge of from the rest of the Army, because they would use them apart to their own purpose. When they were departed, Artabasis framed his talk according to the estate of the time then present, and began to pacific Darike with words, putting him in remembrance, how his case was such, that it behoved him to bear quietly the foolishness, or rather the errour of his own men, for as much as Alexander was at hand, too fore an Enemy for them, although there were no disobedience: But if we shall be at variance (quoth he) when he does pursue us, our affairs shall stand in very evil condition. Thereupon Darius inclined formewhat to Artabafus advice; and though he was minded to remove, yet because he perceived every man to be troubled in minde, he remained Ail in the same place. But he himself was so aftonished with forrow and desperation, that he kept himself close, and came not forth of his Pavilion: Whereupon the Camp being without Government, the Heads not confulting together as they did before,

## Book V. of Alexander the Great.

fore, there arose amongst them a great diversity of Opinions, and motions of mitude: Which thing when Patron saw, that was Captain of the Greek Souldiers, he willed his men to put on their Armour, to be in a readiness to do as they should be appointed: The Persians incamped by themselves, and Bessus remained amongst the Bastrians, practifing to carry away the Persians into Bastria, and to leave Darius; signifying to them the tiches of that Region yet untouched, and the peril they were in if they remained there; but they were all in a manner of one Opinion, that it was an over-great offence for them to forsake their Princes.

In the mean season, Artabasia executed the Kings Office, and went amongst the Persians in their lodgings, admonishing and exhorting them, sometimes apart, and otherwhile all together, and would never leave them, before it appeared that they would do as the King would have them. That done, with great pain and difficulty, he perswaded Darius to take his meat, and set his minde upon his buti-

ness.

h

d

)-

pt

jt,

C.

re,

But Beffer and Nabarzanes were so greedy to get the Government into their hands, that they retolved to put in execution the thing they had long conspired betwixt them; for so long as Darius was in latery, they could not hope to compass not attain so great Authority. The Majesty of a King is had in great Veneration amongst those Nations, at whose Name only they assemble together; and the Reverence used to them in their prosperity, causeth men to show them the like obedience in advertity: The greatness and power of those Countries, where-

0 2

196 . The Life and Death Book V.

of Bestus and Nabarzanes had the Rule, not being interiour to any other Nations in that part of the world, either in men, in surniture, or largeness of their Territory, gave a great incouragement unto their wicked dispositions, in attempting of this matter: For they possessing the third part of Asia, were able to make as great a number of men as Darius before had loss. In confidence whereof, they not only despited Darius, but Alexander himself; purposing, when they were once become Lords of that Country, to re-inforce from thence again the power of the Empire, and maintain the Wars against the Macedons.

When they had long devised and debated thefe things, they determined to take Darius by the Baarian Souldiers, of whom they had the Rule; and then to fend word to Alexander, that they referved him alive, to deliver him into his hands: And it to be that Alexander should not not accept it, which indeed they doubted, then their purpose was to kill Darius, and with their power to fly into Badria. But tor fo much as they faw that Darius could not be taken openly, feeing there were to many thoufands ready to aid him, and fearing also the fidelity of the Greeke, they determined to work by flight, the thing that they could not bring to pass by force. The plot was, to counterfeit a repentance of their former doings, in exculing unto the King the fear they were in, and in the mean featon, they fent certain to practife with the Persians, and to and to with hope and fear ; formetime they thought, that by leaving of their King, they thould commit them-10

Book V. of Alexander the Great.

themselves to manifest ruine and destruction to And again, they remembred what entertainment was promised them in Badria, that lay open for them where they should be received with such gitts and rich's,

as they could not well imagine.

9

g

y

to

to

t,

nt I-

Whiles Bellis and Nabarganes were bearing of thele things in their heads. Artabafur came unto them, declaring how During was well packed, and that they might, if they would, be in the fame Estate and Degree with him that they were before. Thereupon they fell to weeping, and purging themfelves; requiring Artabalus, what he would cake upon him the defence of their Caufe, and carry their Request and Submission unto the king. The melit was confumed in this kinde of buliness! When the -was day, Naburzanes, with the Battrian Souldiers, stood at the Entry of the Kings Lodgings colouring his privy Treaton with the volemn prefence of the ing his duty: Darbus cauled warning to be given for his remove; and fo mounted upon his Chariot. atter his accultomed manner. Nobarzanes, and the other Traytors, fell upon the ground to worthip him, and shed tears in token of repentance; notwithstanding that they determined shortly after to put him in Fetters, so apr is the nature of man to diffimulation. During being of a timple and gracle Nature, was intorced through their behaviour, not only to believe what they pretended; but also it canfed him to weep for joy: yer that could not cante the Traytors to alter their purpose, when they perceived what kinde of man , and what manner of Prince they went about to deceive During doubting nothing of his peril that was next 198 The Life and Dekth Book V.

Alexander, whom he only doubted, Patron, that was Captain of the Grecians, commanded his Souldiers to put on their Harness, which they carried before in Trusses, and to be ready, and attend to every thing that should be appointed them: For he understanding the Treason that was contrived, followed the Kings Chariot, seeking occasion to speak with him.

And Beffer doubting the same thing, would not depart from the Chariot, but followed rather as a Watch then a Waiter. Patron therefore having tarried long, and being interrupted oftentimes as he was about to speak, stood in a stay, betwixt sear and sidelity, beholding the King in the sace. When Parist perceived that he beheld him after that manner, he willed Bubace, his Eunuch, that rode next him, to enquire of Patronis he had any thing to say to him: Patron said, Tea: but his matter was such, as he would no man should hear. Then he was willed to come near; and (without any Interpreter) Parist understanding somewhat of the Greek Tongue, Patron said unto him:

Sir's Of fifty thenfand Greeks that served you, there is a small number of us remaining, which have continually followed you in all Fortunes; bearing unto you the same sidelity and affection that we did in your most sourcibing Estare; And we were determined, wheresever you are, to take that sow our country and home; both Prosperity and Adversity hath sa coupled us together: By which suvincible Filesty that is in w, I desire you, and require you; that you would wouchsafe to lodge within our Camp, and suffer us

Book V. of Alexander the Creat. 199
no to be the Guard of your Perfon. We have lost
Greece, we have no Bacteria to go anto s all our hope
is in you. and the gods green the

is in you, and the gods grant that all other men may do the like. It is not necessary I should speak any more is not would I demand the custody of your Person, being an Alien and a Stranger, if I knew that

others were as well-minded towards you.

Although Besses were ignorant of the Greek Tongue, yet his Conscience pricked him to believe, that Patron had disclosed something; and therefore carrying away some part of his words, by a Greek Interpreter became out of doubr : Darins nothing afraid, as it appeared by his Countenance, enqu of Patron what moved him to give fuch advice Whereupon, he thought not good to defer it any longer, but faid; Beffus and Nabarranes mork Treason against you, so that your Life and your E-State fland in extreme peril; and this day shall be the taft, either to the Traytors, or to you. Whole words, it Darius had well weighed and regarded, Potrus had received the glory of the prefervation of the Prince. But let them mock that lift, who fay that the state of men is governed by Chance: I do believe every man runneth his Race by an Immutable Order, and by a concatenation everlasting appointment, unknown, appointed long before. Daring anfwer was :

That although the delity of the Greek Souldier's was sufficiently known unto him, yet he was determined never to depart from his own Nation, by who ne though he might be deceived; yet it was hard for him to mistrust them: Whatsoever should befall him, the lid, he was minded rather to suffer it amongst his

0

04

sben so part away from them; not deive, if his own Souldiers defired not his

Whereupon Patron despairing of the Kings welfare, returned them of whom he had the charge, ready to adventure any thing for his take, Beffire, in the mean leafon, had absolutely determined to flay Darius; but fearing that he could not win Alexanders favour, except he delivered his Enemy into his hands alive, deferred his purpole to the

night following.

In the mean leafon, he came to Darius, and gave him thanks that he had so warrly , and with such wildom , avoided the Treason of that falle Grecian, who being corrupted by Alexander, fought nothing but how to make a prelent of his head; whereat (he faid) He could not marvel that a Mercemary man sould leave any thing undone for Money, being without any Pledge of his Honesty, without Friend, and a doubtful Enemy; toffed here and there at the beck of all men that would corrupt bim. And then he fell to purging of himself, calling the gods of his Country to witness his Innocency in

Derius, by his countenance, fremed to believe him; yet he doubted not of the truth of what Ratron had told him; but he we come to fuch a point, that it was as dangerous for him not to believe his own men, as to be deceived. There were thirty thouland, whole lightness was feared to have confented to this Conspiracy; and Patron had but four thousand, unto whom if he had committed his fafeBook V. of Alexander the Great.

ty, and thereby condemned the fidelity of Nation , he faw that then they might have he goodly colour and pretence to petiorin the terprize; and therefore choic trather to be kill Innocently, then to give any occasion whereby he should feem to have deserved death : And yet when Beffus purged himself, he answered, That be been that there was no less Justice in Alexander, then Manbood; and that they mere decrived that to ed for any Rewards of Treason at his hands a know ing there was none a greater Punisher or Revenger of the breach of Fidelity. When the night d near ; the Persians , after their accustomed in put off their Armour, and fepaired to the next Vil ges, to provide things necessary : But the Bath ans, as Beffus had commanded them, food fill ago ed. In the mean leafon, Daring had fent for Mrtabafue, and thewed him what Patron had declated : Whereupon Artabafas made no doubtes but chat he would firaight ways commit himfelf among the Greeks; thinking that the Persiant six when the Kinks peril thould be published abroad a would joyn wish the Grecians: Yet Danie, predeffinate to his change could not hear that faving counfel; not fought for any help in that cases but imbraced Artabofue though he should never see him prores land be wet with the tears that one of them let fall oup in the other, he caused Artabasus to be removed from him; and because he would not see his fortow in departing from him the covered his face; and fell flat upon the ground! Then fuch as were seenformed to the Guard of his Person, who should have been his D. feuce in all perils , fled away , thinking

1

it

re

y.

n

re

a-

is

ty

n-

e-

ty,

102 The Life and Death Book V.

thinking themselves over-weak for such a number of armed men as they supposed to be coming? There was a great solitariness within Darins his lodging; for none remained about the King but a few Eunuchs, that had no place to repair unto: Then he debated and devised with himself alone, sometime one thing, and sometime another; and anon he waxed weary of that solitariness, in which before he took a comfort, and called Bubase unto him, whom he beheld, and said:

Go, provide for your selves, who, according to your delies, have been true to your Prince till the last hour; been I do tarry for the fatal Law of my desting: Perdesenter you do marvel that I do not end mine own life; I had rather dye through other mens wickedness;

Then by mine own the

lodging, and also the whole Camp with mourning and lamentation; and divers brake into the place where Darius was, and tearing their cloatis, bewailed his case with a great lamentation. When the cry came unto the Persians, they were so amated with fear, that they durk neither put on their Asmour, lest they might give occasion to the Batisians to set upon them; nor could they remain quiet; lest they might so wickedly leave their King.

Then were clamours heard throughout the Camp of divers forts, without any Head, and without any appointment. Such as pertained to Nabarzamer and Beffes, deceived by such lamentation as they heard, brought tydings to the rest, that the King had killed himself: Whereupon, they repaired this they

ther fo fast as they could gallops and such Followed after, as were chosen to be Ministers of their Michies. When they were entred into the Kings Pavilion, because the Eunuchs declared that he was alive, they commanded him to be bound.

Thus he, who before was carried in a Chariot, and honoured of his men like a god, was made reign Power; and put into a vile Cart, and covered over with Beafts skins : and fooil was made of the Kings Stuff, in fuch fort, as if it had been taken in the Wars. When they had laden themselves with the Prey got after so foul a manner, they conveyed themselves into their Countries : But tabafin, with those of whom he had the charge, and with the Greek Souldiers, took their way towards Parthing; thinking to be more fure any where, then in the Followthip of thole Traytors. The Perfians, whom Beffin had overcome with to many fair promifes , specially because they had no other man to follow, poyned themselves to the Buttrians. and the third day overrook them. But to the inrent Dariss thould not want fuch honour as was due to his Estato Beffer caused him to be bound with Golden Petters ; fuch were the despites that his Fortune made him fubicet unto ! And for that he should not be known by his Apparel, they covered the Cart with foul Hides of Beafts, and caufed unknown men to drive it forwards: and left enquiry in the Army he reight be discovered. fuch as had the charge of him followed afar off.

n

,

e

5.

n

-

ır

-

n

ir

ip

14

25

ey

18 11-

1et

When Alexander heard that Darine was removed to Echarana, he left the way that he was in, and

with all the speed he goold make followed after Daries, who was faid to be gone into Media. But when Alexande was come to Taba, which is the Chief City of Parasacene, in was there shewed him by Fugitives that came out of Darise Camp, how he was fled with all speed into Bastria ; and afterward understood the matter more certainly by Baus of Babylon, who could not fay directly, that Darius was used as a prisoners but faid, that seither he was in danger of death, or of captivity, allexander, upon that intelligence, called his Captains to-gether, and the wed them that he had a great Enterprize, but fuch a one as the travel was very thiort; During ( he fold ) was not far off, forfaken of his own men s and either taken as a prisoner , or elfe flain: in whole person he shewed the whole Victory to confift, and the greatness of the matter to be a reward of their hatte making. They all cryhim wherefoever he should go; and that he should not spare their labour, nor their peril: Whereupon he conveyed his Army forwards with marvellous speed, rather in Post, then after the common order of Marching ; neither resting day nor night, till they passed tive hundred surlengs, and came to the Bridge where Darius was taken : There Melun, Darius Interpreter, who by reason of his fickness could not follow the Army, was taken by lexanders celerity; who feigning that he fled from his Master, declared the whole matter. But how great foever his defire was to overtake his Encmies, it was necessary for him to give his men rest in their travel: So that determining to leave the Telt

Book V. of Alexander she Great reft of his Army behinde he did ghafe our thouland Horsemen, and added to them three ho dred, called Dimichas, that were Footmen, be harnefied, but yet riding on Horseback; and when the occasion required, alighted and fought on foot. When Alexander was taking order about these things, Orsellus and Mitbracenes, who so hatred they bare to Bellis for his Trea Con, fled from him, declared to the King, that the Persians were but five hundred furlongs off, and proffered to guide him by a nearer way. Their coming was grateful to the King; for by their Conduct, in the beginning of the night, he took his journey with fuch Horsemen as he had appointed, willing I Foot-Battel to follow after with all speed pollole He marched forwards in a fquare Battel; and kept fuch an order, that the first might joyn with the lall, and fuch as came behinde relieve them that went before.

T

t

n V

-

t

-

-

;

IS

)-

0

1-

W

u

1-

m

it,

ne

re

als

by

ed

ut

ie-

eft

he

rest

when they had passed three hundred suctions on their way, Broculus, the Son of Mazeur, that sometime had been Governour of Syria, met Alexander, and declared, that Bessus was within two hundred surlongs, marching with his men out of all order, as one that did calt no doubts: It seems ed to him (he said) that they went towards Historia; wheretore, it halte were made, they might loon be overtaken, and found dispersed out of all Array. And by reason he affirmed also, that Darius was yet alive, Alexander that was hot before in the portion, was with his words much more quickned towards; so that he caused them to put Spurs to their Horles, and in a gallop followed to sait, that

they might here the noise of their Enemies as they mirched; but the doft that slid rife, obscured their fight; and therefore he flayed a while, till the doft was vanished away: Then both Beffix perceived the Massedons, and they saw the Persians as they fied; notwithstanding, they had not been able to have thatched with them, if Bessis had had as great courage to fight, as he had to betray his Matter: For besides that they exceeded the Massedons in number and power, the Massedons fore-wearied and over-travelled, should have had to do with them that were lusty and fresh: But the Name of Messander, and his Fame, which was of great moment in the Wars, put them in such sear, that they

could not they themselves.

Then Beffer, and others that were Partners in this Conspiraty, came to the Cart where Darius was, and perswaded him to leap on Horseback, and fly from his Enemies that were at hand: But he cryed our, that the gods were come to his revenge; and calling for the affishance of Alexander, said, That in no wife be would go with Traysors: Whereat they were so stirred to wrath, that they threw darts at him, and left him wounded in snany places of his body: They thrust the Beasts into their bodies that drew the Cart, to the intent they should not be able to pass sorwards; and slew his two Servants that did attend upon him. When they had committed this act, they thought it expedient to disperse themselves in their slying; and so Nabarzones took his way to Hircania, and Bessar to Bacters, with a few Horsemen that each of themselves in their strings and seems that in their Company.

Book V. of Alexander the Great.

y

ir

ft

d

y

0

t

n

d

h

of

)-

in

23

k,

ùt

c-

٠,

, ,

ey

a-

to

nt

w

ea

)C-

6

td

emi

nen

When their Souldiers were thus for laken Captains, they were feattered here and th their fear did lead them; There were only hundred Horsemen who assembled themselve gether, and flood in a doubt, whether it were t ter to relift, or to fly. Alexander understanding fear his Enemies were in , fent Nicasor before w part of his Horsemen to keep them on work, he with the rest followed after. There were the to the number of three thousand of such as on their defence, and the rest were driven in floc like bealts, from killing of whom, Alexander o manded his men to abliain. Amongst all the pri foners, there was none that was able to shew the Cart that carried Darius ; for every one was to defirous to finde him, that as they law any Cart, they fought him therein, and yet they could not perceive by any means what was become of him. Alexander made fuch hafte, that fearrely three thouland Horfemen followed him of all his Cavalry; but great numbers of the Perlians fell into their. Laps that followed behinde. It is scarcely to be believed, that there should be more prisoners taken, then there were men to take them: But Fortune in that fear had to taken away their fense, that they could not consider their own multitude, nor the small number of their Enemies. In the mean seaion, the Beatts which drew Darins Waggon, having no man to govern them, were sweeved out the high-way, and wandring here and there, ad drawn Darius four furlongs from the place se he was wounded , into a Valley, where they need, by realon of their heat and their hunts. state of the first of Contra

The Dife and Death " Book V.

there was a Spring at hand, which certain that knew the Country had shewed to Polistratus a Macado, that was overcome with thirst: and while he was drinking the water out of his Helmet; he espect the Beasts that were thrust in with Darts; and marvelling that they were not rather carried away, then hurt after that manner, he looked; and found in the Waggon the body of a man half alive; and at length perceived it was Darius that lay there fore wounded, and drawing his last breath: Then Polistratus brought to him a Persian, whom he had taken prisoners whom when Darius knew by his voice to be of his Country, he said, That he took it for same comfort in his present fortune, that he should speak before he died to one that understood him, and not utter his last words in main.

Herequired him to declare unto Alexander, that shough he had never deserved any thing at his bands, yet it was his chance to die greatly his Debtor; and had thanks to give him, for the favour and coodness that he had shewed towards his Mither, his Wife, and his Children, to whom he had not only granted life, has also the Reverence due to their former Eliate and Dignity; whereas he, of his own Kinsmen and Friends, to whom he had given both Life and Lands, was now by them bereaved of all. He prayed therefore, that he might always be Conquerour; and that the Empire of the while world might come into his hands; requiring that he would not neglect to take revenge of so foul an act, not only for his cause, but for an example, and for the honours of other Princes; which should be a thing worthy of him, and profitable to his Shovesfors in time to come. When

Book V. of Alexander the Great.

when he had spoke these words, he sained and calling for water, after he had drunk find to Foli-stratus that presented it unto him: What sever them art, this is unto me the last misery in all my adverse chance, that I am not able to require this benefit; but Alexander shall reward thee; and the gods shall require him for his great Humanity and Clemency shewed towards mine; unto whom thou shalt give my

bands as a Pledge of a Kings Promife.

ft

1,

15

١,

1-

18

in

dt

B,

nd ess nd

fe,

nd

di.

bat m-

di;

an bich

d his

Having spoken these words, and given Politicatus his hand, he died. When his tayings were ported to Alexander, he repaired where the dead Corpse lay, and with tears lamented, that it was his chance to die a death so unworthy of so great a personage; and taking off his own Cloak to cover the dead body, he adorned the same with all things that pertained to a King, and sent it to his Mother Sissambis, to be buried in such fort as the Country manner was to bury Kings, and to be laid amongst the rest of his Predecessors.

put private the second force of the second s

210 The Life and Death Book VI.

## THE SIXTH BOOK

OF

## OUINTUS CURTIUS.

of the Acts of Alexander the Great, King of Ma-

Lacedemonians and Macedons, with the preparation of both Nations to the Battel that was fought between Antipater, Alexanders Lieutenam in Macedonia, and the Kings of the Lacedemonians.

I E pressed sorwards where the fight was most dangerous, and put the greater part of his Enemies to slight: Then such as were Conquerous before began to sly, till they had drawn their Enemies, greedily following them, out of the streight, into a more plain ground: In the Retreat many of them were slain; but when they had once recovered such a ground where they might stay and fall in order, the Battels joyned equal on both sides. Amongst them all, the King of the Lacedemoniant appeared most notable in all mens eyes, not so

Book VI. of Alexander the Great. 21

much by the beauty of his Armour and fonage, as through the greatness of his co wherein only he could not be overcome. I affailed at on all parts, both near at hand, and far off: Yet for all that, he endured long in Arms against his Enemies, avoiding their strokes, part with his Target, and part with his Body, till fuch time as he was thrust through both Thighs with a Spear, when by great effusion of blood, he wa able any longer to endure the light: Then squites of his body took him up upon his Tan and carried him into their Camp, when with great pain he indured the flirring of his wounds. The Lacedemonians for all their Kings departure, not over the fight; but as foon as they could recover any ground of advantage; they talled themfelves, and received frontly their Enemies that came full upon them. There is not found in any methory, of a Battel more vehemently fought then that where the Armies of two Nations that were most excellent in the Wars, contended together for the Victory , not yet inclining to any part : The Lacedemonians called to minde their Ancient Manhood and Prowefs, and the Macedons confidence their present estimation they had in the wor the Lacedemontant strived for their liberty, and he Macedont for the Soveraignty; the one part acked a Captain , and the other room to fight in. the manifold adventures and chances that fell that encrealed both the hope and fear of both irdess fortune, as it were of surpole, bringing fuch ant men to fight together , neither of them prerailing upon other? But the Aveignments of the place

1-

in

be

bt

la-

oft

his

UTS

ne-

ht

co-

fall

des.

ians

t fo

uch

213 11 The Life and Death. Book VI.

their whole force at once, for more were bebelies, then fighters; and such as flood without
danger, encouraged the others with their ery. At
length the Lacedemonians began to faint, and
featerly able for sweating to sustain their Armour,
begans to draw back, to have the more liberty to
fire from their Enemies that pressed fore upon

hen they were once broken and scattered aad, the Conquerours purfued after, and paffing the place whereupon the Lacedemonians Bat-Acid who feeing his men flying , and his Enemies approach at hand, willed his men to fet him down; where fretching himfelf, to feel if the force of his body could answer unto his heart, when he found himfelf unable to fland, remaining upon his knees, put on his Helmet; and covering his body with Torget, shaked his Spear, and provoked his enemice to draw near, if any were delirous of his fooil; but there was not one that pressed near him, but did cast Dares afar off, which he always took, and threw at his Enemies again, till fuch time as he was thrust into the bare breast with a Spear: But when the fame was pulled out of the wound, he fainted; and bowing himfelf upon his Target, thorsty after fell down dead, blood and life failing both together. There were flain of the Lacedemominus 5340 , and of the Macedonians not above three hundred s but there was scarcely any of them chat escaped unwounded. This Victory not only brage the hearts of the Lacedemonians, and of their Confede

Book VI. of Alexander the Great.

Confederates; but also of others who say it wast.

looking for the success of that Wat.

Antipater was not ignorant how the con ces of fuch as did gratifie his Victory, much from the intents of their hearts: bur defin to finish the Wars that were begun, he perce it necessary for him to diffemble, and fuffer thin to be decrived: And though he rejoyced thuch the Fortune of the Battel, yet he feared the that might enfue thereof, it being a greater ser then the Estate of a Lieutenant did bear. Alexander was of fuch a nature, that he delired Enemies had won the Victory; thewing man ly, that he was not contented with Antipaters good fuccess; thinking that whatsoever chanced to ano ther man, was a derogation to his own glory. Amip gier therefore, who knew full well his Bennek, durst not use the Victory according to his will, be affembled a Councel of Greeks, to advile what they thought expedient : The Lacedemmi we made no other request, but that they might lend Em-bassadours to Alexander, who upon their Address to him, and their suit made, obtained a Ceneral Pardon for all men, faving for fuch as were the Authors of the Rebellion. The Megapolitan. whole City did abide the Siege, were compelled pay, as a Fine for their Rebellion, twenty Talents to the Athenian and the Etolians. This was the end of the War, which being suddenly begun, was ended before Alexander had overthrown Daring at Arbella. As foon as his minde was delivered of those present cares, as one that could be no bener the wars then quietness, he gave himself up to P 3 pleafures,

ove iem

n

es

is

d

5,

th

6-

nis M,

k,

25

But

he

et,

ing

רסנת

de.

The Diffe and Death Book VI;

the vices whereof he was overcome, whom no power of the Persians, or any other, were able to subdue. He was given to banqueting out of teaton, and to a fond delight of drinking, and watching in Plays amongst Flocks of Concubines, that drew him into frange manners and customes; which he following, as things more pleasing then s Country Customes, offended thereby greatly both the eyes and the hearts of his Nation; and used many that loved him before entirely, to hate then as an Enemy: For the Macedone, that vere obstinate in keeping their own Discipline, and unaccustomed to be curious, being so penurious in their Diet as might suffice Nature only, when they law him go about to bring in amongst them the Vices of those Nations which they had subdued, Confinacies began to be made against him . Mutimes drofe amongst the Souldiers, and every one complaining to another, freely uttered their griefs, he was provoked to wrath, to suspition, and ludden fear; Divers other inconveniencies infuing thereupon, which shall be declared hereaf-

Alexander being given, as hath been said before, to unreasonable banqueting, wherein he consumed both day and hight; when he was satisfied with cating and drinking, he passed the rest of the time in Plays and Pastimes: And not contented with such Musitians as he brought out of Greece, caused the Women, that were Captives, to sing before him such Songs as abhorred the ears of the Macedons, not accustomed to such things. Amongs those Women, Alexander espied one more sad then the rests

Book VI. of Alexander the Great.
self, who with a certain themetaeldness did with them that brought her forth : She was of cellent Beauty, and by her Modelly her Beauty was much augmented : And because the did cast her eyes towards the earth, and covered her face to much as the might, the gave fulpition for him to think that the wassdescended of Noble Parentage? And therefore being demanded what the was . It shewed her self to be the Niece of Occhus that lately reigned in Persian and the Wife of Histofie, w was Daring Kinsman, and had been his Lieucena over many great Armies. There yet remained the Kings heart fome small sparks of his former Vertue ; for in respect of her Estate, being descended of the Blood of Kings, and in Reverence he bare to fuch a Name as the Nicce of October, he commanded her not only to be fet free, but allo to be reflored to her Goods, and her Husband, whom he willed to be fought out.

The next day he appointed Ephission to bring all the prisoners to the Court, where inquiring of the Nobility of every one, he commanded them who were descended of Noble Blood, to be severed from the rest; amongst whom they sound Oxatres. Brother to Darius; that was no less Noble of minde then of blood: There were made of the last spoil twenty six thousand Talents, whereof swelves thousand were consumed in rewards amongst the Men of War; and the sum amounted to no less value, that was conveyed away by them that had the keeping thereof. There was one Oxidates. 2 Noable-man of Persia, that was imprisoned by Darius, and appointed to suffer death, whom Alexander delivered,

2.

ed

th

ne

ith

fed

im,

ofe

the rest.

delivered and gave unto him the Seignory of Media, and received Darins Brother amongst the number of his Friends, referving to him all the accurate the Country of Parthenia, being then but obscure and unknown, but now the Head of all those Countries which lye upon Tygric and Emphrater, and bounded with the Red Sea. This Country

being fruitful and abundant in all things; was conquered by the Seythians; who possessing part of Atic and Europe, are troublesome Neighbours to them

both.

The Scythians, who inhabit upon the Bofpberon a pare aftribed to be in Afia; and fuch as be in Europe, policis the Countries lying on the left part Thrace, so far as Borifthenes; and from thence ight forth, to far as the River Thanais, that parteth Europe and Affa. It is certain, that the Seythians of whom the Persians be descended a came not from Rospheron, but out of Europe. There was a Noble City, in those days called Hecatompbilos, builded by the Greeks; where Alexander remained with his Army, conveying Victuals thicher from all parts. Among the Souldiers lying in idleness, there arose suddenly a rumour, which entred into their heads without any certain Author or beginning, which was, that Alexander fatisfied with the Acts he had done, purposed immediately to seturn into Macebut that they ran like mad-men to their lodgings, and truffed up their Baggage and their Stuff, majudged warning to be given to remove, and that S. Borrani Jo the

Book VI. of Alexander th the thing had been done by appointment.
mult that did rife in the Camp by lading age, and by the calling which one made ther, came unto the Kings ears. This rumour tained the sooner credit; by the dispatch of cer Greek Souldiers, whom Alexander had dismi into their Country, with the gift of fix thous Deviers to every Horieman: Thereupon ou was given to think that the War had been at an Alexander, whose purpose was to pass into I and the uttermost bounds of the Orient , was less displeased at this rumour then the case require And therefore calling before him the Captains his Army, with the tears in his eyes, he made great complaint unto them, that in the mide course of his glory he should thus be pulled back and compelled to return into his Country, rather as a man vanquilhed, then as a Victor a Which miffortune, he faid , he could not impure to his Soul. diers, nor judge that their cowardliness did give an impediment to his proceedings; but that it was only the envy of the gods that put fo fudden a defire of their Country into the mindes of valiant men, who within a while should have returned with greater glory and fame. Thereupon they all promised to travel in Reformation of the mass offering themselves in all things (were they never so difficult) to do as he would have them: And they promised also the obedience of the Souldiers, if so be that he would make some gentle and aprioration to pacific them, who were never yet feen to depart from him in any desperation or disturbance of minde, if they once beheld the chearfulness

ł

n t of his Countenance, and the courage proceeding from his heat. He promited to to do, and required in the multitude an inclination to give ear unto him. When all things were prepared which were thought expedient for this purpole, he aftembled all his Army together, and made this Oration unto

them:

When ye confider (my Souldiers) the greatness of the Alls which ye have done, and the manifold Conthe bat ye have made, it is no marvel at all that ye inclined to quietness, and fully satisfied with Fame of Glory: For not to Speak of the Illyrians and tibals, of Boetia, Thracia, and Sparra, of the Achains and Peloponnefians, whom I have fubdued , part in person, and the rest by appointment; I will not make rehearful of the War we began at Hellespont, and bom we delivered from servitude the Barmas Nations, the lonians and Molides, and got office Caria, Lydia, Cappadocia, Phrygia, Paphlagonia, Pamphilia, Pytidia, Celicia, Syria, Phenicia, Armenia, Perlia, Media, and Parthenia. We have gotten more Countries, then others have tahen Cities; and yet (I am fure) the number of them have cansed me to leave some of them unrehearsed. If I could think that the possession of these Lands that we have conquered in so short time could remain sine untous, then (my Souldiers) I would, though it were against your wills, break from you to visit my bouse and my home, to see my Mother, my Sisters, and my Country-men, to enjoy there the Land and Glory shat I have gatten with you; where the joyful Conversation of one Wives, our Children and Parents, our peace and quierness, and a fure possifion of things gotten through

e valuer, do tarry for as , as thory. But if we will confide the to Empire which we have not yet as Command is kept just it were, by way of intrenty, dother time that this stiff-necked people may leave to be yoke's and by framing their dispositions to more H uity, bring their cruel nature to a more civil con tion. Do we not see that the Carnin the field stime for its ripening; and though the fame be out fenfe ; yet bath it its courfe to be brought ! fellion ? Do you believe that fo many Nations greeing with us in Religion, in Custom, now in on of Language, acceptomed to the Empire and Name another man, will be conquered and brought to f jetion with the winning of one Battel? No truly shey are hypt under with fear of our Power, and do oney us of their own good wills; And they which the you abedience when ye he here amongs them, when be absent will be your Burmies : Tou worth you have so do with wilde Beafir, which being of Nature when they be first taken, must be st and tamed by time. Hitherto I have reasoned with you as though we had conquered the whole Dominion tha persained to Darius, which is nothing for for Nabarzanes possesset Hircania, and the Traytor B thus only enjoyeth Bactria, but also threatnesh in. The Sogdians, Dahans, Massagetes, Sagans, and the Indians, remain yet in their own Liberry and Jury on, who finall not fee our backs for foon surned ; be they wall follow in our Roar : They all bave a certain. Friendship, and Amity one routh another, but we are all Strangers and Forecigners umo them: There is Greater but ibat will more gladly be abedien to Bu-

lere

of his own Marion, then to Forreigners, be their necessary never fo terrible. We are driven therefore hat we have already gained : As Physitians , that in sch bodies will leave no bumour that may burt, so there so must cut away what sever shall be an im-rediment unto our Empire: Have you not seen great ner so arife from Small sparks not regarded? We may no negled any thing in our Enemies, whom the more more despite, the more strong we make them. And besufe you foould not think it fueb an impossibility for esses to make bimself King, where a King is wantmpire by Inducates, but got into the Seat of Cyrus being the banefit of Bagoas bis Ennucle. We commit an beingus offence (ney Souldiers) if we make war against Darius, and put him down, for the intent to give his Congdom unto his servanes ; yea, and so such a one a stempted so vile an act against his Master, at such a time as he had most need of help; and whom we being bis Enemies , would have spared : He being bis subject, pur bim in chains as a Captive, and finally bim, because be should not be preserved by us: Shall you suffer such a man as this to reign? No, let as make all the speed we may to see him crucified, and to shew unto all Kings and Nations a Justice done upon one that so vilely falsified his faith. If the report should come unto you in your own Countries, that the fame man was destroying of the Greek Cities about Hel-lespont, how forry would you then be, and how much would you lament that Bellias should enjoy that which you have got, and usurp the remards of your Victory? hen would you make baste to recover your own; then mould

Book VI. of Alex would you bend your selves to the much better is it most to appress bine to eth in fuch fear, and is uncertain what w Shall me forbear to Spend four days to conthat have marched over fuch Snows, that ha many Rivers, that have climbed formany M whose journey the soming Sea could be no impensor the Streights of Cilicia could fout up on Now all things are made plain and open, and w in the entry of our Victory: There are but a fe gitives and Killers of their Master that d What more notable work can you leave unto yo Herity, to be registred by Eame unto your glory, to revenge such as were Traytors to Darius? Tou shereby shew, that when you were Enemies unto yet your harred ended with bis death, and t wicked man can escape, your bands: Which you bring to pass, how much more obedient do you she Pertians will be unto you, when they perce to take just Wars in band; and that is was not Bellius name whereat ye are offended, but with b fees and treacheries?

His Oration was received of the Souldiers with such gladness, that they straightways desire him to lead them whither he would: And he that knew well enough how to make use of this opportunity, immediately advanced, into Parthema, and came to the bounds of Hiroania, leaving Crateria with those Regiments whereof he had the Rule and fix thousand Horsemen, of whom Amintus had the charge, with the like number of Archers, to defend the proposited trian the incursion of the birbarous that the sons. He appointed Erigenne, with a small power, to

GEST and Death Book V thend upon his Carriages; willing him to pass with them through the plain Country, and he Borlemen , impressed forwards a bundred and fifty furlones, and incamped in a Valley at the entry into Birconia. In the fame place are great woods full of high and thick Trees, and the bortom of the Valley is very fruitful, by realon of the Springs that come forth of the Rocks. Out of the foot of the Mountains there arifeth a River called Ziebern, which within three furlongs of the head, is divided by a Rock flanding in the midft of the Stream, caufing the water to go two fundry ways, which afterwards coming into one Channel runneth more violently then before, by reafor of the fall from the Rocks: And Juddenly it linkerh into the ground, and to numeth hielden, by the space of three hundred furlongs, and then cometh forth again, as it were, out of a new Spring, being then in bredth thirteen furlongs, and as it runneth forwards. groweth more narrow, and falleth into another ftream; named Rhydago. The Inhabitants of the Country affirm, that any thing cast in where the Stream finks into the ground, will appear and come out at the next Mouth of the River. For the proving of which conclusion; Alexander caused two Bulls to be cast in, where the water lank down whole bodies were found by fuch as were appointed for the purpose, to appear where the Stream brake out again. In this place he refreshed his Army four days, during which time Nabarzanes ( who as Confederate with Beller in killing of the King. the write Patricia to the Aries of

Book VIL OF ALE

How that he was no Enemy to Darius, be felled him ever to do finch things as he judged fitable; and for his faithful compet, was put ger of bis life by him; who against all weafou was ed to commit the custody of his person to Ser condemning thereby the sidelity of his own? which they had kept unsported towards their Kings space of two bundred and thirty years: Therefore ing himself in that danger , he sook counsel of the Jens necessity, and alledged, that nothing was dear to miferable Mortality then life, for the le whereof he was driven to this extremity, in commi then his own disposition: For in a general Calamie every man seeks after his own Fortune. If he wond command him to come to his presence, he faid, he would not refuse to do it i for be could not fear that so great Ring would violate his promise, seeing one god is a afed to decrive snobber. But if he should seem a miby of his affinance, there were many Countries for him to fly unto a far all ment having vertee in them. met always that for their Country where they make

t

e 1 1

t

C d

C

d

ide You

distander made no flay to give him his word after fuch for as the Person used to receive promile, which was, fately to come and go ; Notithflanding he marched in order of Battel, Cen g ever Soouts before to discover the Countries light armed were appointed to the Vaw Philage followed after, and the Baside: For by reason they were a quantities the Country, hard to enterupou, it is ng to be cucumficed. 1732 fame Valley for

eth to the Caspian Sea, the Bankling the Horns of the Moon; belief full, the Sea lying betwick to Bay alpon the left hand the people called Cerceter; which lye of Morth; and upon the other past Moffines; and Chaliber; and the magnetely expowerds the West.

The Sea, which some call the fome the Hircanian, being there ther bringeth forth Serpents of nels, and Filhes differing in colour There be divers of opinion; hould run into this Sea, w dure by the water, thinking the fa freezness of the Lake. Towards groweth into a Beach, and shoote re for upon the Land, which re many Means and Plathes, And nels of the Planets they flow ou by an Ebb, they return age ground to its former effates So waters to be no parcel of the Caff they come out of Bidia, and in which heth low in the forelaid V

The Lingbeing removed from ad forwards twenty furlongs in where great woods hung continueds, and Brooks of water, a great impediment to their journe, without any opposition of his lattice difficulties, and came unto wherein, besides other victuals, (w

Banks thereof refemn, before it cometh to wixt them like a great ne people inhabit, that lye open towards the part the Lincofrians, and the Plains of the A-

il the Caspian Sea, and more fweet then any oits of a wonderful bigcolour much from all the inion, that the Lake of Sea, which they conjethe fame to receive its wards the North the Sea shooteth forth his wathich riling high ; make And as by a contrant low out, so at a certain urn again, restoring the ite: Some believe these he Caspian Sea, but that and run into Elitaria; faid Valley . For Talls

I from that place, matchings in a wilder Defact,
g continually over their
ter, and the dirt, gave
journey. But at length,
his Boundes, his paffed
net unto (a) the Country of
its (wherewich it did abound)

bound) there grew great plenty of Apple the ground was very apt for Vines. There also plenty of a certain kinde of Trees much like unto Oaks, whose leaves were covered with honor, which the Inhabitants gather before the Sun-riling for else the moisture would be dried up with the heat.

When Alexander had cassed thirty surlongs for ther, Phrataphernes met him, yellding both him self and such others as sted away after Darins doubt whom he received gently, and came to a Town called Arnas; Thither came Craserus and Erigonal bringing with them Phradates, that had the sule of the Tapurians; his stendly receiving and gentle entertainment, was cause that many followed his example, in committing themselves to Alexanders Mercy, Menape was there made Prince of Hircania, who being a bandshed man in the sine of Ocebus, came to King Philip for Lenge, and thradates also was restored to the Office he had belone

When Alexander was come to the uttermost bounds of Hircania, Artabasus, whom as we declared, did shew himself always faithful to his Masser, did meet him with Darias Kinsmen and Children, and with a small Band of Greek Souldiers. The sing at his coming proffered him his hand, beaute he had been entertained before by King Bister, when he was bandshed by Occhis. But the chief cause that he received him so well, was for the fidelity that he observed towards his Prince, he being thus gently entertained by Alexander, did say unto him; Sir, long may you slowest and

The Life and Death Book VI.

reign in perpetual felicity: I that rejoyce in all other things, am grieved only at this, that by reason of mine old age I shall not be able long to enjoy your brought with him nine Sons born of one Mother, whom he presented to the King; praying God to continue their lives, so long as their service might

Alexander was accultomed much to walk on foots but then left the old man might be ashamed to nide, himself going on foot, he called for Horses for them both. When he was incamped, he fent for the Greeks that Artabafus brought; but they made request, that he would first give assurance to the Lacedemonians that were amongh them, of elle they would take advice amongst themselves, what were belt to do : The lame were the Embalfadours that the Lacedemonians had fent to Darius, after the Battel, joyned themselves to the Greeks that were in pay with Darius. The King willed them to leave all affurances and compositions, and come to receive such appointment as he would give them: They stood long in a doubt, va ying in opinions; but at length they agreed so todo, saving Democrates of Athens, who had always opposed the fuccess of the Macedons, and despairing of pardon slew himself: But the other, as they had determined; submitted themselves to Alexanders will being ten thousand five hundred in number, belides ninery of such as were sent Em-bissadours unto Darius. The greatest part of the Souldiers were distributed amongst the Bands to fill up the numbers that wanted; and the reli were

Book VI. of Alexander the Great, 227

fent home, except the Lacedemonians, whom he

commanded to be put in prison.

C

There was a Nation called Mardons, bounding next to Hireania, rude in their manners and plages, accustomed to live by theft: They neither fent Embassadours, nor gave any signification that they would be at Alexanders Commandment: He took thereat great indignation, that any one people should give impediment to his Victory; and therefore leaving a Guard for his Carriages, he advanced against them with a strong power. He marched forwards in the night; and by the time that the day appeared, his Enemies were in light. But the matter came rather to an Alarm, then to any fight; for the Enemies were foon driven from the Hills, who flying away, left their Villages to be facked by the Macedons ? But the Army could not pals into the inward pires of the Country without great trouble and v. xation; the fame being compaffed about with high Mountains, great Woods. and defart Rocks; and the parts which were plain, were defended with a strange kinde of fortification, that is to say, with Trees set thick of purpose the Boughs whereof, when they were young, were wreathed one within another; the tops bowed down were put into the ground again, from whence, as out of another root, there forung new branches. They would not fuffer the fame to grow as Nature brought them forth, but did knit them to one withmanother, that when they were full of leaves they covered the earth. The Trees thus wreathed one within another, inclosed in the Country, as it were, with a continual hedge, and were as inares to intangle

condbe devited to go through the same; but only by cutting down the wood; and therein they
found a great difficulty, and much travel, by reafour that the wreathing and wrapping of the Boughs
kept them off from the bodies of the Trees; and the
weakness of the Boughs so yeilded to the strokes,

that they could not eatily be cut afunder.

The Inhabitants of the Country were accustonied to creep amongst the under wood like wilde Beafts; and by privy Sallies break out upon their Enemies. Alexander therefore caused his men, after the manner of Hunters, to feek out their lurking places; and killed many of them. But at length he invironed the Wood with his Souldiers round about, to the intent they might break in at every place, where they thould finde an entry : In doing whereof, many wandted and loft their company in places that they knew not, and were taken philoners, and amongst them Bucephalus, Alexanders Horse, whom he did not esteem as other men do other Bealts, for this Horfe would not fuffer any other man to back him: and when the King would ride! he would kneel down upon his knees to receive him; fo that he feemed to have the fenfe to understand whom he carried. Alexander was more forrowful and incenfed for the lofs of his Horle, then was expedient for fuch a cause : for fearthing about to get the Hotle again, he caused Proclamation to be made by an Interpreter, that except he were reffored, he would not kave one of the Country-men-alive. When they heard this terrible threating, amongst other giles, they presented Magnet.

noto Alexander his Horle: Yet he was not there with pacified, but commanded the Woods to be cut down, and the ways to be levelled which he cut through the Woods. This work went fo well forward, that the Inhabitants despairing of ability to defend their Country, yeilded themselves to the King, who receiving their Pledges, committed them to the keeping of Pbradates; and from themselves the fifth day, he returned again to his Camp. There he gave to Arrabasius the double honour that Darius did unto him, and sent him home again into his Country.

After that he came to the City of Hircania, where Darins Chief Seat was; Nabarzanes: upon affurance, came thirther, bringing with him great gifts; and amongst the rest, presented unto Alexander an Euguen called Bagoas, of lingular Beauty, being in the fift flower of his Youth, whom Darius used, and afterwards Alexander, at whose intercellion especially he did pardon Nabarzanes. The Nation of the Amazons being near unto Hircania (as hath been faid before ) did inhabit the Plans of Themyscire, about the River of Thermodoon, and had a Queen reigning over them, called Thalefring which kept under her Dominion all the Countries between Mount Cancasus, and the River of Phasiste She for the great affection the had to fee Alexander, travelled out of her own Country; and being come near where he was, fent certain before, to declare that a Queen was come of defire to visit him, and to enjoy the private familiarity of his company. When liberty was given her to come to his presence, she caused all the rest of her Band to

to

re

le,

ng

a-

he

m-

ble

ted

nto

Q.3,

flay,

av, and the came forwards, attended only by three hundred women. As foon as the perceived Alexander, the leaped from her Horse, carrying two favelins in her hand. The Amazons apparel is fuch, that it doth not cover all their bodies; for their breaks, are bare on the left fide, and their garments, which they ale to knit up with a knot, come not to their knees: One Breast they always referve untouched, wherewith they nourilh their Women-Children; but their right Breafts they use to fear, to make them more apt to draw their Bows, and cast their Darts. Thalestris looked upon Alexander with a bold countenance; and observed in her beholding of him, that his personage answered not to the Fame that she had heard of his Acts; for the Barbarous Nations gave great Veneration to the Majesty of the Personage, thinking none to be fufficient for the doing of great Acts, but fuch as Nature had indued with great personages: It was demanded of her, if the had any request to make unto Alexander: Whereat the abathed not to confess, that the was come thither to have Children by him, thinking her felf a personage worthy of whom he should get Heirs to inherit his Kingdom: wherein the covenanted, that if it were a Woman, the would keep it still; and it it were a Man-Childe, the would reftore it to the Father. Alexander enquired of her, if the would go forwards with him in his Wars: But therein the excused her felf; that she had left no order for the defence of her Kingdom. But the continued still in declaration of the cause of her coming, and required that her expectation therein might not be in vain. The Womans Book VI. of Alexander the Great, 291

Womans Appetite feemed to be more vehemently given to Luft then the Kings was a yet the obtained of him to stay for that cause, and he consumed thus

teen days in fatisfying her defire.

a

ds

er

of

a-

he

ns

That done, the departed to her own Kingdom and Alexander marched into Parthenia, which was the place where he first thewed manifestly the Vices that were in him. There he turned his Continency and Moderation, being the most excellent Vertues appearing in any kinde of Ettate, into Pride and Voluptuousness; not effecting his Country-Cufloms, por the wholefome temper that was in the Discipline of the Kings of Macedon: For he judged their civil usage and manner to be over-base for his greatness; but did counterfeit the height and pomp of the Kings of Persta, representing the greatness of the gods. He was content to fuller men there to fall down flat upon the ground, and worthin him; and accustomed the Conquerous of to many Nations, by little and little, to servile offices, covering to make them like unto his Captives. He ware upon his Head a Diadem of Purple, interpiled with white, like as Darine was accultomed; and fash oned his Apparel after the manner of the Perfianc, without scrupulosity of any token that it signified, for the Conquerour to change his Habit into the fathion of him whom he had vauquished: And though he boalted that he wore the spoils of his Lucinies, yet with those spoils he put upon him their evil manners, and the infolency of the mir de followed the pride of the Apparel. Belides, although he fealed fuch Letters as he fent into Europe with his accustomed Seal; yet all the Letters he fair abroad Q4

abroad into Asia were scaled with Darius Ring. So it appeared, that one minde could not bear the greatness that appearained to two. He apparelled also his Friends, his Captains, and his Horsemen in Persian apparel; whereat though they grudged in their mindes; yet they durst not refuse it for sear of

his displeasure. His Court was replenished with Concubines; for he still maintained three hundred and likey that belonged to Darius; and amongst them were Flocks of Eunuchs, accustomed to per-

form the natural ule of Women.

A-1070A

The old Souldiers of Philip naturally abhorring fuch things, manifeltly withstood to be infected with such voluptuousness and strange Customes: Whereupon there rose a general talk and opinion throughout the Camp, that they had loft more by the Victory, then they had won by the War: For when they faw themselves overcome with such excels, and Forreign Customs so to prevail amongst them, they judged it a flender reward of their long being abroad, to return home in the habit of Priloners. They began to be ashamed of their King, that was more like to fuch as were subdued, then to them that were Victorious; and that the King of Macedon was become the Prince of Perfia, and one of Darius Courtiers. When he understood that the chief of his friends, and his men of War were much offended at his doings, he went about to recover favour again with gifts and liberality ? but the rewards of servitude are ungrateful to free men : And therefore left it might turn into a fedition, he thought good to break the imaginations increased by idleness, with the exercise of War, whereof

## Book VI. of Alexander the Great. 3

d

G

d

:

n

or

K-

ft

of

in

d,

he

as

od.

ar

1.3

ree

lis

ns

ar,

whereof an apt occasion was given : Bellier in ing himself as a King, took upon him the name of Antaxences darawing to his part the South and others that were the Inhabitants of the R Thanais; which things were reported to him b Nabarzanes, whom he had received into his f and given the Rule of the Country he had When he had determined this new Expedition found his Army fo over-charged and lade Spoil, and other Furniments of Voluptuon that they could scarcely move: Wherefore he manded the Baggage and Stuff of the whole from to be brought together into one place, excepting only fuch things as were very necessary: The place was large and plain to which the Carts were brought laden; and when every one flood waiting and musing what he would command them to do, he caused the Beasis to be removed first out of the way, and then let his own Fardels on tire, and after, all the reft. Whileft these things were berning, the Owners were on fire themselves to fee them to confurred; for the faving of which, they had often quenched the flames in the Cities of their Enemics : Yet no man durst lament the price of his own blood feeing they faw the fire confirme the Kings Richesas well as their own; and the rather to pacific them, the King did mitigate their dolour with a brief Oration. Whereupon they that were ever apt for the Wars, and ready to do all things, began to be joyful, that with the lols of their Baggage, they had preferved their Discipline accustomed in the Wars. As they were fetting forward towards Badtria, Nicanor, the Son of Parments, died 34 The Life and Death Book VI.

died suddenly, whom every man greatly lamerelayed to celebrate his Funeral, but that want of Victuals caused him to halte forward: Philotas therefore was lest behinde with two thousand six hundred Souldiers, to perform the Ceremonies appertaining to his Brothers Funeral, and Alexander imfelf marched towards Beffus. In the way, Letters were brought to Alexander from the Princes thereabout, that Beffin was coming towards him with a great Army; adding thereunto, that Sarriwas newly rebelled s for that cause ( mot with standing he was come near unto Reffer ) he thought it belt full to oppiels Satribarzanes : and for that intent, he brought forwards his Horfemen and Footmen that were light armed, to invade him suddenly, His coming was not so privy, but Satribarzanes. knew thereof, and fled into Baliria with two thoufand Horsemen: for by reason he was not able to affemble any more in so short a time, the rest took the next Mountains for their refuge.

There was a Rock, which towards the West, was high and steep, but rowards the East more low, and calle to be climbed; which part was full of Trees: The same Rock being in compass two and thirty furlongs, had a Fountain running continually, and in the top a Green Plain, where they placed the weaker multitude; but the rest that were apt for defence, being to the number of thirteen thousand, got themselves to the edges of the Rock, and there show down stones and logs upon the Macadom that came to assail them. He left Croserus to besiege

Book VI. of Alexander the Great. 239

fiege the Rock, and went in perion to purioe eriberganes; and because he understood that h was fled far off, he returned back again to the t of them that were upon the Rock. First, he can all things to be taken away, that might be an impediment to his men in the affault giving : But when they came to the bare and ficep Rock, the labour seemed lost, where Nature wrought against them. But he, that was of a disposition always to ffrive against difficulties, considering how hard matter it was to go forward, and how dangerou to return back, did east in his head all the ways thing, and then another, as men are wont when the ways they have found out first do not plate them. As he flood in a doubt what to do Fortune did minister unto him a means, which neither wit nor reason could insent: It chanced that the winde blew vehemently at the South West, at what time the Souldiers had telled great plenty of wood, whereof they thought to have made Scaffolds to mount up against the Rock, and the heat of the Sun had made the fame dry. When Alexander perceived the winde to blow so violently, and the wood lying in that place, he immediately commanded more Trees to be cut down, and laid upon them, putting all other things to it that were apt to kindle and nourish fire; so that Trees heaped upon Trees, became as a Mountain fo high as the top of the Rock: The fame being fet on thre in all parts at once, the winde carried the flame into the faces of their finemics, and the smooth covered the Sky. The noise was then great that the fire made; which

which burned not only the Trees that were fired of purpole, but also the rest of the Wood growing near thereshops.

The Enemies were to tormented with the flame and heat of the fire, that they were inforced to tortake their place of strength, and attempted to escape away where the fire did give them least impediment: But where the fire gave place, the Macedons stood in a readiness to receive them; so that they were confurmed and slain divers kinde of ways: Some threw themselves down the Rocks, some ran into the midst of the fire, others fell into the hands of their Enemies, and a few half consumed with fire, were taken prisoners. When Alexander had done this, he returned to Craterus, who besieged Arracian; and having prepared all things in readiness, tarried only for the Kings coming, to give him the honour of winning the City.

When Alexander was come, he approached the Walls with the Towers of Timber that he had prepared for the affault; at the fight whereof the Inhabitants were fo afraid, that they held up their hands from the Walls, requiring him to spare them, and execute his wrath upon Samibarzanes, who was the Author of their Rebellion. Alexander pardoned them freely; and not only raised the Siege, but also restored to the Inhabitants all things that pertained to them. As he removed from this City, there came to him a new supply of Souldiers: Zailas brought out of Greece five hundred Horsemen, and three thousand Antiparer sent out of Illyria. There came a hundred and thirty Thessalian Horsemen with Philip, who also brought forreign-

Book VI. of Alexander the Great as ers out of Licia, two thouland five hundred Foo men, and three hundred Horlemen. Alexander h ving thus increased his power, entred into Country of the Dragani, who were a warlike Nation, under the Government of Nabarzones, who was of Countel with Beffai in the Treaton that he committed against his Prince. When he heard of Alexanders coming, for fear of the punishment he had deferved, he fled into India. Here had they lain incamped nine days, when Alexander being without fear of any Enemy, and invincible against all Forreign Powers, was brought in peril by realon of his own people! It chanced that one Dimnus, a man of mean behaviour and Authority with his Prince, was greatly inflamed with the love of a young man, called Nichomachus, with whom he used much familiar convertation. This Dimnus on a time being in a pallion (as it well appeared by his countenance) allured this young man into a Temple, where remaining together, he declared, that he had certain Secrets to thew him. which in no wife were to be reported again Thereby he brought Nichomachus into a great fulpition what the matter should be; for before he would tell him, he made a Protestation by the love and familiarity betwirt them, that he would affure him by his Oath to keep the thing fectet; who suppofing the matter to be of no such weight, that he ought with Perjury, or breaking of his Oath, to difclose the same again, did swear by the gods there present. Then Dimmu opened unto him, how there was a Treasun conspired against the King. which within three days should be put in executi-

on, to which ( he faid ) he himfelf was private. with divers men of Nobility and Ethination. When Niebomachus did hear it, and found it to be of fuch moment, he constantly denied then that this promile extended to conceal Treason, whereunto no Oath nor Religion could binde a man; which when Dimnus observed, he became on a rage betwixt love and fear, and clasped the young man by the nand, requiring with weeping eyes, that he would not flick to be a parraker of this Conspiracy; or at the least, if his heart would not serve him, that he would keep the countel fecret a in respect that he had found such a manifestation of love in him, as to commit his life into his hands, without any further proof of his fidelity. But in conclution, when he perceived that Nichomachus would in no wife agree to his purpole, but manifestly abhorred the act, he used divers means to draw him to his intent; one while intreating him with fair words, and another while threatning to kill him, calling him Coward, and Traytor to his Friend, commending the Gallantness of the Enterprise, and put him in hope of great preferment, that he should be partaker of the Kingdom which they went about to purchase. When he had proved all these ways, and yer he found him averse, one while he thrust his Sword to Nichomachus throat, and another while to his own; To that at length, by threatning, and fair speaking, he brought him to promise, both to keep his countel fecret, and also to be affiftant to the deed. Yet nevertheless, as one of a constant minde (though for the time present he seemed to be won with the love of his Friend, and agreeable to his

Book VI. of Alexander the Great, 2 his requests ) he changed no part of his form

purpose. This done, Nichamachur required know what the men were that had confederated themselves in so weighty a matter, because the perfons (he faid) were much material that should take

so great an Enterprize in hand.

n

h

0

n

t

d

t

e

S -

n

e

. 5,

n æ

ıt

ft

ď

50 1

at a**s** 

00 to nis

Then Dimmer, though he were in great too of minde that he had brought the matter to far forth; yet when he heard him ask the question rejoyced, and thanked him greatly, that he would fo freely affociate himfelf with fuch manner of men as Demetring of the Privy Chamber, Peculiar, Mi canor, Aphabetus, Locens, Diocenus, Archipolis, and Aminuas. This communication once ended be twixt them, Nichomachus departed, and difelefed all which he had heard before, to a Brother of his called Ceballions, agreeing betwint them two that Nichowachus should remain still feeret in his Pent. left by his coming to the Kings lodging, not while to have accels to the Ring, the Conspirators might perceive themselves betrayed. Ceballinge repaired to the Kings lodging, tarrying before the gate waiting for forme man near about the King to beit him to his Prefence. It fortuned, that among many which passed by, only Philoson, the Son of Par-Cepallinus, with a bathful countenance, (well declaring the unquietness of his minde ) reported all which he had heard of his Brother, requiring the be would declare the fame immediately to the King.

Philotas departed from him unto the King. with whom that day he had much communication on other things, and yet opened no part of the white

ato The Life and Death Book VI.

was told him by Ceballimes. At night, as Philotase game forth, Ceballimes met him at the Court-gate, and required whether he had done his Message to the King or not: He excused the matter, that he could not him at leisure. The next day Ceballimes met him again going to the King, and me him in remembrance of that he had told him before; to whom he answered, that he remembred it will, wer for all that he disclosed no part of it unto the King. Ceballimes then began to suspect him, and intended no longer to deter the thing, but opposed the same to Merron, Master of the Kings Armory, who immediately conveyed Ceballimes into the Armory, and repaired streight to the King, who was bothing, and informed him of all that he had

of his Guard to take Diminus, and after came himfelf into the Armory. As foon as Expalianes law
the King, he ran unto him with great rejoying,
and faid; Lo, I bove preferved thee from the hands of
this Enemies. Alexander examined him of all the
circumstances, and he again answered to every
point in order. The King was extuell to know
how long it was fince Niehomachus had given him
this information, and he confessed, that it was three
days. Whereupon the King considering, that in
truth he could not have concealed it so long, commanded that he should be put in Ward. Then cryed he out and declared, that at the same instant
when he knew of the Compiracy first, he opened it
to Philosope, of whom (he said) he might enquire
the truth. Thereupon it was demanded of him,

Book W. A. of Alexander the Creat Cap whether he had required of Philars to being to the Kings Presence, or not. Which thing when that he did fifly maintain what he faid, he lifted up his hands to heaven, the cears falling from his ryes, greatly complaining, that Philoton should requite him with fuch unfaithfulnels, whom he most of all trufted. Dimmu, in the mean featon, knowing for what cause he was sent for wounded him felt to death but yet fornewhat hindred by their that were lent to take him, he was brought allow before the King , whom as food as he beheld de faid unto him , Dimnus, What have I offended the that their shouldest think Philotus more worthough King of Macedon then L. At which words Dimins became speechles; and cathing forth a great figh; curned his face from the Kings fight, and fell down whom Printer was the advised but No. wheel

as

te,

he

end

m

ed

ito

m,

0-

7-

ità

ho

ad

im

m-

w

ıg,

of

he erv

ow

rec in

m

ry-

ant

dit

mre

im, ther The King called Philotas before him, and faid a Ibis man; whom then here feel hould have for fired death, if is could have been proved that he had concealed and days the Treafon intended against me, with which he hathershanged thee. Philotas is to whom (as he faith) he gave knowledge immediately thereof: The more near whom any about me of much more greater is the offence; and the faute had been more collerable in him thanks there is Howbell, thou had a favourable Judge wifers if there is very thing that cannot be excepted, species the leaft is many the pardonest.

To this Philoras nothing abalked (if the heart may be judged by the countenance) made answer, That Geballinus indeed brought him a voice Report.

S

242 The Life and Death Book VI.

the Reporter subereof man over-light of credit to be believed, and that be feared, left by the presenting of fuch a matter which did rife upon a Brabble bemixt two perfort of evil disposition, he might himfelf have been laught at to forn : But aftermards. when he once knew that Diracus had flein himfelf, be mas clearly then refolved no longer to have concealed the thing. And fo falling down before the King. befought him that he would rather have refrect to his lite path, then to his fault, which was only a concealment, and no act done. It is hard to fay, whether the King believed him, on grounded his displensure more deeply in his heart su Nevertheles, in token of pardon he gave him his, hand, faying, how it appeared shut the Accusorian reasonather milefredited by him, then concealed of malice. Not withwhom Philotas was not admitted, but Nichomachus was brought in before them; where he declared all fuch matters as he before had shewed unto the King. There was one Craserus, ar that sime in especial fa--your with Alexander, who for the cony he had to Philoras advancement did bear him always a guidge. He know very well that the King had often been dilpleased with Philotas for the over-much advancing of his good fervice, and valuet Acts: But vertionall than be was not fulpe fred of Treafon, but only noted of presumption and arrogatey. . Cray serve thought that he could not have a better occafrom to oppress his Enemy, then by colouring his printate hatred with a pretence of duty towards his may be indeed by the countrience I make solite. I would to God (quoth he) you had taken our coul-

(el

Book VI. of Alexander the Great. 243 fel in the beginning of this business, for if you would needs have pardoned him, you should have kept from him his knowledge how much be was in danger, rather then have brought him in fear of his life; whereby you shall make him more mindful, of his own peril, then of your goodness; for he may, always imagine your death, but you shall not be always in a condition to pardon him. Let it never sink into your heart, that

be who purposed so beinous a Treason; would change his purpose for the indulgence of a Pardon. Tou know well, that such as offend are often in despair of mercy; and though he perchance, either with repentance of his fault, or remembrance of your goodness; would change his minde; yet I am sure, that his Father Parmento, Captain-General of so great an Army, and of so grounded Authority amongst your Souldiers (and who is with them in manner as your self) would be ill content to be in your debt for his Sons life. There are certain benefits hateful to men, and it is a shame to consess to have desceved death: Therefore I con-

clude, that be had rather it should be thought you had done him wrong, then that you had given him his life. I cannot see therefore, but you shall be inferced to destroy them for your own surety: There are Enc-mies enough remaining, yet unconquered, against whom we are going; make your self sure from your Foes at home; so shall ye have less need to fear your Enemies

abroad.

be

me

be-

m-

ds.

be

led

ng,

to

Y 12

ay,

his

eß,

ng,

ils-

ith-

nest

bus

all

ing.

ta-

to

ys .a

of-

auch

Cts:

fon,

CAN-

CC8-

his

s his

SIL

court-

[el

These were Craterus words; and the residue of the Councel were of opinion, that Philatas would never have conceased this Conspiracy, except he had been either Principal, or privy theseunto: For they thought there was no true man, or honest

R 2

heart,

heart, though he had been none of the Kings Famihars, hearing to much as Philoras heard, but would forthwith have opened the Conspiracy. But he being the Son of Parmenio, Matter of the Kings Horse, and of his Privy Councel, did not fo much as a Stranger, who flraightway made relation of what his Brother had told him. And whereas he pretended, that the King was not at leifure, they judged it to be done, to the intent the Accuser should not leek any other to whom he might di-vulge it; whereas Nichomachus, albeit he was bound by his Oath to the contrary, yet would henever rest till he had discharged his Conscience : But Philitar; when he confumed, in a manner, the whole day in sport and passime with the King, could not finde in his heart to cast forth a few words, especially in a matter fo much concerning the Kings fafeguard. But admit (quoth they) he had given no credit to the matter through the lightness of the Reporter, why should he have deferred the Accuser two days, as though he had believed it? For if he had milliked the report, he might have difmiffed the party. It was also alledged, that every mans minde much mifgiveth him, when the matter concerneth his own jeopardy; much more ought men to be credulous, when it toucheth the fatety of a Kings person, in which case it ought to be throughly examined, though it be of small moment: They all therefore determined, that Philotas should be inforced to disclose the Partners of this Conspiracy. The King commanding them to keep the matter foret, departed; and to the intent no inkling should appear of this new Councel, he caused it to

be proclaimed, that the Army should be set for ward the next day. The same night the King called Philosas to a Banquet, with whom he vouchsassed not only to eat, but also samiliarly to discourse, notwithstanding he had before in the Councel determined his death. After the second Watch of the night, Ephilion, Craterus, and Eriginus, who were of the Kings Councel, came privily into the Court without light; and of the Esquires, there came Perdicas and Leonatus, by whom Commandment was given, that all such as lay near the Kings lodging should watch in Arms.

12-

but

But

ngs

ich

of

he

hig

ifer

di-

was he-

But

hole

not

Spe-

ings

iven

the

user

f he

iffid

nans

con-

men

of a

ugh-

They

e in-

racy.

atter

kling

it to

By this time Souldiers were appointed to all the Paffages, and Horfemen were fent to keep the ways, that no man should pass privily to Parmenia, who was then Governour of Media, and had under him a great power. Then Artaras came into the Court with three hundred arm d men, unto whom there were appointed ten of those that bad the charge of the Kings Person, every one of them accompanied with ten Esquires, who were forced into divers companies to take the orher Conspirators : But Artaras, with his three hundred, was lent to Philotos lodging, where with fifty of the most resolute, he brake up his Chamber-door that was thut against them; the relique were commanded to befet the house, lest he might escape by some secret way. Philotos, whether it were through the surety of his own Conscience, or through weariness of the travel of his minde, was in to profound a fleep sthat Artaras brake in upon him before he waked. But at length, when he was rouzed, and come to himfelf, perceiving they went about to binde him, he cryed

246 The Life and Death Book VI.

out, and faid; Ob Alexander, the malice of mine Enemier bath prevailed above thy Mercy. Speaking these words, they covered his face, and brought him into the Court. The next day the King gave Commandment, that certain of the Men of War should affemble in Arms, to the number of fix thouland: Belides thele, there were a Rabble of the Black Guard that filled the Court, who being afsembled together, the armed men compassed in Philoras with their Band, to the intent he should not be espied of the people, until such time as the King might speak unto them : for by an old Law of the Macedons, Kings in their own persons were wont to enquire in matters of Treason; yer could not the Kings Authority prevail to Condemnation, except it were confirmed by the confent of the Men of War: Therefore the Body of Dimnus was first brought into the place, the most part knowing not what he had done, or by what chance he was flain. Then came the King forth to speak unto the multitude, who in his countenance declared the do-Jour of his heart; and the fadness of such as were near about him, caused unto the rest a great expectaelon of the event. He cast his eyes down to the earth, and in a mule, but at length he plucked up his spirits, and spake unto them in this wife:

Ry the Treason of some Assassinates I was almost taken from you; but through the Mrcy and Providence of the gods, I am yet preserved. Tour Honourable Presence doth constrain me more vehemently to be moved against those Traytors, because the only comfort and fruit of my life is, that T remain to give thanks unto so many Noble men, unto whom I am so much obliged.

· ILLO

With

## Book VI. of Alexander the Great, 547

E-

ng

ht

ve

ar

lix

he

as-

in

ıld

he

of

ere

ald

on,

len

rft

ot

in.

ul-

10-

ere

ta-

the

his

ta-

nce

re-

4-

uit

So

ich

With speaking of these words, the murmure of the multisude did interrupt his speech, and the tears did fall from their eyes; then the King renewed his discourse item.

How much more will you be moved, when I shall show you the Authors of so horrible a Treason, which I yet refrain, as one very loath to discover their names? But I malt uncover the memory of my sonnetwal Subjects and after the Conspiracy of my unnatural Subjects for how is it possible for me to hide so great a Treason I Particula, a man of that Age; so deeply in my debta abrough the most ample benefits both of me and my Farther, and whom I most estremed of all my Friends, is the Captain and Contriver of ulbabis Mischief. His Minister Philotas, but h procured Pencolaus, Demetrius, and the Dimmus, (whose Budy you here see) with other Partners of their wickedness, to my destruction.

As he spake these words, there are throughout the multitude a great murmure and complaint, such as useth to be amongst Men of War, when they are moved with affection or displeasure. With that, Niehomachus, Metron, and Geballims were brought forth, every one of them giving in Evidence of what they had spoken before; yet it appeared not by any mans information, that Philotas was privy to the Conspiracy. But at the last, when the noise was ceased, and the Witnesses had said what they could, the King proceeded in this manner:

Of mbat minde think, you was this man, who hearing the whole Report, could finde in his heart to conceal the Treasun; the truth whereof is well declared by the death of Dimmes. Ceballinus that reported an uncertain tale, for she certain tryal thereof, was assaid of

R4

80

48 Harthe Life and Deaths Book WI.

no corments; and never delayed any moment of sime, smill be bad diffbarged bimfelf, in so much that be brake ban the place where I was bathing; but Philotas only feared nothing, believed nothing. O how great a beant had this man, who baving knowledge of the danger of his King, did never change countenance, nor take so much paint, as to bear out the information of the Acceser ! But in this silence and concealment there is Treason bidden, and the greedy define be bad to Reign, did drive bim bead-long to attempt this wickedness. His Father is Governour of Media, and beareth fuch a Command amongst the Captains and Men of War, through my Authority, that be hopeth after a great deal more then be bath; and because I am without Children; he effeemeth me not : But Philotas is deserved, I have Children, Friends, and Kinsfolk amongst your So long a you are in safety, I shall not vecking my felf without Heirs.

Thendid he receive a Letter that was intercepted, which Parmenio had written to his Sons, Nicanor and Philotar; wherein there appeared no great proof of any great Treason intended. The Letter was this: First take good beed to your selves, and then to those that belong to you wish shall we bring to pass what me have purposed. Which Letter the King intorced; saying, It was written after such a manieur, thus if it came unto his Sons bands it might be understood by them that knew the design; but if it were taken by the may, it should deceive them that knew it

Niw will Philotas perhaps fay, that when Dimmus named all that were partakens of his Conspiracy, he named nea him. As for that, it is no proof of his Innocency, Book VI. of Alexander the Great.

Impocency, but a token of his Power and Ambor because he was feared even of them that might be bim, who betraying themselves, durft not speak of him But what manuer of man he hath been, his life die! (hew : He was Fellow and Companion to Amintal my Kinfman , who conspired High-Treason against m Perfon in Macedon: He gave bis Sifter in Marriage to Attalus , then whom I had never greater When by reason of old friendship and familia wrote unto him of the Title given to me by the Oracl of Jupiter Hammon, he did not flick to answer, that he was very glad that I was admitted into the number of the gods, howbest very forry for chose that thould live under fuch a one as would exceed the condition of man. Thefe were plain tokens that his beare was turned from me , and that he despited my glan This I kept close in my beart follong as I might! for I thought my Bowels pulled from me, if I Brould render them contemptible for whom I had done for much : But now it it not words that must be punished, for the ralliness of their Tangues is turned to swords. which (believe me ) Philotas bath whetted to my defruction, whom if I should suffer to escape, atais, my Souldiers, whisher should I go? To whom should I commit my person? He was the man that I made General of my Cavalry, of the greatest part of mine Army , and she Chief of the mast Noble of the Touth thereof: To his truth and fidelity have I committed my Safeguard, my Hipe, and Victory: His Tarberdid I prefer unto the fame Estate whereunto you have udvanced me : Media , then which there is not a richer Country, mith many thousands of your Friends and Compenious, I have put under his Governance and

I.

me, be

eas the

nor

n of bere

l to

ear-

n of

r. 4

ritb-

e dek a-

not

eted,

anor reat

etter

and

ng to

King

manit be

were

in an

Dim:

f bis

cency,

10 the Life and Death Book VI.

bave found most danger: How much more happy had I been to have died in Battel, and to have been slain by mine Enemies; then to be thus betrayed by my Subjects? For now being saved from the dangers which I most scared, I have fallen into those which I ought to have least doubted. Tou have been wont oftentimes to warm me, that I should regard my safety; it is you that now may do that for me which you have counseled me unto: To your bands, and to your succour do I sy: I would not live, though I might, against your wills; and though you would, yet can I not, except I

he delivered from mine Enemies. Hercupon Philotar was brought forth in an old garment, his hands bound behinde him : It well appeared how much this miferable fight moved them who late before envied him. The day before they faw him General of the Horse, they knew that he was at Supper with the King, and fuddenly they saw him, both a prisoner bound like a Thief, and also condemned to die : It caused pity in their hearts, to consider how Parmenio, so Noble a man, so great a Captain, who late having lost two Sons, Hellor and Nicanor, should be put to answer for the third, whom calamity had left alive. The multitude being thus inclined to pity, Amintas, one of the Kings Officers, with a bitter invective, fet them all against the Prisoner.

We are all (quoth he) betrayed to the Barbarous Nations; not one of us shall return home unto his Country; Wife, or Friends, but we shall be a maimed body without a Head; without Honour, without Fame, and in a strange Country shall be made a Mocking-stock to our Enemies.

Book VL of Alexander the Great, ago

ne I

ain

ub-

b. I.

\$ to

10

you

let-

do

sur

! I

dd ell

ed

c-

W

lly

ef,

ir

n,

15,

ae

1-

of

et

-

k- 1

dy

ad.

to. Lis

His words were nothing pleasing to the Kin because he put the Souldiers in remembrance of their Wives and Country, whereby he thought they would be the lels willing to go forwards in his wars There was one Censes, who though he had married the Sister of Philotas, yet did he more extremely inveigh against him, then any other, calling him Traytor to bis King, his Country, and to the whole Army: And theseupon took up a stone, that by chance lay at his feet, to have call at Philoras which he did (as some thought) to the end he migh rid him from further torments : But the King kep back his hand, and faid, that the Prifater fould have liberty to Speak for himself, and would not suf-fer him to be condemned otherwise. Then Philater being admitted to speak, were it through the conscience of his offence, or through the greatness of his peril, as a man afformed, and besides himself, durit neither look up, nor speak, but burft out into tears; whereupon his heart fainted, and he swooned down upon those that led him : But afterwards, when he had wiped his eyes, and by lette and his tle recovered his heart and tongue, the prepared to focak for himself. Then the King beheld him in the face, and faid ; The Macedons shall be thy Judgers I would know therefore whether thou wilt them in thy Country Language, or not 3 1 Philotas answered, There are dibers Nati besides the Macedons, who I trust shall perceive my words the better, if I speak in the same tongue that you have done, so the intent that it may be bester anderstood by the generality of the people here prefents Then faid the King, Mark bom this man bath his

Native

The Life and beath Book VI.

besive Language in batted; for there is none but be that will distant to speak it: But let him say what be will, do you remember, that he not only distant that word the King departed from the Assembly: Then said Philotas:

It is easie for an Innocent to finde words to speaks but it is very bard for a man in misery, to keep a temper in bis discoursed Thus standing beswirt a clear Confesence, and most sunbappy Fortune, I know not which way I hall suisfie my self, and the time, both sogether : For he shat might best have judged my Canse is gone: What the cause is be would not bear me, I cannot well imagine; since upon the matter beard, it lyeth only in bis bands, either to discharge me, or condemn me : For the matter not heard, he cannot acquit me being absent, since be condemned me when he was bere present. Howsever, the defence of a Prisoner is not only superfluous, but also bateful, which seemeth not to inform; but to reprove his Judge: Let will I not forfake my felf; nor so demean me, that I may feem condemned by mine own default: I fee not of what Treafan I should be guilty: Amongst the Conspirators no man named me; Nichomachus fuid nothing of me; Ceballinus could not tell more of me then beheard: And yet doth the King believe; that e the Head of this Conspiracy. Was is posfible that Dimnus should forget to name him that was the Principal's Or is it likely that be would have over-slipped me, when the Names of the Conspi-easons were demanded of him? He would rather have named me faisly, to allere the young man the funer to bis Opinion a Lex when he told the master privily

to Nichomachus, whom he verily believed would have kept is sever, naming himself, and all the ret, of me only he made no mention: It cannot be catheted; that he omitted me, because he would have spand me. I pray you (my Fellows) if no man had come to me, nor given me knowledge of the matter, should I this day have been put to answer, when no man could have accused me? But he it that Dittmus were alive, and would spare me, what think you by the other? Would they detect themselves, and forbear me? Adversity is malicious and spiteful; an Offender, which he is punished himself, useth not to keep silence to spare another man: Commonly he that goeth to Death will spare no man; nor will any spare him that is ready to die: Will not so many guilty persons, as are put to torments, confess the truth?

77.

be

bat

eth

nat

en

ks

77

ar tot

th

efe

I

it

72-1

rit

as

is th I

14

of

71-

0-

ne

at

f:

at ld i-

ve

er

ly to But now I must answer to the Crime of which I stand acoused, if indeed, there can be found any Crime at all? Why did I conceal Treason? Why did I bear it with a small regard? This fault if it were a fault, thou hast pardoned me (O Alexander) what suever thou art, by giving me thy hand, and bidding me to Supper with thee: If thou didst betieve me, I am clear; if thou didst forgive me, I am acquitted: Stand at the least to thy own judgment. Alas, what have I done, since this last night I went from your Table? What new report hath changed your minde? I was in a found sleep, when my Enemies, by their binding, waked me, who mas sleeping in mine own missortune: Offender, cannot sleep through their unquiet Conscience, and are string with server torments, not only when their missing is intended, but also when it is performed.

But this quietness came anto me first through mine oron Innocency, and then by the Kings Pardon: I feared not that others Cruelty (hould take more place then his Mercy. But that it may not repent them to have believed me., you shall understand, that this Conbiracy was first shewed me by a light Fellow, who ald not bring any Witneffes or Warrant of bis words; which if I had disclosed, it would have put many men to trouble. O subappy that I am! I thought mine ears had been seduced with the falling out of two Buggerers; and I suspected the truth of the party, because be did not utter the matter himself, but procured his Brother to do it; I was in fear, that the one should have denied whatever the other affirmed; and withal, should have seemed to procure much trouble to many of the Kings Friends : So that because I would have offended none, I have found some more desirous to procure my death, then to fave my life: What hatred, suppose ye, should I have gotten, if I had accused Innocents? But Dimnus flew bimfelf; could Itherefore divine before, that he would fo do? No surely, this his death being that which only tryed the Accupation trues could not move me to utter it, being prevented by anotber.

And if I had been a Confpirator with Dimnus of jo great a Treason, is it likely that I would have difsembled it, by the space of two days, after it was discovered? As for Ceballinus, it had been an easie mutser to have dispatched bins out of the way after the thing disclosed; wherefore should I have delayed the matter? I entred into the Kings Chamber alone, bavine my weapons about me; why deferred I my purpoje? Durft I not attempt it without Diminus? But

Book VI. of Alexander the Great perchance ye will fay, Because he was she chief Com Spirator: How then standeth it together, that I fould be bu Underling, who did cover to be King of Mace don Which of you all have I corrupted with Bribes ? What Captoin, what Officer have I inclined to more then another? It is laid to my charge, that I abhor the Speaking of my Country Language, and that I distain the manners of the Macedons. What? Do I despise the Kingdom that I covet? Te know that our Natural Tongue, through our Conversation with other Natio is gone out of use ; as well shofe that be Conquerous as they that be subdued, must learn a new Langua But firely these shings make no more against me, the did the Treason that Amintas, the Son of Perdicas, in tended against the King i with him I had friendship; I will not die, except ye will make it a thing unlaw-ful to love the Kings Brother: But it was our diety to bouter a man called to that degree of Fortune ; I befeech you, am I guilty because I could not guess before that he would offend? Is the Law such , that the Friends of Offenders must Suffer being Imoteurs ! if that be the reason, why live I so long? If it be no reafor mby am I condemned to die? But I sm charged, that I had pity of them that (hould live moder Juch a one as believed bimfelf to be the Son of Jupiter. O faith of friendship, and dangerous liberty of true counfeld it was you that deceived me, it mas you that comrelled one to bide that I thought : I confes I wrote for to the King, but one of the King. I did it not for fire, but for my disty fake: I thought it more expedient for Alexander to have acknowledged the Kind of Jupiter with filence, then to have made a report abtreaf with Oftentarion. But because the much of gods Or acle

mine

lace

t to

Con-

mbo

ds;

men

nine

two

rty,

pro-

one

and

e to

uld 15 to

red,

Infore

bis

rues

s of dif-

Co-

Lat-

the

ba-

bur-But perThe Life and Deall .. Blokevi.

rate is create let god be withelf in my cause. Reain me to Profest, will ye may know Jupiters answer concerning this Conspiracy; and in the mean for son, he that buth venebsused our King to be his Sun will suffer none of them that have confrired against his Offforing, to be waknown to If you suppose torments more ben Oracles, I will not define no be faved from them in and of trueb. There is an old use, that such as be put to answer upon Life and Death, are accustomed to Fing their Parents and Kinsmen before your Two Brothers of lave have Hoft; my Eather I neither can bring forth, nor dure I call for , because he is accused of this Treasure with me. It is a small thing for him that is the Fasher of many Children, and having but one Son left in whom to take pleasure, nat only to lofe bim, but alfo to lofe bis own life with him : Therefore my most dear Fasher, shall thou die for me, and with me? In it I that do take thy life from thre: It is I that put aperiod to thy old days a Why dids! show begen me, unbappy Wretch, in hatrest of the gods? Was it to receive fuch fruit from me as it prepared for thee? I am in doubt, whether my Youth he more anbappy, or think Age : For I in the flower of my years am plucked away; and the Executioner shall bereave thee of thy tife; which if Fortune mould have Suffered to continue, yet Nature would have asked ite're it had been longs. The remembrance of my Father doth put me in minde born lyath and timerous I ought to have been to the report of Informations: For soben my Parber was advertifed shat Philip the Physician had prepared payon for Alexander, be mrate a Letter, to warn the King, that he fould not receive the Medicine which his Physician had prepared Was my my Father helicied? Was his Letter of my Ambority? I my fell, when I have reported fach things as beard, how often have I been shaken off with a cheel for my light helief? So that when we tell things, we are hated; and when we hold one peace, we are significantly will have us to do?

Then one of the Company that frood by, cryed out, That none ought to be Traytors to them, by whom

they are intrusted.

Re-

mer

, be

fut-

perc

bein s be

dto

Two

can

mini buet

y to

m.

me,

nee :

didit

12.8

more

ball

bave

sked

For

rous

ons:

the

prote

ceive

Was

Thou sayest well (quoth Philosas) who sever thou art: And therefore, if I have committed Treason, I require no respite of my pain. And here will I make an end of speaking, because my last words seem ted-

ous unto your ears.

As he was speaking these words, his Keepers led him away. There was amongst the Captains one Belon, a hardy man, but one very rude, and void of all civility; who being an old Souldier, was promoted from a low effate, to the degree of Captain i This Belon, prefuming upon a toolish audacity; (when all others had done) began to tell them, than when divers had taken up their lodgings in the Camp, how they were thrulf out by the fervants of Philotas, who would take his quarters where other men were placed before; and how all the Streets were fall of his Waggons, laden with Gold and Silver. He added further, that Philotas would suffer none to lodge near unto him, but always appointed certain to wait whiles he flept, to the intent he should not be disquieted with any noise, not to much for wakening of him, as for disturbing his reft; and that he was so haughty, that he despised the plain men of Phrygis and Paphlagonia, and be-

og a Maceden born, would not be assamed to hear men of his own Nation by an Interpreter; And whereas he had heretofore moved to have the Oracle of Jupiter engerted after, he laid, it was meant thereby to make jupiter a lyer, for acknowledging Alexander to be his son , as if any man thould envy the King for that Title which the gods had given him: But why (laid he) did he not ask countel at Tapiter before he did offend? For now he would have lent to the Oracle, that in the mean season his tather, who ruleth in Media, might raile a power; and with the money that he hath in cultody, affemble desperate persons to the sellowship of his mischiefs Nevertheless, we shall (faid he) fend to Jupiter, not to inquire of any thing touching the matter, but to give him thanks, and to facrifice unto him for the prefervation of so good a King. Then all the Company was moved, and among them there began a cry, That the Traytor foould be rent in pieces; which thing Philotas ( who feared more grievous punishment; was content to hear.

The King returning, deferred the Councel till the next day, either to commit Philotas to prison, to be there tacked, or elle, in the mean scason, to get further knowledge of the Treason: yet albeit it diew towards night, he commanded his Councel

to be called together.

Some of them thought it belt, that Philoras should be stoned to death, after the Macedons Laws: Ephelion, Craterns, and Cenus, determined to have him tived by forment; and then they who perswaded the contrary, turned also to their Opinion: Therefore when the Councel was broken up, Ephelion, with

with Crarerus and Cenjus arole, to haste Philosophic to the examination. The King called Craterus unto him; and commanding the rest to avoid, had secret communication with him in the innermost part of his lodging, the effect whereof came not to any mans knowledge. He tarried there till the night was far past; to hear the end of the determination: The Executioners set forth all forts of cruel torments in the sight of Philotats, who of his own minde said unto them:

Why defer you to kill such a man as hath confessed himself she Kings Enemy, and a Traytor? What needesh more Examination? It was my intent, it was

my will.

ear

ra-

ant

mg

VV

ven

lat

uld

his

er;

m-

nif-

wi-

nat-

into

hen here

tes;

rous

till

fon,

. to

it it

ould

phe-

him

aded

here-

fron.

with

Crateriu minde was, that what foever was confesled before, should be consessed by Philotas again up-on the Rack. Whiles he was taken upon the Rack, his Body naked, his Eyes bound, he cryed out upon the Law of Nature, and the gods of the Country's but all was in vain to their deaf ears. Finally, as a condemned man; he was torn with most extreme coments by his Enemies, for the Kings pleasure ! And notwithillanding both Fire and Scourges were ministred upto him, more to affice him, then to examine hims yet he had power of himfelf, both to retrain from speaking and grouning. But after at his Body began to be fwoln with stupes, and ar he could not abide the Scourges, which pierced to the bare bones; he promised, if they would torment him no more, he would confels whatloever they should require of thim: But first he would one to fwear by the file of Alexander, that cy should cease their torments, and set the Rack

S 2

afide

The Life and Death, Book V. fide. The which being obtained, he said to Ors-terns, Tell me what we will have me to confess: Phercat Crateria was displicated, thinking by those words that he had minesed him; and caused his orments to be fenesyed. They Philippes belought in to have a time of respite, whiles he might take his breath, and then he would beter all that ever he knew. In the mean featon, the chief of the men at Arms, and especially such as were near to Parmenio in any degree of Kindred, after that the Fame was foread that Philoras was normented, fearing the Meedins Law, (wherein it was ordained, that the Rinsiolk of fuch as had committed Treafon against the King, thould be put to death with the Traytors) fome flew themselves, some fled into wilde Mounrains, and walle Wildernelles; and great dread and tear fell throughalf the Flott, until fuch time as the King having knowledge of it, made Proclamation that he would pardon the rigour of the Law to the Kinsfolk of the Traytors.

In conclusion Philotas made his Confession; but whether it were to deliver himself out of pain; by according himself fally, or not; it is to be doubted feeing that it is commonly seen; that both those that truly confess, and fally deny, come all to one end: In are not ignorant (quoth he) bow familiar my tatherway with Egylocus; I mean the familiar my tatherway some familiar to be may the cause of our wishers. For when the King took upon lam the Istite of J. witers Son; he displained thereat? Shall we only how the familiar that Thillp was his Pather We are all in Jone, if we can suffer this: He dark not only despite

men, but she gods also, who will be reported a cod. We have lost Alexander; we have lost our King; he w Tallen to Prefumption neither tolerable to the gra with whom he comparest , neither to men whom he despises to Have we withour blood made him a god who now destileth us? who distainesh to be in the member of men? Trul me that we also, if we be men, Thatt be adopted of the gods. Who hath revenged the deaths of Alexander bis Grand-father, or o Archelans, or Perdicas? But this man bath foreign them that flew his Father. These were the word that Egitocus spake about supportine, and on a morrow early my Father fent for me; He himle was heavy, and faw me also sad, for we both he heard that which made us out of quiet; Therefore to prove whether he intered thele words through excels of Wine, or premeditation we thought good to lend for him; and feeling occasion of the tame communication, he of his own minde fall further; That if we durit undertake the Adventure he would not shrink from as; or if our bearts served not, be would keep our compile. Yet to long as Danish was living, my Father thought all the matter out of leafon, because the death of Alexander should be to the advantage of our Enemies, and not of our felves: But Darius once rid out of the way, then he that could deffroy the King, should obtain the Empire of Aga, and all the Orient for his reward:

When he had confessed all this I perceive (quark to ) that it dash not usual me, that I am witter; Siz.

Which counsel being approved, Parti and Troth

was given; but concerning Dimme, I know no-

M. Cra-

hole his ught

take er he en at

menio e was

the the

ytors) Ioun-

d and

ation,

to, but

eo one fami

of our the Tr

we or

all in

nats

guiltless of this Treason. Then they renewed his torments, and did beat his Face and his Eyes with the Truncheons of their Spears, until they inforced him, not only to betray himfelf, but also to shew the circumstance of the whole Treason pretended: Because (quoth he) it seemed that the King would continue long among the Battrians, I was afraid, left my father, that had so great a power in his hands, and the keeping of fo much Treasure (being fourfcore years of age) should happen to die in the mean season; and then being disarmed of so great trength, I should not get opportunity to slay the King , wherefore I hatted the matter, whileft the prey was in hand. Thus discovered he the Confriracy, whereof if they believed not his Father to be Author (he faid) that for his tryal he not refuled to be tormented again, though it were too grievous for him to endure. The Officers then whilpering together, thought the examination fufficient, and returned therewithal unto the King, who on the morrow caused all the Confession to be openly recited before Philotus, whom he caused to be led into the place, because he was not able to go; and there he confessed all the Treason again: Then Demetrius was brought forth, who was counted the greateft Actor in this Conspiracy, next to Philotas: But he with great proteflation, and incredible Houtnels, both of heart and countenance, denied that he ever intended any evil against the King; and for his try-

Then Philotas calting his eyes about, espied one Calis standing by, and made a signe to him to draw near; who being abashed, and resuling to

al, defired to be tormented.

COIDE

come forwards; Wils shim (quoth he) fuffer Deme trius to lye, and me to be racked again? With those words Calit became speecheds, and changed onlour. Then the Macedons began to suspect that he would accuse Innocents, because the same Calis was neither named by Nichemschuse, nor by Bhilistas himself in his torments. But shally, Philosos, before the Kings Officers standing thereabout, conf. sed. that the Treason was compired by himself, and Demetrius; wherefore as many as were impeached by Nichemachus, upon a token given, were lioned to death according to the Macedons Law.

ith ced ew

d:

ald aid, his

ing the

reat

the

the

Spi-10

aled

ous ring and

the

reci-

into here

etri

reat-

But

ness,

ever

try-

Spied

no to

g to

come

Thus was Alexander delivered from exeat pe not only of his fafety, but also of his life; For Parmeirio and Philotas being of fuch power, if they had not openly been found culpable, could not have been condemned without the grudge of the Army. So long therefore as Philosas devied the thing, the matter feemed doubtful, and many men thought him cruelly handled ! But after he had confelled the curcumtiances, no man, not to much as be nearest Friends, took any pity of him.

has a state subtract a really and of printing

Property and the second and an entered

and the second of the angle of the continued

investible trained of the train

-diversity and the state of the block thence of their consequences from a course

S<sub>4</sub> THE between the contract of the co

Saucan Com to had a day not titled him soorsinger about a skill and account tous 164 The Life and Death Book VII.

## **他自由自由自由自由自由自由自由**

## THE SEVENTH BOOK OULKTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Ads of Alexander the Great, King of Ma-

A 5 the Men of War thought Philotas justly put to death, his offence being fresh in memory i even fo, after he was gone, their envy was turned into pity: The Noblenels of the Young Man moved them much; fo did the number of the Old Years and Defolation of his Father. He was the first that made the way open for Alexander into Afia, always partaker of his perils, the Captain of his Vaward, and chief in Councel with the King his Father; and fo trutty to Alexander himself, that in oppressing of Attalus, his Enemy, he would use no other mans service. The remembrance of these things was fresh among all the Souldiers, and Ceditions words came to the Kings ears, who being moved therewith, did wifely with travel avoid the evil occasions coming of idleness: wherefore he caused it to be proclaimed, that all men should be in a readiness before the Court-gate, where Book VII. of Alexander the Great. 2

where they being once affembled, he came forch peak unto them ? And as it was before con he required the Band of the Algran to bring fold one Alexander Lynftes, which long before Philotas had conspired the Kings Death. This man being accused of two Witnesses (as before laid) had re mained in prilon three years togethers against whom it was proved, that he was of counter with Paulanias in the killing of King Philip: But because he faluted first Alexander by the Name of King his punishment was deferred, rather then his offe forgiven: For at the intercession of Antipater. Father-in-law, the King had respited his just indi nation for that time. But the old leftered fore brails out again, and the confideration of his peril prefent renewed the remembrance of his danger palled Therefore when he was brought forth of prilon, and commanded to fay for himfelf, albeit he ha three years leifure to devile his answer, yet for mering and trembling, could bring forth but little of that which he purposed to say; and finally, both his heart and his memory tailed him wh there was none that doubted, but that his fearfulness was a token of a guilty Conscience, and no default of memory: So that whill he was staggering and hacking in his tale, they that flood next throst him through with their Pikes; whole body conveyed out of the place, the King commanded Amintas and Simmannas to be brought forth; for Palemon, their youngest Brother, after he had knowledge of Philotas corment, fled away. Of all Philotas friends. these two were most dear to him, and through his commendation; advanced to high and honourable Offices:

iffly me-

nvy

um-

her.

lex-

the

nder

, he

soul-

ears,

tra-

it all

gate,

the especial peach. Book &

acti and labour Philotes had brought them into his layour, doubted not but they were privy to his last Conspiracy. Whereupon he declared unto the muleitude, that he had occasion of suspition against those men long ago by his Mothers Letters, wherenow fearing the fequel of worler inconveniencies, had made them fure, issurced thereunto by appazent presumptions. Lift, he said, the day before Philotas Treason came to light, it was well known, that they had much conference with him in fecret: And also their Brother, who fled away when Philowas on the Rack, he had declared, by the ablenting of himself, the cause of his slying. He shewed allo, that of late, contrary to their accultomed manner of waiting, without any cause moving them thereunto, but only by pretence of diligence, they preffed next about the King of all other; whereat marvelling that they would furnish a Room whereonto they were not appointed, became so in doubt of their clustring together, that he returned into the Train of the Gentlemen that followed him: He declared belide, that when Antiphanes, Clerk of the Stable, the day before Philoras Treason came to light, according to his accustomed manner, gave knowledge to Amineus, that he should deliver of his Horse to such as had lost their own; he proudly answered again, that except be would content himself, be sould know shortly what manner of man be was Which violence of tongue, and rathuels of words bulked out (quoth he) was nothing elfe, but a declaration and token of his trayterous heart. Thele things

chings being true (he faid) they had no less deserved then Philosops, and if they were otherwise, he delived they might answer unto the points: Thereupon Amphanes was brought in to give Evidence of the Horte not delivered, and of his proud answer given with threatning. When Amanas had porten liberty to speak, he delived off the King, thus wines they answered for thermically, their Bands might be loosed: which thing of the head (untro have his garment to be east up n him; which Alexander not only granted, but will it a weapon to be delivered unto his hands, as office Esquires used. When he had received the same, he eschued a little the place where the Copple of Linesses lay, and said in this wise:

What sever shall become of us (Sir King) is must think if our chance be good, the same to proceed of your savour; and if it be evil, we must judge the fault to be in our Fortune. Seeing you suffer us to plead our cases without prejudice, setting our mindes since, and our bodies at large, with the same apparel estiming u, wherein we were wont to follow you? Our Gaste is such, that we cannot doubt of it; and ne we passed the sear of Fortune; therefore, with your savour. I will answer first those points wherewith you charged us half. We know must assuredly, that we Rimmour and have since in such since of words spoken to the derigation of your Majesty; and dorst affect, that you had over one is seen and dorst affect, that you had over one is seen of men, but that peradventure you would think that I went about with fair words to excens things that have been maliciously spaken: Though it were so that words some interest and some since of any bear words somewhat as a cancer things that base been maliciously spaken: Though it were so that words some interest fairs, or weaked in marching, bazarding our selections.

his last mul-

amit that cies, ppa-

fore wn, ret: bilo-

entwed nan-

hem they reat

ereoubt the

de-

e to gave t his

anf, be

ords

clahefe

ungs

beneft downs otherwise sther inspice the same to galty of the fault: We do prolence own bodies, which we hate not g of the Pathers unto the Children, imerime is borb ungraseful, and also baseful. But on the other fide, when we receive remarks or gifting at when we come laden home with Spail. Who can sen flay us? Who can retrain our chearfulness? or, by bo can reful our courage in lighting? The Nature Man, & neither to keep measure in adple dere, nor in gladness. Thus are we driven by the violence of Medion, sometimes with piry, and sometimes with funy, as our present desire doth govern us. One while we are in minde to pass through India, as far as the Ocean Sed; and by and by, the memory of our Wives, and Children, and Country, altereib our purpose: But as soon as the Trumpet soundesh, firaight all these imaginations do pass away, and every man then runneth in his Array, revenging upon their Enemies the displeasures conceived with in their own Teney. I would Philotas had affended but one in words; I would past over that , and we where other point whereof we are accepted: be friendship that was between Philotos and us, will not only not deny, but also confess, that we did were the fame; and received thereby great comm this. Do you marvet that we did bond mest about your Perfort, and did advance ab

all other your Priends? Los your felf (if you please to bear the rist) die 10e einife of this your peril What alberthing moved at to givet Philosop Resend pap then that we defined to pleafe that by to preferences we are advanced unto your layous. Hood in facts beight with you, that is beloneed to well to sue for his benevolence, as a fear his dist. fore: Have not we sworn that an would repair y Enemies our Enemies, and beneve your Friends a own? Should methade been found displieding his Bond of our Duty; and effectably towards bein, when ye did prefet above all men? If this be a fault, we brue few benecents, or firely none at all? All me defined to be Philotal friends, but all that did cove it could not be accepted. So if ye will make no dif foresee between the Partners of his Treafen ; on fuch as were bis Priends's oben so many are Offe ders, as would have been bis Friends. It has pre-comprise bave you now that we should offend? think, because yesterday Philoras talked with in fomiliarly alone: Thereof I cannot excuse my felf is generally I changed any thing an mine accustomed man, and living that if so be me asked every day a see tike, there Cillians mill needs Offener, But it may be (p.d., The Rice) in authorized to Antiphanes; and the day be us may deference with a day be us may deference with the parties of panes, and me? It is become to have may know of the day o

VII

erwife Me to com-

otence not

But gifts

ê or.

e, nor we of with

as emory teresb

desb,

ngang wish-Jend-

and efed: d 116,

e did hamb-

0 00

all

The Life and Death Book VII

had distributed eight to fach as had lost their own; there only remained two which when be would roadly and prongfully bave taken away, I was inforced to keep them still, except I would have served on foot. I cannot deny but that this communication was bad between a man of a free stomack, and a person of a vile nature which could do no manner of fer-vice, but take away mens Horfes, and give them to others. What mischief it this, that at one time I must parge my felf both to the King, and to Anciphanes s to the other point, that your Mother did write to were of us, as of your Enemies; I would to God the had more misely been careful of ber Sons Jufeguard, then doubtfully imagined such inventions: Why doub the not also express the cause of her fear? Besides, she hewerb not ber Author, nor yet fignificib one word whereby the was moved to write to you fuch Letters fear. O wretched eftate of mine, which ftandeth in to less bazard to bold my peace, then to speak! Tet bow focuer the event shall be , I had rather my difcourse sould displeasement, then my Cause. If yourenember when you fent me to fetch new Souldiers out of Macedon, even when you shewed me, that in your Mothers house there lurked many lufty young Gentlemen's you commanded me, that in executing your Commission, I should space none, but bring with me perforce all such as refused the Wars : which thing ! did, and fulfilled you will therein, more largely then was expedient for me's for I brought unto you Gorge es, Eleccareus, and Gorgata, which now minister unto you and do very occeptable fervice. What Creature absertore is more wretched then I, who if I had not fatfilled your will, should rightfully have suffered; and

now I periff, because I obeyed you? For strain there was no cause that moved your Morber to perfective to then that we preferred your Command before a Woman's favour: I brought unto you of Macedons for thousand and eight hundred Horsemen, of the which the greatest part would not have followed me: It is reason therefore, that in as much as your Mother is displeased with us for your Cause, that ye mitigate her in whose displeasure you have put us.

Whiles Amintas was thus pleading his Caule they that had purfied his Brother Palemon (of whom we spake) came leading him bound into the place. Then the rage of the people could scarcely be pacified; but as the manner was in such cases, they would have stoned Palemon to death; yet he bold-

ly spake to them, and faid:

I desire no favour for my self, so that my flying be not burtful to the Dinocency of my Brethren, whom if you cannot think clear, let the fault be laid to me! For their Cause appeared the better, because I which

fled away am suspected.

י אועו

ould

in-

ved

was

rfon

fer-

0-

mult

cs.

e. 10

She

wd.

losb

She

ard

ters

in

Tet

dis-

re-

out

in

our

me

Mto

ure

Hot

1010

As foon as he had spoken these words, the whole assembly were inclined to his favour, and dissolved to tears, being so suddenly and so contrary turned, har now they were all on his part, who a little before were against him: He was in the prime flower of his Youth, and through other mens fear sted away amongst those Horsemen, who were amazed a Philotal torments: His company had lest him behinde, and whiles he was in doubt whether he might turn again, or by surther torwards, he was taken by them which pursued after him. He then locan to weep, and beat himself about the face; not

10

much lamonting his own chance, as the condition of his Brethren, heing in danger for his causes which behaviour of his, he moved the King, and all the company there prefent; only his Brother Amintas could not be pacified, but beheld him with a fierce countenance, and faid:

O mad Creature ! Then oughtest thou to have wept when show didit put thy spure to thy Horse as a Traytor to thy Brethrea, and a Companion to Traytors 2. Thou Wretch ! whither, and from whence didit thou flee? Those baft ware brought to pass, that both I am shought worthy of Death, and also must become an

decaler of others.

m thereupon confessed himself to have offended in that point, but more grievously against his Brethren, then towards himself. Then the multitude could not abitain from weeping and shouting, being Tokens whereby men in Assembly are wont to declare their affections, and with one conlent they cryed to the King, That he should spare In-nocents, and man of service. His friends, upon that occasion, did rife, and with weeping eyes required mercy of the King. Then he commanded lilence, and laid:

By mine own judgment, I do pardon both you, A-mintas, and your Brethren; defirous that ye should be more mindful of my benefit, then of your own jeardy: Come in favour again with me, with that fidelity by which I am reconciled unto you. Except these things which were brought in Evidence had been sryed to the attermost, my dissimulation might ben been suspected in this matter: Better it is therefore to be cleared, then to remain in jealousie, and thin book VII. of Alexander the terest. 27 that no men can be acquirted, except to be first distributed. Thous Amintal, pardent the Brother, and let that he a token of thy hearts being removalled on the mes.

ule; ing, Bro-

him

wept

ray-

thou

am

e an

of-

mul-

outy are con-

that uired ence

A. A

boule

n jeo

beer

bav erefor thin This done, the King diffusified the Affembly, and fent for Policiamus, whom of all men Parmenia loved best, accustomed always to stand next him in Barrel: And though the clearness of his confesence did affore him to come boldly; yet after he was commanded to bring forth his Brethren, being his commanded to bring forth his Brethren, being his young, and unknown to the King, his confidence was turned into sear, and he began to doubt, imagining in his minde rather such things as mighe horse him, then by what means he was thus circumvented. In the mean season, the Guard which had commandment thereunto, brought forth his Brethren, when the King saw Policiamus pale for seat, he called himmean unto him, and commanding all menapart, he laid unto him:

I brough Parmenio hu Treason, we were all in danger, but chiefy I and those, where under colour of standship be deceived most; In the prosturing and pumisment of upon, see how much I trust thy side-lay for I am determined to use thee as a Minister statio, and whilest those goest about it; thy Reethren hall be thy pledgers. Those shall go into Media, and have my lesters to my Officers, written with mine out hand; It is necessary has be made; that the suffered of the Fame be prevented: I will, that ye ame thinker in the night, and that the tensor of any writting be required the day after. It shall carry letters have be required the day after. It shall carry letters have made plained to a sufficient to the night and that the tensor of any writting he required the day after. It shall carry letters have my expense of Philotas: I have be Signed in my oullody?

1

So

174 . The Life and Death Book VII.

So that when Pantienio shall fee both you, and the Letter fealed with his Sons Ring, he will be without

any inflictions

Polidamic being thus delivered of fear, promifed his diligence a great deal more carnelly then was required. When Alexander faw his promptness in the matter, he both commended his good will, and warded him accordingly : And Polidamus changed his own apparel, and took other; after the fathion of the Arabians, with two of the fame Counno Children were pledges in the mean feafon; And to they maffed on Camels through fuch places as were defart for lack of moillure, and within elevon days came unto their journeys end , before any knew of their coming. Polidamus then took again his Macedone apparel, and in the dead time of the night came unto Cleanders lodging, who had the chief Authority there, next unto Parmenio- When Cleander by his Letters, underflood the Kings pleafure, Polidamus having more Letters to deliver likewife to others, agreed by the break of day to go to gether to Parmento.

As they were going, tidings came to Parmento of Policiamus arrival, who rejoycing, both for the comming of his Friend, and for the detire he had to know of the Kings Estate (the rather, because he had received no Letter from him a long space) commanded Policiamus to come to him. The houses of the Country have large Back-sides, and pleasant Oschards tall of Trees, being the chief delight of the Princes and great Lords there. The Captains which had received Commandment by the Kings Letter

to kill him, came to Parmerio, walking under thadow of the Trees, being agreed among that clues to execute the flaughter, when he flooding in to read his Letters.

So foon as Parmenio had espect Palldames, coming afar off, with a semblance of joy (as appeared by his countenance) he ran to imbrace him, and after salutation given to each other, he delivered the Kings Letter: As he was unclosing it he demanded of Folidams: what the King intended to do? Ion shall know that, said he, by the Contents of our Letters: Which when he had read, I precent (quoto Parmenio) that the King purposets o Yould against the Aracholians; Surely he is a painful Prince, and never in red: But now; after so much slow man, it were time for him to take his case, and have confederation of his health and safeguard. And then he need the other Letter, written in the Name of Philotas; whereat he was joyin, as appeared by his countenance: With that cleander trabbed him with his Sword in his side, and after striking him over the throat, the residue thrust him in, as he lay a dying,

but Parmento's men, who flood near at hand, and the thurder, whereof they knew not the capte, and into the Camp, and with their troublous sidings fet all the Souldiers in an uproar: They can drught to Arms, and clutting together about the blace where the murder was done, they made an extansation, that except Polidamus, and the other actions in that deed, were delivered to their hands, any would overthrow the Wall, and make factified to their dead Captain with the bloud of the Offen-

10

was

Is in

and

han-

e fa-

-מטס

lives

fon :

laces

ele-

gain

t the Lahe When

plea-

like to to

id re

nanc

fth

of th

etter

ders

ders. Chander Wilks the chief of them to be let in, and mental the Kings Letters, wherein was contained the Treather of Partiello intended against him with a request to them to sit in revenge: Then immediately, upon the Kings pleasure known, the Sestion was appealed, but the grudge was not rid toutest their hearts: The thost part departed, faving affew, who instructly required, that at the least they might be suffered to bury the Body. It was denied their long, by reason of Cleinder, who dreaded the Kings displeasure: But because they began to wax more carnell, intending to avoid marter of Sedition, be cut of the Head, which he sent to the King, and left hem the Body to bury:

am This was the end of Parmellio, a Noble-man both In The and Peace a many things had he done without the King, but the King without him did never mothing worth to praise the lerved and pleafed. to all affairs; a King most happy and fortunate; and being threefebre and ten years of age, executed the Office of a Caprain as lively, as though he had been Withing in years, and pretermitted not oftentime parts of a common Souldier: He was quick in countel doughty of deed, well beloved of all Princes, but most dear to the common fort of Soutdiers "Yet whether those things moved him to be King, o elecante manto benince de mercole in is s Be doubled. Pour whether the words that Photora bake, when he was overcome with the pains of h Mil torments, were true or falle, or elfe that h Polish an end of the pahr by acculing himlest falls the was much thombility feeling there was no fuc thing proved it fuch time as the matter was mon fresh in memory.

Book VII. of Alexander the G Such as alexander perceived to death of Philotan wife eparates from the the Army, and put into one Conort under Le their Captain, who in times past was of near tan harity with Parmenio; The King did bear pil displeasure against them; and therefore willing sprove the dupolition of every man, he gave ware ing throughout the Army, that all luch as w write into Macedoma, and have their Letters in ly conveyed, should bring them to be carried fuch as he would fend: Whereupon revery in aid write frankly to their friends luch things were in their hearts: Some thewed themlely to be offended with the long Wars, and forme fe ed to be well pleased; but all their Letter intercepted, as well of fuch as commended the ka as of those that emdged at his doungs. he willed luch , as by their letters delepted a relyes to be weary of the travel of the wars. their reproach, to be put in a Regiment apart the tell; whereby he both gave them because hew their hardness, and believes, removed he is of their tongues from the credulous ears of the hich talk device, as all other things, turned to he fetting forth of the Kings telleny, for in all exremities, they howed themselves the radieff, and molitorward; and whilst they covered to te m their reproach their valuent doings out a not moden in to small a number, being separated b elernings being ordered after this manner "he" ointed a Rules over the Arrans, and proclaimmol journey against the Arajoians, who by chan-

inft

hen

the

rid

ving they

nied

the

wax

tion,

and

both

vith-

ievet

aled.

and

d the

beer

time

k in

Prin

lota

Such

gir g

the time that they relieved Cyras Army with Lodging and Victuals, being afficted with cold and pentry. It was the fifth day before he entred into their Country, where he understood, that Satriburzanes, who took Bestu part, was with a power of Horsemen entred again amongst the Arrians; He sent against him Caranas and Erigins, and in their aid Arrabases and Andromachus, with six thousand Greek Footmen; and six hundred Horsemen, Alexander continued threescore days in setting order amongst the Evergitane, upon whom he bestowed a great sum of money, for the notable side-ship they shewed towards Cyras: and seaving Amendes to be their Governour (who was Darin Secretary) he went to subdue the Arachosians, who bester upon the Sca of Pontar.

The Men of War, who were under Parmenia his

The Men of War, who were under Parment his tule, came then to Alexander, being fix thousand Macedone, with two hundred of the Nobility, five thousand Greek Footmen, and two hundred Horsemen, which were the chief force of their power. To these Arnebosium, Memnon was appointed Licutement, with four thousand Footmen, and six huntrant,

dred Horlemen.

Alexander from thence entred with his Army into a Country not known unto such as bordered upon it, for the Inhabitants would not have conversation with any other people: They were called Paramijadant, being a very rustical kinde of men, and most sude amongst all the Barbarous Nations, the hardness of the Country had so industed their dispositions: They lye most towards the cold North-Pole.

Book VIII. of Alexander the Creat. 275

and

into

atriower

ians; id in

boumen.

be-

fide-Ame-Se-

who

rio his

uland

, five lorfe-

owen

Lieubun-

v in-

d up

pver-

men

their lorth-Pole and bending towards the Indian Sea were the South. They wied to build their houles of Bilek and because the Land is full of barren Monntains, and word of Timber; they make their whole houses of the same, which beginning broad beneath, groweth ever more narrow towards the top; and like the Keel of a Ship; where the holes are stack above to receive light 2. Such of their Phies and Tracs that bring south trun, which they will preserve from the violence of the cold; they cover with earth disting the Winter-leason; and when the Snew is wearthed away, they restore them again to the Air, and to the Sun; The earth was there covered with Snow; and frozen so hard; that higher light appared, but the earth being covered as it were writted directly makes the earth being covered as it were writted directly makes.

The Army being brought into this Country delimite of Tillage, fuffered all the differentiaties and mileries that might be endured; both of finalgers, cold, weariness and desprire: There were many of them that died for cold, and the Show deitoyed their feet; but especially it took away the fight of many. When they were wearind, and not able to travel any further; they laid themselves down upon the trozen Snow, and having once left the mondor of cheir bodies, which thread in them that arroral hear; they were traight ways so bemanded with cold, that they could not rife again, till they were lifted up by their Companions; and

Ta

there

bere was no securely for it, but to compel them to go forwards; for then by firring of themselves, their natural heat was revived; and they recovered again some strength. Such as recovered the Cottages wherein the Country mendwelled; were very well relieshed; but the darkness was so great, that the boules could not be otherwise discerned, then by the smooth

Inhabitants that had never feen Strangers before amongst them, when they beheld the armed men coming fuddenly upon them, were amazed for fear, and brought forth whatfoever they had, to fave their bodies from violence. Alexander marched on foot amongst his men , raising such as were down, and relieving fuch as he faw afflicted with the cold with his own cloaths: He was feen one while in the Van, another while in the middeft, and sometime in the Rereward, to the great travel of his body. At length they came to places better manured, where he refrethed his Army with plenty of victuals, and there remained in Camp till fuch time as the Souldiers that were left behinde did ovestake their Fellows. Then he went forwards with his Army to the Mount Gancafus, which divideth all Affa into two parts; For on the one fide it Aretcheth towards the Sea of Cilicia, and on the other side to the Caspian Sea, to the River of Astract, and the Detarts of Scythia.

To this Mount Generalise there sowheth another

To this Mount Gascafas there joyneth another Mountain, called Taurss, next tunto it in bigness; which tileth from Gappadoria, and palling by Gillicia, closeth with the Mountains to distance of their Mountains joyning thus together, as it were

in one continual ridge, all the Rivers in the form of them running into the field proform and Havanian Sea, undother unto the Sea of Fontes. In Seventeen days, state, with his Armies, passed Mount Cancastra where, in a Roch that is ten furlongs in compile, Antiquity fained that Promethers lay bound. At the foot of this Mountain Alexander chose out a place to build a City I, wherein he placed seven thousand of the most Ancient Macedons, and such others whole service he would not use any more in the Wars, and called the same Alexandera.

eit,

ed

or to

h-

re th

el er

nch

th

th it

he 4

er ;

in in

But Beffus , that was put in fear with Alexanders celerity, made factifice unto the gods of his Counmidft of his Banquets, he confulted with his friend and his Captains; for the maintenance of the wars: And when they were well charged with wine, they extolled greatly their own power deping the rathness of their Enemies, and their limits his words; who puffed up with pride; by reason of the Kingdom he had newly got by Treaton, o declare , How that Darius by his folly reafed bis Enemies Pame, who would needs fiebl with them in the Streights of Cilicia, when by retisting back, be might have drawn them ( before they sware) into Defart places, and there have put Ri-vers and Mountains between his Enemies and him, and amongst the same so inclosed them, that they could who possibility bave sted away; and much less make any resistance: Wherefore ( he had ) be an resolved to retire back amongst the Sogdians. mbers

on of Omis should be as a Wall berwin in and his Enguine, till fuch thom as he might make A from power of the Nations thereabout ble a strong power of the Nations thereabout; wring very well, that the Chonismians, the Delians I Sacans, the Indians and Southiens, inhabiting and the River of Tanais, would come to his affince; of whom there was none to low, that any Maccdon, with the top of his head, could reach to his shoulders. They all in their drunkenness affented to him, affirming that only to be the wifest way: whereupon Beffur caused the Wine to be carried about plentifully, as if by a Sea of Drink he intended to arrive to Victory.

there was at that Featt one Cobares a Median. who in the Art Manick ( if it be an Art, and not ather a deceit of fome vain man) was more nota-te by his profession then by his knowledge, but therwise a moderate and an honest man; he mag a preamble before his discourse, said: He was no ignorant born much better it mere to be obedient to abore counsel, then to be a comfel-giver: For such as antifollowers of other mens judgments, ate fire to have no worse foreum then the rest: has such as are Authorized perficaders of any master, commonly property the own perils, and therewith delivered the Cup he had in his hand, and proceeded thus a

be Nature of May in this respect, may be called perfer because every one can see better into other ment airs then into his cam: Their comfels must need atmays full of penurbations, who take their own vices for fear is an impediment to some, define onto our, and to many a felf-lave of the thing that they is designed. I will not speak of pride, an impute it

therm that thing only to he all invented: The Diadem wonymic bead, it a great b shough it be burn maderately, the weig oppress the bearm. It is not fury cal-case, but wife and printent camples.

16

ty

to

0 h:

3-

ł.

M,

at

ıt 3-

ds to b to re

9-

ed M

ds

PAR

TO AN IN

tte

When he had looken thole words, he rehearted which is, That a fearful Dog doth back more the bise ; and that the deepest Rivers do was with noise; which things I have rehearted, because such prudence may appear as remained amongst Basserous. As he talked after this manner, as heard him wondred to what end his discount could tend : Then he began to thew his advice hich was more probtable to Befor then west

Alexanders celerity (quoth he) is fuch , that e come in a manuer to the entry of your Court; he can remove this Table: Tou that you will draw your affiliance from the Ri nais, and that you will put Rivers between you Exemise ) I would know, if he he not ab whereforces you healt fly. If the way he it muß needs be muß cafe and affured to over: And though you think fear doth a l, yet hope is more finific. It were the aks expedient to procure the favour of Mightiest and yield your Elf to the Steine wer be shall accept it your Enrique is none ter that way, then to remain still an Exem

on Juniores the betser depart therewish . For ye canon be a just King, till he receive the Kingdom of bire that is able to give it, and take it away. This is faith-ful consect, wherefore it is not necessary to delay the tention the of : The Horfethat is of Noble comage. will be governed by the shadow of a Rod; but the dull beast is not pricked forwards with the Spm.

Bellie, that was herce of nature, and well fet forwards with drink, became in fuch a fury at his words, that he could fearcely be withheld by his Friend from flaying Cobares, for he pulled out his Sword to have done the deed, and departed out of the Featt in a great rage: But Cobares in the turnult eleaped away, and came unto Alexander. Beffus had eight thouland Balirians armed attending upon him, who to long as they judged by the intemcrateness of the Air in thefe parts, the Macedone ould rather have gone into India then into Badris, were very obedient to his Commandment: But when they understood that Alexander was comtowards them, every one shrunk away, and look Beffer. Then he with a Band of his own nily, who were yet faithful unto him, passed the of Owne, burning fuch Boats as carried him over, because the same should not serve his Enemy ain following him, and assembled a new power stuones the Sogdians. Alexander, as it hath been laid before, passed Mount Caucasus; but for want of Corn, his Army was brought to the ex-tremity of hunger: Initead of Oyl, they were fain to Inoint themselves with a juyce, which they wrong out of Seseman, every measure whereof was alles Amphora, and fold for 240 Deniers; every like measure

measure of honey for 300, and of wine for 300, and yet of the same very little to be had. They have in that Country certain Vessels called Siry, which the Inhabitants do use to hide so privily, that they carnot be found except they be digged for within the earth. The Country-men bury there their Cornaster that manner, sor want what of the Souldiers were fain to live with Herbs, and such fish as they caught in the Rivers: But that kinde of sood failing also, they were inforced to kill their Carriage-Beasts, and lived with the field of them until they came into Bactria; the nature of the soil of which Country, is of sundry kindes. Some places are plently of Wood and Vines, and abundant of pleasant fruits the ground is fat, well watered, and sull of Springs, and some as barren.

7

112

id

n le

n

er

en or

X-

in

ey as

ike ure Those parts which be most temperate, are sowed with Corn, and the rest are reserved for feeding of Bealts. But the greater part of that Country is covered over with barren Sands, and withered up for want of mostlure, nourthing neither man, nor bringing forth fruit, but with certain windes state come from the Sea of Pontas: The Sand in the plaine is blown together in heaps, which seem atar off the great Hills; whereby the accustomed ways be formulated that he lighe of them can appear: Therefore such as do possess those plains; are to observe the lars in the night, as they do who sail on the Seas, by the course of them directing their journey: The nights, for the most part, he brighter them the days; wherefore in the day-time the Country is wilde and unpassable, when they can neither sinds any tract, nor any way to go in, nor mark nor hence where-

THE LITE AND DEATH SOOK VIII. puls, the Stars being hidden by the Mill: at men be passing, it overwhelmeth them with

Where the Country is temperate, it bringeth torth great plenty both of men and horfe; to that the Badrians ma thanke thirty thousand Horsemen.
Batria, which the Head-City of that Region,
bandeth under a Mountain called Parapaulius: The wer called Battera runneth by the Walls, whereof both the City and the Country take their

names.

Alexander being there in Camp, received Letters of Greece, how the Lacedemontane, and the whole Country of Felsponness, had rebelled against him. For they had not lost the Battel at such time as the Messengers were dispatched, that brought the news of their revolt. In the neck of thefe evil lidings, there came another present terrour, which was, that the Soythians inhabiting beyond the Rices of Langue, were coming to aid Beffus. At the are time allo, tidings came unto him of the Batter that Caramer and Erigite had fought with the arrange where Satribarzanes, that was newly revolted being Chief of the Country, feeing the Battel to remain equal on both fides; rid into the forefront, and plucked off his Fleimet, forbidding any of his lide, either to cast Ott, or firste a stroke; and there made a challenge to fight hand to hand, if any many doubt cause forth and prove his frenest.

man durst come forth and prove his strength.

Englise, Captain to the Macedon, was a mill man in thousacts of floracts, or thrength of

who could not bear the proud amogency of Base barzones, but hepping forwards, and placking o his Helmer, the wed his hoary buir: The daycome (quoth he) that I will either by the victory, or he my boneft deuth, make tryal what kinds of men Alexander bath to bit Friends and Souldiers, and with out more words he made towards his Enemy, could not be judged, but that both Armies had the ed their hands by appointment; for they gave b immediately on both fides, to let them have free feope, each party flanding in expectation what should become of the Challenger; for they could not but think themselves partakers of their adture. Satribarsanes hith charged his Staff, whi Erigins avoided by bending his head alide; but in the midfl of his Race, fruck the other with pear through the throat, fo that it came forth a at his neck. Sarribarzants, upon that fizzale I down from his Horfe; but yet made relitance. I fuch time as Erigins plucked the Spear out of the and, and thrust it again into his mouth; when himself out of pain ; suthered his knowle he will be the content of the content nate; had followed rather of the fity, the der benefits, and yielded then felips and ejoyced much at the good die best our their Resel But step step bere tige & Commercial States of the

h

n. N,

he

e-

TS

he

olt me

he

not him algorisating the spoil of his Enemy, as a newtrial of his Victory. Theresponds committed the Rule of Bastia to Applasive, where with a Gerislon he left his Carriages and with a power that was light, and fit for travel; he entred into the Defacts of the Sufitant, conveying his Army by nightest said many by

1

分けは以口

Let the want of water (that bath been declared before) desperation moved them to thirst before they had defire testrick. For by the space of four hundred surlongs, they found no water at all the vapours of the Sun, in the Summer scason, did so but the Land, that when it began to wax hot, is southed all things, as it had been with a continual fire: And then the light being somewhat observed by the Mist that tole out of the earth by the immoderate heat, caused the Plains to have an appearance of the Main Sta.

Their journey in the night feamed tolerable, because their bodies were former what refreshed with the Dow, and the cold of the morning: But when the day came and the beat sole, then the drought deving up all their natural humans, both their mouthband their bowels were inflamed with hear: Then their hearts falled, and their bodies fainted, being in such a condition, that they could nather hand, still, hope pass forwards. A few that were might by such as knew the Country, had gotten were, which refreshed them somewhat a buses the hear increased. In their delire, grow again to drink? These was no secreedy, but to give anough the formed on fiores.

Book VII. of Alexander the Great, 185 for drink was to tweet upon them, that it took away the fear of any thirst to come: But fuch as had speed by onlined in the water that they not become

greedily gulped in the water that they got, became to heavy, that they were neither able to bear their Armour, nor go forwards: so that they seemed most happy who had gotten no water at all; for such as had taken of it inordinately, were inforced by vo-

mit to put up the fame again. It brent

1

E.

軆

遊

C.

1

•

-

As Alexander carefully in this calamity stood with his Friends that were persuading him to have respect to himself, for that he only, and the greatness of his heart, should be some relief unto them in his adversity; there came two Souldiers, who going before with such as had taken up the Camp, had found water, and were carrying of it in Bottles unto their Sons, which were fore afflicted for want of drink behinde in the Army: When they saw the King, one of them opthed his Bottle, and filling a Cup, presented the water to the King, who receiving it at his hand, demanded to whom they carried that water; they said, to their Sons: Then he restured the Cup again full, as it was given him, and said a will not drink alone; for so trule cannot be divided amongst as all: Make you haste therefore to carry to have that you have notice water travels.

But Alexander travelled to long, that before night he came to the River of Orns: The more part of the Army, not able to follow for feebleness, were that behinde; to the intent therefore that fuch as allowed aftern might know where the Camp was, he caused a fue to be made on the top of an hill, and give orden; that when the Vaward had refreshing the might be meat and drink, they should be till

all their Bottles with water, and go back with the drank intemperately closed up, and they died immediately: The number of these men was greater, then ever Alexander loft in any Battel; but he would neither put off his Arms, refresh himself with meat or drink , nor eafe his body, but flood in the way where his Army paffed, not departing till the last man was come into the Camp. He watched all that night, and paffed it over in great trouble of minde; and the day that enfued brought no release of his care; for there were neither Boats to pass the River withal, nor could he make any Bridge, feeing there was no Wood growing nigh at hand. But at length he found out a device, whereunto only necessity did inforce him: They sook Beats skins, and finfled them full of Straw, whereupon they laid themselves, and so swimmed over the River. Such as first recovered the further fide, stood in order of Battel till the rest were passed over; by which means, in fix days, he conveyed o ver his whole Army.

Having passed the River of Ower, his purpose was to go forwards in the pursuit of Besser, till he understood such things as had chanced among the Sustainer. There was one Spitamenes, whom Besser chiefly honoured of all his friends a But there are no benefits that can stay a man given up to perjury, which in him was the more rolerable, intransfe he judged no mischief too great for him who had slain his Prince; for the revenge of Davins was a fair collour to his offence: But it is to be shought, that his present fortune was more envised, then his passections were hated!

BOOK VII. of Alexander the Great 29

he

25

n-

er,

he

elf

od.

ng

He

eat

bt

ats

ny

gh

ce,

ey

W,

red

bel

fed

O

oli

h

th

Tra all

ail col his

When it was known that Alexander had advanced over the River of Oxus, Spitamenes did affociate with him in counsel for his enterprise Dataphon nes and Catenes, whom Beffur specially trufted They agreed to the Deligne more readily then he would delire them; and taking to them eight young men that were strong of personage, cused this kinde of policy. Spitamines repaired to Beffin and getting him alone, informed him, that he he found out how Dataphernes and Catanes had con spired to deliver him into Alexanders hands where as (he faid) he had prevented them, while they wen about their purpole, having taken them both, and put chem falt in prison.

Beffer then thinking himself much bound unto him for lo great a good turn, gave him many thanks; and for the delire he had to be revenged of his Enemies, willed spitamenes to bring them to his presence ! He caused their hands to be bound beinde their backs, and to be brought by luch as re privy to their Confederacy. When they came Befor prefence, he beheld them with a full counance, and role up to have struck at them: But in they left their counterfeiting, and firaightys incloling Beffer about, bound him; he ftrugin vain; and pulled the Diadem from his tearing the Garments from his Back, which times belonged to his Prince whom he had

on he law himself in this condition, he conthat the gods had nighteoutly revenged his on s and perseived by the Plague they fent that they both favoured Darin, and were triends

292 The Life and Deeth Book VII.

friends to Alexander, whole Enemies evermore preferred his Victory. It is uncertain whether the
multitude would have affilled Beffer or not, but
that Spir mener had given forth, that it was done
by Alexanders appointment; whereby he put them
thro a fear, being yet doubtful of minde, and fet
Beffer upon an horse, on the which he brought him
unto Alexander, who in the mean seafon had chosen
out 900, such as by reason of their Age were not
meet for the Wars, and gave to every Horseman
two Talents, and to every Footman three thousand
Deniers. That done, he dispatched them home,
and gave thanks unto the rest, because they promifed to tarry with him until he had brought his Wars
to an end.

Beffier was prefented unto him at a little Town, whereof the Inhabitants are called Branchidans, who in times past, by the Commandment of Xernes, when he came out of Greece, were brought from Mi. lesum, and placed there, because that in his favour they had violated a Temple called Didyna. They had not altogether forgotten their Country Cufroms, but had mixed their tongue, which by lite tle and little degenerated from their own Language, and had not yet attained fully that Country fpeech. They received the King with great lov yeilding themselves and their City anto his will Whereupon he called to him the Milefants that fer-ved him in his Wars (who bare an ancient hatred against this Generation of the Branchidans ) and lett it to them to determine, whether they would fave them for the Country fake, or elle defiror them for the injury they had done them in times made that they both lay ined Parkers and word

lignas

Book VII. of Alexander the Great, 293

pall. But when the Milestens could not agree in Opinion, he said he would order the matter birdels.

n

'n

it

n

d

e,

i

rs

n,

5,

į.

ut

u-

r c,

ed ad

ld

The next day, when the Brandiebans came to meet him, he returned them all again into the City, and commanded the Footmen to inclose the City round, and entred with such as he had appointed for that purpole; and by a token given, he pur all to the Sword, and razed the City as a Receptacle of Traytors, they being without Armour in every place: Neither the Affinity of their Tongue, not any prayer or intercellion could mitigate their Enemies cruelty, who after the destruction of the Town did call down the Walls to the ground, fo that no memory of them doth remain. That done, they did not only cut down the Woods, wherein they used their Sacrifice, but allo plucked up the Trees by the Roots, that the ground might be left barren and de tolate. If the fame things had been done against the very Offenders, the revenge might have been hought sighteous: But to lay the fault of the Preecellors upon their Polterity, it is judged as a cruact, being there were not any of them then preor, that had ever teen Miletum, or done to Xere any kinde of pleature. As Alexander removed om thence, towards the River of Tangir, Beffier was ought before him, spoiled of all his Garments, hom Spitamenes led in a Chain put about his ck sa pleatant light to behold, as well to the Barrous, as to the Macedans. When Spiramener was me with him into Alexanders presence he laid bour brought here us to you the Killer of his own Maafter the fame manner tout be bimfelf gave the ple a wherein I have both revenged Datjus that

WAS

d Death Book weraignty. Let Darius open his eyes, and rife from Death, to behold this fight, who was unworthy of fuch an end, and worthy to behold and receive such a Spectacle as this.

After Alexander bad given Spiramenes thanks, he

turned hindelf unto Beffar, and faid :

What beaftly fury moved thee to take thine own Prince Prisoner, and afterwards to kill him, baving fo well deserved of thee? Of which thy doings, thou balt receive a sufficient reward, by usurping the coun-

He had no heart to make answer, or to excuse his offence, faving that he faid : He took upon bim to be King, because he might deliver him the pollession of the Country; which thing if he had omitted, some other, he laid, would have taken it in band. Then Aexander called for Oxatres, Daries Brother, whom se had placed about his person, and committed Befto his keeping, to the intent he thould cut off his East and Note, and hang him upon a Cross, causing his own men to shoot him through with Arrows, and to preferve his body that Birds thould not touch him. Ocurres promiled to perform all the rest, faving the keeping away the Birds; which for the defire he had to let forth Carenes cunning, he affirm ed that none could fo well keep them way as he who did shoot so assuredly, that he could strike the Birds flying in the Air: And though it was a cunping not fo much to be marvelled at in a Nation fo expert in shooting, yet it was greatly admired by such as did behold him, and it was great honour unto the doer. He gave rewards unto fuch as were the ApprehenBook VIII. of Alexander the Greet, ago

Apprehenders of Biffurs burdie deferred his punishment; because he migded to purhim to death in the same place where he slew Durius author has near

In the mean feafon, the Macedoni going a forraeing without order, were overthrown by the Line mics that cathel romning down the next Mountains: They took more then they did kill; and driving their prisoners before them; retired again uneo the Mountains. There were of them to the number of twenty thousand; who accustomed to live by Their using Slings and Bows in their Fight; whom while dlenunder did beliege; and in a Skirmille prellid neon the foremost o he was thicken with an Arrow in the midit of his Leg, where the Head did mid faith. The biacedone that were forrewful and thazed for their Kings hurt, carried himinto his Tene of whole departure sout of the field his Enemie were not ignorant. For they might behold all thins from the Mountains. The next day they fent Embuild downs to Alexander , whom he admitted to his referee, and unfolding his wounds ( whereby ought to diffemble the graines thereby he swed his Lagianto them: When they were comanded to in down, they faid, That bearing of his to they were as Coromful foricas his own Subjects. hick fooded mell be known's for if they could finde the perforthit did the deed, be should be delivered to his hands a They could not (they laid) but judge hem facrilegious perfons, who would fight with gods, whose number they supposed him to be; and theree were determined to yield themfelves. Thereupon a gave them affurance, and receiving again his men were taken prisoners, he admitted them to be That Subjects.

is

e of order in the series

ch

G

le-

m.

he

the

In-

ı fa

by

un-

en-

296 The tife and Death Book VII.

That done, he removed his Camp, and was carried in a Litter, for the bearing whereof, the Horfemen and Footmen contended rogether; the Horfemen alledged it to be their Office, because the King used to fight amongst them; and the Footmen alledged, that in as much as they used to carry the wounded Souldiers, they thought no reason their Office should be taken from them; chiefly when the King should be carried. Alexander therefore in so great contention of both parties, thought it a difficult matter for him to give sentence, because the judgment should be grievous to them that should be put by their Office; and therefore ordered that they should carry him by course.

called Maracanda, the Walls whereof were three-foore and ten furlongs about, but the Caffle was without any Wall: He fet a Garrison in the City, and then burned and destroyed the Country there-abouts. Embassadours came unto him thither from those Scyrbians which are called Avians, who had been free since the time that Cyrns was among them, but yet they shewed themselves then ready to be at his Commandment: They were known to be the most righteous people of all the barbarous Nations, as men that never used to make War, but when they were provoked; whose moderation and temperance in using of their liberty, made the Inserious equal unto the Superiours,

Alexander received them gently, and fent Fenidus, a Friend of his, to those Scythians that inhabited within Europe, to forbid them to pass the River of Tanais without his appointment; He had allow fecret Commillion to view the forustion of that Country, and to visit those Scythians that inhabited about Bospharus. He willed him besides, to chuse out a place upon the brink of Islands, where he might build a City, to remain as a fortself, for the subduing of the people that he intended to visit

ie ir

10

0

1-

ne

90

y

ty

p-

29

y, e-

m

ıd

ng dy

to

US

ut

nd ti-

12

at

he ad

fo

But this deligne was delayed by the Rebellion of the Sogdians, who had also drawn the Battrians to their part. There were of them feven thousand Horfemen, whose Authority the rest followed . For the lubduing of whom, Alexander caused Spiran wer and Catimes (the Betrayers of Beffer ) to be fent for , thinking by their means to bring the Country again to his obedience, and to suppress those ho had made this flit : But they who were judged meet to fray the Rebellion , and were tent for to that intent, were the chief Authors of that Rebellion; for they caused it to be notled abroad, that slexander had fent for the Battrian Horfemen of purpole to dettroy them all; which Committeon ( they faid ) being appointed to them, they would not execute, because they thought it too out an act to commit against their Countrynen and for that cause they could as ill bear Acanders cruelty then, as in times pall Beffus Treatomes the same termination of the Course stone

By this means, when the fear of death was out into their heads, they were casily firred to trims, to which before they were sufficiently inclined of their own mindes. When Alexander was districted of their doings, he willed Crateria to the Cyraphia, and he himself won another City

of that Country, by an allault that he gave to it on

all parts at once; and by a figne given, canled all the Children to be put to death, making the reft a prey for the Souldiers; This done, the City was razed to the ground, to the intent, that others by their example might be kept; in obedience. There were a valiant people, called Memacenous, who were determined to abide the Siege', not only for their honesties take, but also for that they thought it most for their Surety: For the mitigating of their wilfulness, the King sept unto them fifty Horsemen, to declare his Clemency towards such as submitted themselves, and how inexorable he was unto such as he overcome by force: Their answer was, That ibey neither doubted the Kings Promise, nor his Romer: But after their answer given, they lodged them without the walls; where entertaining them with ereat Chear until it was mid-night, they fee upon

Alexander was no less moved with this Act, then the cause required: He therefore made an assay upon the City on all parts at once; which he found surnished in such wise, that he could not take it at the first attempt: Wherefore he appointed Meleager and Perdicus unto the Siege thereof, who then were belieging of Cyrapolis, minding to spare the same; because it was builded by Cyras; for he had not so great admiration of any King that had Reigned in those parts, as of him and Semirami, whose magnanimity of minde, and great atchievements, seemed to him to exceed the rest: But the obstinate withiness of the Inhabitants stirred up his wrath; for when he had taken the City, he willed

seedons to Spoil it, who be moved against them; and ger and Perdicas. There was no more valiantly abide the Siege for both the hardielt of the Soul and the King was brought in frick in the Neck with a Rome failed him; and he was felled the Earth for the present fost his sense. T Army lamentee thinking he had been dead : Bu was invin against those things which put a fear; for without sarrying, he men in me relies his wound securning to the Fight : and after anger had firm up the eagerness he had of Nature, he renewe the assault more hercely then before. At length great piece of the Wall was overthrown by a Min at which he brake in , and pur the whole City Sack and Ruine. He fent from thence Menedea with 3000 Footmen, and 800 Horlemen, to City of Maracanda, which Spiramenes had new en, and put out from thence the Garrison of Macedons, the Citizens not confeating to But when they saw they could not withstand it was of necessity for them to agree to his

all

ras

by

re

bo

or

ht

tir

D,

ed

ch

at m-

th

DN

en

alt ad at

4en

ad.

ad

4,

he nis gd Alexander, in the mean season, came to the River to lanais, where he inclosed about with a wall so much ground as his Camp did contain, extending a compass 60 furlongs, and named the same City Alexandria. This was done with such expedition, that within seventeen days after the walls were miled, the houses also were builded, and the whole work was performed in a very small season; through

o and Death Book VI the contention amongst the Souldiers, who should perform his work first, when the same was divided into portions amongst them. The prisoners (whole Ranforms Alexander paid to their Takers) were appointed winhabit this City; the descent of whom, after to long time, are not worn out, such favour hath been shewed them in the memory of Alexander. The King of Scythia, whole Empire was then beyond the River of Tenais, judging that the fortifying upon the Rivers lide thould be as a Yoke to his Neck, did fend his Brother Carcafis with a great power of Horlemen to beat down the Fortification, and to remove away the Macedons from the waters fide : That River divideth the Ballrian from the Scythians of Europe, and is the limit which parteth Afia and Europe afunder : But the Countries that the Septhians do inhabit, do firetch as far as Thracia, and lye betwint the North and the Eaft, joyning with Sarmatia, and possessing part of it. The Country also that lieth beyond the River of After, is inhabited by them; their utmost bounds thretching to Battria, and to the furthest bounds of Afia Northwards, where are wonderful great Woods,

the civility of other Nations.

This being the first time that Alexander had to do with these people, when he saw that he had to enter into a War for the which he was not provided, his Enemies riding up and down in his sight, and he diseased of his wound, especially not having the use of his speech, which failed much by realize of his long abstinence, and the pain in his Neck.

and wilde Delarts: But fuch of them as bounded near unto Tanais and Bactria, wanted not much of

of Alexander the Great. Neck, he called his friends to counted, and deel red unto them , that he was not troubled with an har of his enemies, but with the inighty of the time, the Bactrians rebelling, and the Seyrbians provoking him, when he was neither able to flan upon the ground, nor firong enough to tide on Horfeback, nor yet in case to give advice or exhortation to his men : In confideration herefore of the doubtful danger in which he law himfelf involved. he accused the gods; complaining, that he was then inforced to lye fill, whole swittness before-time none was able to escape.

The danger grew to great, that his own men believed he had counterfeited his licknels for fears And therefore he, who fince the overthrow of Dethe had left Confultation with the Diviners and Prophets, turned himfelf again to the vanity and Superfittion of men, willing Aristander (unto whom was addicted most) that he should try out b critice what his faccels should be. The Custom them who were called Ampices, was to confiof the Energical the Bealt without the King, and make report of the figuification. In the mean lon, while they were learthing fecrets that way, willed Ephestion, Craserus, Erigins, and others of Friends, to draw near about him, lest by strainhis voice, he might break out his wound again, fand thus unto them;

be danger I am in , bath ca fed the time to ferve for mine Enemies, then for me : Necessity, I fee, y in the Wars, doth go before Reason; for it is given to men to chuse their own time: The than's are revolted, upon whose Shoulders yet we Itand.

ıld

ed

le

P-

m,

ur

X-

ras

he

ke

a

1-

m

145

ch

cs

as

ft,

of

ds

of

is, ed

to

to

1-

ıt,

a-by

Book VIL and purpoling to try what courage we are of by our penavious towards the Scythians. If we leave off with doubtful fortune, and not meddle with them, pobo of their own minde have provoked us, we shall, at our return, be had in contempt of them whom we ntend to visit. But if we shall pass the River of Tanais, and by the destruction of the Scythians, shew our felves invincible every where, who will then doubt but Europe will lye open, and give Obedience to us Victors ? He is deceived, that doth measure by any distance the bounds of glory we intend to pass: There is but one River that letteth us now, for bringing of our Power over into Europe; which if we shall effect, what an estimation shall it be for us, whiles we be subduing of Alia, to set up the Monuments of our Vidories, as it were, in a new World, joyning fo foon together with one Victory, that which Nature feemeth to have divided with forgreat a distance? but if me shall stay never so little, and give ground the Southians will wen come after us, and pursue w in the Rear. Are there no more but we who have paffed Rivers? There are many Inventions yet remaining among & our felves, whereby we have gotten many Viclories : But fortune of the War doth teach policy to fuch as are overcome, we have spewed a President of late, to frim over Kivers upon Bottles; which thing if the Scythians cannot do, the Bactrians shall reach them : It is but the Power of one Nation that now comes bagainst your all the others stand yet in a stay. to winderstand of our doings: So that by eschewing a Battel, we shall nowish War, and be compelled to reterve those blows, which lye in us to give to others The reason of my advice is manifest i But whether the Macedons Marcdons will Suffer me to use my own disposition, mach doubt; between fince I received this Wound, the base not ridden on Floricback, nor gote on Foot. I

you will follow me, my Friends, I am recovered, I bave strength enough to undure these things; and if she end of my life be at hand, wherein can I spend is

better Pout block mit a block

72,

u, pę

of

20

bt

US.

by

g-

all

es of fo

ire

id with man an of mach

920

TY4

TET

TI be 005

Thefe words that he spake, were uttered with a broken and weak voice, to that they could scareely be heard of fuch as were next him; But when his meaning was perceived; all that were prefent went about to divert him from fo rath an Enterprise: But Brigish wrought chiefly in the marter, who pe ving that his Authority could not prevail against the Kings obstinate minde, attempted to work him by Religion, which he judged of greater force : For he declared, that the gods were against his determinated nation, who had lignified great peril to enfue; if he passed the River: He faid he had understood atching by Aristander, who told him at his con into the Pavilion, what he had perceived in Rutrails of the Bealts. Alexander at thele words wonderfully would with anger and them te law the fecrets of that Religion brought he, which he thought to have kept fecter to alelt 1 and therefore cauled Erigius to go ande riftender to be called in unto him, whom he id in the face, and faid :

to the rather a private man then a King ! F sanded thee to facrifice, and thou buff declared the stion thereof to others, and not to me : For Eriby thy report, knoweth the secrecie appertaining to. But surely, I believe that through his own feat

and the species will be the second

be desified an interpretation of bimfelf : Therefore let me bear from the own mouth what then both found in the Entrails, to the intent that thou shalt not deny what them ball spaken we style war and grant this w

Ariffander theseupon was amazed, and looked pale, not able to answer one word for fear: But at length, the fame fear that made him hold his peace, inviced him to speak ; and left the prolonging of the Kings expectation, might provoke him unto further with , he answered : have as diff to heard so

I (aid (quoth he) that there was in the Enterprise great danger and difficulty; but yes that your attempt fooded not be in vain: there is nothing that I have perceived by my Science, that troubleth me famuch as the love I bear to your for I both consider your infirmity, and what a moment confifteth in your person, fearing you should not be able to endure the things

When Alexander heard him speak after that man-ner, he willed him to have considence in his sidelity, to whom Fortune had granted glory in greater things; and thereupon dismissed him. Afterwards, as the King was depating with such as he consulted with before, by what means he thould pass the Ris ver, Aristander came amongst them, affirming, that he had found the Entrails contrary to what he did before, with as likely figues of good fuccess as an that ever he faw; thewing them then as great can fes to rejoyce, as he did before to fear. But imme diately hereupon allexander received news that much impaired that felicity he was wont to have in all his proceedings . Menedemus being fent (as it has been laid before) to beliege Spiramenes, the Author

closed within the walls, and smiling belies to take some advantage of the Macedons, he laid an ambuscado to intrap them. There was a Wood through the which they should pass, very apt for the purpose, where he laid the Dahans, who were accustomed to carry two armed men upon one Horse, from whence they used to leap down courle; and because the swiftness of the Footmen was little infesious to the Horiemen, they troubled greatly the order of the Horiemens fight. Spin-news gave order to them, that when they bould enter into the Wood, they hould envison them and all fides a which they performed according to his

let in

My

ed at ce. he

ep

zfe spt tue 45 in-

an. egs 100 In-

liter ds (5) Ri. ha did in 311 De

Messedemin seeing himself inclosed on all pares, and not equal in number unto his Energies, relisted great while, crying out to the Sculdiers, that here remained no hope to them, being intrapped after remained no hope to them, being intrapped after them. chat manner, but, by making flaughter upon their chat manner, but, by making flaughter upon their chat manner, but, by making flaughter upon their chat, to receive the comfort of an honeff death, ademus rode upon a living Horfe, charging times upon his Enemies, whereby he brake their et, and made great flaughter, till high time as being laid at on all parts, received many finds, and fainted for want of blond. Then exhorted Hippiles, that was one of his knemds, to upon his Horfe, and cleape away and with word be swounded, and fell from his Horfe he ground. Hipalie might have not the ground. Hipale might have got away, but or he had lost his friend, his determined there to taking no other care but how to lose his file.

X -

with

306 . The Life and Peath Book VII

with the ruine of his knemies. Wherefore he put his Spurs to his Horle, and ran in amongst them, where he sought notably; and at length was

flain.

When the rest saw his everthrow, and the loss of their Captains, they recovered an Hill, where Spitaments did besiege them, thinking to subdue them for want of Victuals. There were slain in the Battel two Thousand Footmen, and three Hundred Horsemen; which miladventure Alexander with great policy kept secret, commanding them that departed from the Field, upon pain of death not to publish this D. seat. But when he could not bear out any longer a countenance contrary to his heart, he went alone to his Pavision which he had set of purpose upon the Rivers side. There he walked all night, devising with himself what was best to do and divers times he listed up his Tent to be hold the Fires in his Enemies Camp, thereby to conjecture their number.

when the day appeared, he put on a Corllet, and came forth among the Souldiers, being the his time they had feen him fince he received his hurt. They bore fach a veneration unto their King, that with his prefence only they put away the temen-brance of the fear which cauled them before to thrinks and rejoyced to heartily, that when the faluted him, the tears diffilled from their eyes, and earneitly delired the Fight which they had before to tuted. He took order there amongst them, that the Horsemen, and such as were of the Iquate Battel of Footmen shalls be carried over it Boats, and that

Book VIII. of Alexander the Great. 30)

lą.

S

le

1,

8

re

t-

ch

pt

m nis

ny

he

of

cd

10

be

to et

iii

ut

h

h

an for

Ba( an The business required not much more to be spoken, neither could the King say much more by reason of his infirmity a for the Souldiers went about it with such chearfulness of minde, that within three dayes they had finished twelve Thousand Boats. When all things were prepared in readiness for their Passage, there came twenty Embassadors of the Scythiaus riding by the Camp, who required that it might be reported to the King, that they had something in Commission to declare unto him.

When they were received into his Pavilion, and commanded to findown, they fixed their eyes coninually upon the Kings countenance; whereby it as thought, that weighing the greatness of is courage by his personage which they saw prethe Fame they heard of him. The wits of the chians are not rude, and without knowledge other barbarous Nations are For it is far any of them arrain to fuch Learn office for a Nation being always in exercise o Wars. Their words (poken unto Alexander a in memory; who though they differ from the ner of us, who live in more avil times, and c our felves to more humanity, yet the of the matter is not to be despiled, though the is of their Speech is rough. And therefore declare uncorruptly the words which the It of these Embassadors did speak after this

If the gods had given thee a Body according to the X 2

to be live and bearing 8006 VI wastriable defire of the minde, the world frould not be ble to receive thee, but thou shouldest touch the Orient was one hand and the Occident with the other; which thing once obtained, thy care should be to become equal to the gods. Thus then doft cover the thing thou art not able to compast: From Europe thou goest into Alia, and from Alia to Europe. It must come to pass, that if show doest overcome all mankinde, show must make war mirb Woods and Snows, with Kivers and wilde Beafts. What? art thou ignorant that Trees do grow till they are great, and then are plucked up from the root in a moment? He is a fool that coveteth fruit, and confidirect not the height of the Tree whereon it groweth. Take beed left whiles thou doll labour to attain to the top, show fallest with the Bough which show doest imbrace. The Lion bath been sometime the food of small Birds, and the Ruft doth confume the Iron. There is nathing to fure, that is not in danger of its inferiour, What have me to do mith thee? we never touched thy Country ... Is it not defired by no that live in the waste Woods to be ignorant what thou art, and from whence the comet? for we can neither be lubjed to any man nor do defire to rule over any creature. And because you shall not be ignorant of the state of our Nation, we have cersain gifts in proper to us: as the yoak of Owen, the Plough, the Spear, the Bow, and the Boal, which are the things that we use both with our Friends, and anaigh one Enemiers We give wate Friends of the fraits got with our labours. With the Boal we facrifice mine regto the gode's with the Bow we Strike our Enes of an off, and with the Spear near at band. After that fort in times past we overcame the King of Scythis one afterwards the King of Pertia and Media, making 11 1 3-

of Alexander the Great making the way open to us into Egypti. But thou with doest glory, that their art come so be a perjuster of Thieves, art a rubber of all Nations that their comily amongst. Then hast taken Lydia, possessed Syria, enjoyed Perha, and half the Bactrians under thy power. I has balt vifited the Indians, and now tretcheft forth thy revenous bands unto our cattel. If by doll thou cover that wealth which causeth thee to be poor? I hon art the first of all men who with abundance bast prepared bunger for thy felf, and the more than bift, the more greedily doct thou cover the things thou half not. Dock then not remember how long thou didit stay about Bactria? AND whiter thou didit go about to subdue them the Soge 1891 began to rebell. Thus IV ar doth grow unto thee out to Actorys for be then never so great and puissant above any orbor, yet there are none that can endure to be governed oy a ftranger. Paff non Tanais, thou fatt perceive s readth it bravesh and yes thou shall never overtake the chians, whose poverty is swifter than the Army eargabe foil of lomany Nations For when thou to H me w to be afar off shou hall fee us within the Camp blive wifined we follow and flor away. I bear that defarts are fourned by the Greek Proverbs, we such er defarts and places unhabited then Cities & al Countries. Therefore hold than thy furence fairs for is fiele, and connot be kept against ber will. Fall no counsel that is good, especially when the time doth eve. Put a bridle to the felicity and though als envernit tetter We say that fortune is without shes O than she thouly hands and wings; but when the parterb firth band, the will not fuffer per wings to be touched. If on art a god, give benefits to mortal men, to take nor w y the commodities they have already-If then art a man cont -

1

t

1

5

.

y

a

9-1

b.

be

2-

all

ic

er.

by

ste

rce

IH.

ion ive

be

are

nd

t be

fice

He-

Af-

CY-

lia,

ing

consider thing own estate, is a foolishness to remember that things which cause these to forget the self. Such as by War show makelt there enemies, by peace thou mayest make thy friends. The most firm friendship is amongst them that he equal; and they feem equal, who have not yet made any trial of their Force. Take beed thou takest them not for thy friends, whom thou didst subdue and bring to subjection. There is no friendship between the Lord and the Slave: and in peace the law of Arms is observed. Think not that the Scythians do confirm their friendship with any oath's for they abink they swear in keeping of their faith. The custome of the Greeks is to justifie their doings by estling their gods to witness: but me acknowledge Re-ligion to confist in faith. They that do not their due reverence unto men, decrive the gods. Think not shok Friends to be necessary unto thee, of whose good Il those sodie need to doubt. Those mayest use u as Keepers both of Europe and Alias for me found joys with Bactria, but that Tanais doth devide un. beyond Tanais our Dominion firetcheth fo fur in Thia Macedon. Confider therefore, whether is be neteffar for thee or no, to receive us as Friends, or to visit in Enemies to thy Empires.

These were the Scytbians words; to whom the

King made Anlwer;

That he would both use his own Fortune, and then Counfel that udvifed bim well. He would follow bi Fortune (be faid, ) because be bad great confidence it; and other mens Counfel because be would do nothing unadviscally, nor upon the sidden.

Thereupon he dismissed the Embassadors, and

imbarked

imbarked his Army in the Boats he had prepared. In the foreparts of the Boats he fet field as had Targets, willing them to kneed upon their knees for their more lategoard against the thor of the Arrows. And those were placed behinde them who had the charge of the Engines, being both before and on both ides inclosed with armed men. The test that stood beyond the Engines, being armed themselves, defended with Targets such as rowed. The same order was also observed in those Boats that earned over the Horsemen. The greater part drew their Horses after them by the rems, swimming at the stem of the Boats; and such as were carried upon trustes silled with straw, were defended by the Boats that rowed betweet them and their Eneamies.

軍班班院

014

be-

m

1115

ey

756

al-

due

rofe

004

1

ayl ayl igg

and

Alexander with such men as he had chosen to be about his Person, sirst lanched from the Land, and directed his course to the surther side. The Soy-thang came against them with their Horsemen in order of Battel, standing upon the bunk of the surther shore to oppose their landing; whose show their shore to oppose their landing; whose show their cause of sear in their passing over; for the Boat-masters were not able to keep their course against the sorce of the stream. And the Souldiers swaying to and sro, for the doubt the had to fall in the water, troubled the Maxiners in the doing of their office. By reason whereof the Macedon's could not have scope to cast their Darts with any force; taking more case how to place themselves out of persisten to annoy their enemies. Their languages stood them in great fread, which seldome

X 4

did

919 The Life and Deark Book VIII.

did shoot in vain against their Enemies that shood ng. When the Seyrhians faw them near the shore, they did shoot an infinite number of Arrows into the Boats, fo that there was not almost any Target that had not many heads flicking in it. At length the Boats arrived at the land, then the Target-men did rife upon their feet; and having more scope and furer footing, threw their Darts more certainly and with greater force: whereby perceiving their Enemies to thrink and rein back their Horles, they leaped cheafully unto the land, one exhorting and encouraging another, and vigorously purlised them, when they law them to fall out of array. By that time Alexanders Horsemen who had assembled themselves in Troops, brake upon their Enemies, and put them to great diforder. In the mean feaion, the rest being detended by them that were hehting, landed, and prepared themselves to the Alexander with the flourness of his courage supplied the impotency of his body. His voice could not be heard when he spake and exhorted his men ( the fear of his wound not yet closed ) but all men might see him fighting; wheretore every one used the office of a Captain in giving exhortation unto his fellows, and ran upon their Enemies without respect of their own lives. Then the Scythians could not endure any longer the countenance, the force, nor the cry of their Enemies; but being all on Horfiback fled away upon the Spur, whom the King purised eighty burlongs, notwithstanding that with great pain ne endured his infirmity. When his heart tainted, he commanded his men that they fhould

Book VII. of Alexander the Great, 323

thould follow ftill in the chafe as long as the day latted; and having not litength to fuffain any further travel; he returned into his Camp to set

himfelf.

od d

re,

to

et

th

en nd

nd

e-

ey ag

3y

ed

S,

a-

re

16

30

ce

is 11

e

n

73

1

e

ę

¢

1

The Macroons in their pursuit palled the bound of Baechie, in monument of whom there were great stones let up of equal distance, and high trees whole Bocks were covered over with Ivy But no bounds could be a flay to the Macedons, being carried for wards in their fury; for it was midnight octore the returned again to their Camp, who having kille many, and taken a great number of priloners; di drive before them a thouland eight hundred Horl There were flain of the Mucedone, threefcore Horl men, of the Footmen one hundred, and about on thouland burt. This enterprise with the fame of th Victory falling in to good a featon, kept the greatest art of Affa in obedience, which were at the point have rebelled : For they believed the Seythians awingble; who being vanquished, they jud Nation able to withfland the power of acedons

The Sacase after this Victory sent their Emballadours unto Alexander, offering themselves to come
under his obedience; to the doing whereof, they
were not so greatly moved with fear of his force,
as they were with report of his elemency used torandsche Seytbians, after he had discomfitted them;
as he delivered home all the prisoners without
autome, to witness unto the world, that he made
was with those heree Nations to show his power
and his vertue, and not for any malice; or so
thew his wrath upon them. That was the cause

and in that

The Life and Death Book VII.

It he to gently received the Emballadors of

Sature, causing Excipense to accompany hem, who being in the first flower of his youth, ras for that respect in great favour and familiadeftion, but inferiour to him in pleasanmels of a constitution of the state of the

After this, Alexander giving order to Crateria to follow him by small journeys with the greater part of his Army, he himself came to the City of Maraanda, from whence Spitamener who heard of his oming was fled into Bacteria. The King therefore aking great journeys four days continually, came nto the place where, under the conduct of Menedeundred Horlemen. He cauled their bones to be eathered together, celebrating their Funerals after heir Countrey manner. By that time Oroterns ntent he might punish with the Sword all stich as had rebelled, he divided his power into divers parts, commanding them to burn in every place where marched, and to kill all the children.

The Countrey of the Sogdiant for the most part walte, by reason of the great defacts that Aretch overthwest the Countrey. The River called Politication patient almost through the length of it, and runnetted space violently in a narrow channel, and then is received into a hole of the Earth; from thence it puffeth underneath the ground, the course of it being manifelt by the noise of the water that may be heard, and yet on all the ground under which to great a River doth run, there doth not appear any

moisture put forth.

Book VII. of Alexander the Great.

of

ny

h,

12-

ed

of

to

irt

4-

his

orę ne

de-

be

er M

he

as ts,

316

art

ch

el!

m

rfe

nat

ich

my Of

of the Captives that were taken among Nogdians, there were thirty of the mon Non brought to Alexander; who, understanding by an interpreter; that by the Kings commandment th should be parto Execution, beginns men in mich to fing and dance! and by a certain warmen thorson of their bodies, expressed a great joyiulness of the minde Alexander marvelling that they too their death with fuch flournels and magnanimity of heart, called them onto him, enquiring why they expressed to great a joy when they had death belo their face? They answered, That I they had been put to death by any, except by such a one at was, they should bave taken their death forrowfull But now feeing they should be restored to their Pa developers by a Ring that was Conquerous of all No stone, they rejayeed in their bonest death, as the then marvelling at their magnanimity, I enquire is you ( quoth he ) if you can be content to frot, an become Friends to bim, by whose benefit you the ceive life ? They faid, That is they never were be Enemies, but as they were provoked by occas fon of the Wars, even soif he would make an expert ment of them rather by a benefit then an injury bey would labour not to be overcome in good will, nor in doing any thing that pertained to their diery. Masked what pleage they would give of their pro-16 3 They answered, Their Lives they had re wed should be their Pledges, ready to be yielded igain when it was required. Therein they brake o promile : for fuch as returned home into their countrys, kept the people in good obedience

And four of them that were appointed to be of the Kings Guard, gave place to none of the Macedons in

ove or affection towards their Princes

When he had ordered all things among the Sog-lians, he left Bencolaus there with three thousand men of War, and removed into Badria; from whence he commanded Besse to be carried to Eebatana, there to suffer death for the killing of Darius. About the fame time Prolomens and Menidus brought three thousand Footmen, and a thousand Horsemen of mercenary Souldiers; and one Alexander came to him out of Lycia with three thousand Footmen, and five hundred Horsemen. Asclepiodorus had levied the like number out of Syria. Amipater sent eight thousand Greeks; amongst whom there were tive hundred Horlemen. When he had thus recruited his Army, he went about in every place to quiet those firs that had been raised up by the Rebellion; and having slain them that were the Authors and Beginners thereof, the fourth day he came to the River of Oxec, which being a water unwholfome to be drunk (because it is troubled and full of mud) the Macedons fell to digging of Wells; and when by digging deep they could finde no water, a Spring suddenly appeared in the Kings Tent, which, because it was not found at the hist they seigned it to come by miracle. Therewith the King was well pleafed, and contented men should believe that the same was sent by the gift of

When he had paffed the Rivers of Ochus and Diess, they came unto a City called Marginia, near unto the which he choic out places for the building of fix Book VII. of Alexander the Great.

'n

d

C

C

IE

e

f

0

d

it

te

d

£

d

e

f

•

0

le

n

if

ſ.,

0

X ; Towns, whereof he planted two towards the South, and tour towards the Haft; every one different not far from another; to the intent; that their mutual affiltance in time of need should not be far to feels. They were all scituate upon high hills, as bridles to keep under those wilde Nations: But now they have forgotten their original, and are subject to those they were wont to tulk.

The King having subdued all the Country, one Rock only remained, which Arinages a Social and taken with thirty thousand armed men, and fine withed the fame with Victuals for two years. The same Rock was thirty surlongs in height, and an hundred and fifty in compass, being in all particles and broken, having one streight path only to puls up unto it. In the mid way to the cop, it had a case, which was narrow and dark in the entry but by little and little it waxed wider, and had more lodgings within for a great multitude, and was belides so full of Springs," that when they met together, they can down the Rock like a great multives.

Alexander beholding the strength of this place, and the dissibility to win it, determined to depart row thence! But there entred suddenly into his cart a delite to weary Nature, and to work against to power. Yet before he would attempt the ortune of any Siege, he sant Copbes the Son of trabasis, to perswade them to surrender it. Alexander, upon trust of the strength of the place, misseed in all things amogantly, but especially in that he asked if Alexander could flies words being reported to the King, did put

put him in such a sure, that straightways he called for such as he used to consult withal, declaring the pride and presumption of Arimanesks, and after what manner he had scorned him. But bearty (he said) be would devise such a Policy, that he would make him think that the Macedons had wings: He commanded therefore that out of the whole Army they should chuse out and bring to him three hundred of the most light young men had been accustomed to drive bealts amongs the Rocks, and fixeight paths of the Montains: whereupon they brought such to the Ring, as both for lightness of body, and hardmoss of heart were most meet for that purpose; unto whom he said;

The fellows of mine own Age, with you have I want Gites that were counted inexpugnable, and have passed the tops of Mountains covered continually with more. With you I have gone through the strights of Cilicia, and have without meaninest softwared the valence of the cold, whereby I have experience of you, and you of me. The Rock you see bath but mic entry, which our Enemies do observe, the rest they neglet. They keep no Watch but towards our Camp. If you diligently search, you shall find some may to bring you to the top. Nature hath made nothing so high, but that it may be attained to by the industry of man. In parting things in proof, whereof others have despaired, we have gotten Asia into our possession which when you have taken, you shall give a token to me by setting up some white Chath. Too shall see me then come forwards with my gower, and turn the

exemies from you remarks me. He had been Talent's for a reward who doth recover the 300 and be that getteth up next shall have one lest; a am affired you regard not fo much my liberalitie

my favour.

155 .

3

П

t:

f.

t

5 6

Ŗ,

9 )

K.

e

C

y ...

y since e

When they had heard the King locak after that manner, they imagined the thing done; an departing out of his prefence, they prepare frong Ropes and fron Hooks, which they taften to the Rocks, and so climbed up. The Kil brought them about the Rock, whereas it frem least steep and most plain to mount upon . A in the fecond Watch willed them to past it wates with good speed. They being surp with two days Victuals, and armed only w swords and Spears, at first went forwards with ne heepnels of the Rock, forme took held of the token crags to life up theme ves and louic l dening their Hooks on the Rocks, clumbe the Ropes: They were compelled to refrab vers times, and lo confunce that day in the

When they had palled many difficult uner labours appeared, the height of the ming to grow more and more. W led either of their hold or of their for a milerable thing to lee how they dong, hewing by their mil-foreur ole to others what wie likely to c withflanding at length, through ultes they got up unto the top, who

with the travel of their continual labour, and

ome with the hurts and makins they had received, they slept all that night amongst the wild and rough Rocks, unmindful of the peril they

were in.

When it was day, they awaked out of their deep leep, and beholding the valleys underneath them, ney were ignorant in what part of the Rock fo reat a multifude of their Enemies should lies. But tength, when they perceived by the smoke in what lace they were, they upon the points of two spears t up the ligne that was appointed them, and found that in their coming up they had loft two and thir-The King being careful not to much for the dete he had to win the Rocks, as to lave thole whom had exposed to so thanifest a danger, stood all beholding the top of the Mountain; and when e darkness of the night took away the prospect of the eyes, he departed to refresh his body. The next day before it was full light, he perceived the white Cloth set up on the top of the Rock; but e variety of the Air, the Sun beginning to arise yer clouded, caused him to doubt a while hether his fight had failed him or not. But when it was full and open day, it was manifefuly appa rent; and all doubt was removed. Then he called copber, by whom he had attempted their minds before, willing him once again to exhort them to better advised; and it to be that in the crust o neit strength, they would not submit themselves, at then he should shew to them those Souldies at had taken the Rock over their heads. When opher came thither; he began to perswade Arimazil

maxes to give up his thrength, thereby to win the kings favour, and not inforce Aldrander to flay in the Siege of a Rock, having to many weighty its fairs in hand: But he found him more obtilizate and proud then he did before, and willed Cophes to depart, and move him no more on that subject. Then he took Arimaxes by the hand, alid required him to go with him out of the Cave! When they were come where they might look about, he shewed him those that were gotten to the top of the Rock; and scorning then his pride, he asked of

0

ıt

at 15

nd

remilled he be

palec

de

ves,

hen

Art

ZU

By that time the Trumpets were blown in the Macedons Camp, they might hear the Alarm that was made in the Army, which, as many vain and trifling things are wont in the Wars to grow to great effect, so it was the cause that they yeilded themselves; for fear so troubled them; that they could not consider the small number that were over their heads, but called Coppes again in great rathe, who was departed away, and sent with him into Alexander thirty of the chief men, authorized o yeild up the Rock, with composition to depart in

him, whether Alexanders Souldiers had gotten wings

But Alexander, notwithstanding that he doubted test his Enemies discovering the sewnels of his new, might put them to distress; yet trusting in he selicity of his own Fortune, and offended with the pride of Arimager, would agree to no outdition, but that they should yell simply. As imager thereuposi despairing more of his state, their

The Dife and Death Book VIII. then he had cause, descended down to the Camp with the chiclest of the Nation that were of Kin to him: All whom Alexander caused to be scourged with Rods, and then to be crucified at the foot of the Rock. The multitude that yielded, with the money that there was taken, were given in gift to the Inhabitants of the new Cities; and the Rule of the faid Rock was committed unto Artabasia, with the Charge of the Country thereabouts. which and the two control of the hearth

To bales of a sales of the transfer of the sales of the transfer of the transfer winds ( him) ( Appendix of the second the street have the street blown in the Margarlan Carting they under the sale Alexander Las diet facts de literies engre des la lecte en or work questions produce his or create that a Labbay and the Comment of the State of the State of

the self and the self of the self blue warfer the feet of the first of the facility of the feet of Includes and he seems to the seems of well a bearing of the second of the s of the property of the second second

and his descriptional applications of the contract of the THE art partition and make the least the state of the state o banking and a strike a duling and present the on o talk the law of free telepholes described the contract A. C. T. C. and C. Jahren C. J. Commission of Commissions court authorized and harmon and ment to the Mr. and Friend and American April

and .

## 多数白色色线线

## THE EIGHTH BOOK

e

0 £ h

## QUINTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Ads of Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.

Lexander having won this Rock with greater Fame then Glory, because his Enemies remained in no place certain, it was necessary for him to toparate his Power; and to he divided his Army into three parts: He gave the Charge of the one int to Epheficon, to Cenun the other, and took the and part unto himself. His Enemies were not all one Opinion; for some of them seeing their opofition could not avail, yielded themselves before e Fight; to whom he gave the Cities and the ands of those that continued still his Enemies?

But the Outlawries of Battria, with eight hundred orfemen , walted the Villages of the Maffagetes; or the redress whereof, Attinas, Governous of that ountry, went against them with three hundred orfemen, not knowing that his Enemies lay in ait for him; who planting their Ambushment in Wood joyning to a great Plain, had appointed fome

324 In The Life and Death Book VIII.

fome men to drive Cattel, thereby to draw their Enemies, with the greediness of the prey, within danger of the Ambush. When the Souldiers of Attinus law the Drivers of the Cattel, they pursued them without order; so that when they were passed the Wood, where the Ambushment lay, their Enemies brake out upon them (not fearing any such

danger) and flew them every one.

The fame of this Overthrow came immediately to Graterus, who drew thither with the Horfemen: But the Massagetes being fled before his coming, he flew a thousand of the Dabans that took their part; whereby the Rebellion of all the Country ceased. Thus Alexander having subdued the Sogdians, returned to Maracanda, whither Berdes (whom he had fent to the Scythians inhabiting about Bofphorus ) came to him with Embassadours of that Country. Phratarus alfo, who had the chief Rule of the Massagetes and Dahans ( which Nations were joyned by Affinity together) fent certain Messengers to Alexander, offering to be at his Commandment. The Seythian Embassadours made request, that Alexander would marry their King Daughter; and if the Affinity pleased him, that he would fuffer the Princes of the Macedons to en terpinto Marriage likewife with the Noble-men Dughters of their Country, promiting that th King should come in person to visit him. He hear sently both the Embassages, and still continue in that place, till Epbeftion and Artabafus can unto him; and then joyning his Power again to gether, he advanced into the Country that is called Baxaria Defe There

## Book VIII. of Alexander the Great, 325

There is nothing more effected in that Nation. then to have great Droves of wilde Beafts inclosed in Parks, which are very pleafant, and full of Springs: Those Parks are inclosed in Walls, and Towers builded within them, to be Lodges for the Hunters. There was one Park in that Country, that had remained unhunted, during the time of four mens Ages, into which Alexander entered with his whole Army, chafing the wilde Beatls in every quarter. Amongst the rest, there was a Lyon of a valt bulk that came running towards Alexander, which when Lyfimachus ( who afterwards was King), flanding next to Alexander ) perceived, he stapped before him , to receive the Lyon with his Hunting Spearer But Alexander plucked him back, and willed him to withdraw, faying, That be was able to kill a Ly m as well as Lysimachus. For you are to hadet? and, that this Lyfimachus, on a time hunting in lyria, killed by himself alone an huge Lyon, but et he was torn to the very bones under the left oulder, and put in great danger of his life; which ing that which Alexander meant, he performed ith his Sword no less then he promised; for he idid t only receive the Lyon, but killed him with one oke: Thereupon the Fable did rife; how Alexan. hould have cast Lysimachue to a Lyon. Wild money

But though Alexander his chance was good here, yet the Macedons knew, that by the Guttom of Country, he should not have hunted on Food thout the chiefest of his Nobility and his leads about him. He kilked within that leads to may be will be will be and the Army becausing afterwards to Macadada.

knowled

1

y

10

ir

ry

g-

les

ng

urs

t he

ich

et-

his

ade

ng

that

en

nen

th

ear

nut

can

n to

There

Yз

Artabalis

126 The Life had Deark .. Hook VIII.

Areabafus there excusing himself by his Age, that he was unapt for the Rule of that Country, Alex-ander committed the fame to Client, being the man that defended him with his Target, when he was fighting bare-headed at the River of Granike, and there cut off Rhofaceris hand, that was in a readiness to strike the King: He was an old Souldier to Philip his Father, and notable by many feats of War that he had done: Hellanice, his Sister, was A-lexanders Nurse, whom he loved no less then his own Mother: For these causes, he committed the strongest part of his Empire to his fidelity. The King that purposed to set forward his journey the next day, made the same night a Solemn Banquet, wherein (being too great a Boaster of himself) when he was hot with Wine, he began to fet forth the Acts that he had done, in such fort, that his words offended the ears of fuch as knew them to be icho om la ik

The Ancient Men kept filence, until fuch time as he began to deface the Acts of Philip his Father, vaunting the notable Victory of Cheronese to be his own deed, the glory whereof (he said) was taken from him by the malice and envy of his father: For he aliedged, how in the Mutiny which role between the Macedone and the Greek Souldiers, when Philip lay hart of a wound which he received at a fray, and thought he could be no otherwise secure, then to counterfest himself to be dead, he defended his body with his Buckler, and slew them with his own hand, who ran upon his Father to have killed him; which act (he said) his Father never gladly would confess, not ever could abide to acknowledge

Book VIII. of Alexander the Great.

ï

T f

5

e

ie ie

t,

h

15

25

ij

115

04

en at

64

he

m

VER

ac-

knowledge his fafeguard to come by his Son. He also declared; how after the journey he made by himself into Illyria; in writing unto his Father, he did afcribe the victory unto himself, having over-thrown his Enemies when he was away. He faid, that in his Opinion it deferved but small commendations to make a journey into Samothraeis, when Asia ought to have been spoiled and burnt: Nor he thought no man worthy of praise indeed, but such as do so great Acts; as may exceed all mean credit.

The young men that were present, were glad to hear these words; and such other like; but they were ungraceful to the Ancient, especially for Ph the lake, under whom they had long ferved. Then Cline, who likewise was not very lober, turned to men as were beneath him, rehearling fome veries of the pides, whereof the King might rather hear the found then the words: The effect of them was, Dat the Greeks did evil, who in the Monuments peir Vittorier, did subscribe only the Names of Kings, who usurped that Glory unto themselves, beb other men did win by fleedding of their own and. Alexander therefore judging his words to we been worse then they were, inquired of such were next him, what Cliens faid: But when they tot lilence, Client with a louder voice, rehearfed norder Philip's Acts, and the Wars he made in rece, preferring them before any Acts done lince at time: Whereupon there did rife a contulion tween the young men and the old. But the King orcing a patience himself, when he heard Clideface his praise, conceived a wonderful wrath

¥ 4

in

his minde: Yet it learned that he would have edled his pallion, if Cliego would have made an end of his prefumptuous talk. But when he would not ceale, he gave occasion to alexander to be further moved.

Gline then did proceed to far forth, that he durst defend Parmenio his case, and preferred the Victory that Philip won of the Athenians, before the destruction of Thebes: And going further and further, not only through drunkenness, but even by flowardness of a contentious minde, at length

he faid:

If we must die for thee, Clitus is nat the first; fon they receive greater remards of thy Victory, that can of hamefully deface thy Fathers memory. The Comtry of the Sogdians is given unto me, that bath so often rebelled; and now is not only nusubdued, but such o one as by no means can be brought to subjection: I am placed among those wilde Beasts that be of so uncivil a disposition. But I could pass over things pertaining unto my felf, if the Souldiers of Philip were not despi-fed, forgetting, that if the old Athanias had not tuened again the young men, when they gave over the fight, we had yet flicked about Alicarnazus: How is it then that Alia is conquered with these young men? But I fee it is true what your Uncle faid in Italy ; He chanced upon Men, and you upon Women.

There was nothing that Client spake or did in his fashness, that moved more the King, then the Honourable mention made of Parmenio : Yet for all that he concealed his grief, and did no more but command him to avoid out of the place, and spake no other words, faving that he faid: If then talks

el a little longer. I think then wile appraid me with the saving of his life, whereof in very deed he would often advance himself. But notwithstanding that the King had willed him to depart, yet tarried he still, and would not rise: and therefore such as sate next him, took him by the arms, and led him away, blaming him, and giving him exhortation to use better words. When Clinus saw himself drawn forth against his will, anger was added to his drunkenness, and he then declared aloud. That is was be who with his Breast defended the Kings Back; but now when the good service was past, the very memory of the Benefit was bated: And therewith he laid to his

y.

h

11

11

-

b

778

•

7

なっ

278

11-

his

0-

all

out

lk-

est

Charge the death of Attalus, and how he mocked the Oracle of Jupies whom Alexander claimed to be his Father, and faid, that he told him better truth then his Father did.

At those words the King was flirred unto fo much passion, as he could scarcely have been being fober: But having his senses overcome with drink, he role fuddenly from the Table. His Friends were mazed, and throwing down the Cups for halfe, ofe to expect the end of what they faw him go about in so much fury: He took a Spear out of the hand of one of his Guard, and would have fricken liver, as yet raging with the intemperance of this longue; but he was Hopped by Ptolomeus and Perdieas, who took him in their arms, and stayed him for all his firiting; and Lysimachus and Leonatus took away the Spear. Then he called out to his Guard for aid, crying out, that he was taken by his next Friends, as Darins was of late; and willed the Trumpet to be blown, that the arraid msp might affemble

timete fell down upon their knees; requiring him this he would not perfevete in his wrath; which he to finddenly had conceived; but rather respite his displeasure, seeing that he might the next dry much better order the business. But his wrath prevailed to much; that his ears were shut up from all counsel, and ho tak in a sury amough his Guard, plucking a Spear out of one of their hands; which ouce got, he stood in the Entry through the which they must needs pass that supped with him.

When all the reft were come forth ! Clitur came forth without light; and because Alexander could not discern him; he asked to be was? But that was done to terribly; that the cruelty of the aft he went about, appeared in his voice. Bur Client feeing the King in a fury, had no respect how much be had offended him before, but made answer, that be mar Clitus, who was coming from the Kings Banquet: With that word he firake him through the body, to that he fell down flark dead, and Alexander was all beforinkled with his blood; Go som (quoth he) to Philip, Parmenio, and Attalus. Herein it may be feen, that Nature provided evil in the disposition of man, who, for the most part, cannot confider to well the things to come, as those that be past: For after that Alexanders ire was affivaged, and his drunkenness past, weighing advifedly the foulness of the act he had done; he confidered then, that though Cliene had used over-much liberty in his talk, yet he ought not to have flato to Noble a Man of War; yea, and the laver of his own

while, though he was allemed to confe w that he, being a King, had used the d Office of an Executioner, in revenging with a hughter the liberty of words, which might been imputed unto Wine. When he behold blood of him, whom a little before he had build to his Banquet, to run over all the Enery; and the the Guard were to aftonied and amazed, that the food afar off, and durit nor some near, his solithen he placked the Spear out of the dead Corple. and would have thrust it into his own body, if the Guard had not come, and with great firlying, wren Came on of his hands. That done, they too in up, and carried him into his Lodging wh ie fell down flat upon the ground, filling all the Court full of the terrible noise of his tamentation: To tare his Face with his Nails, and required such as were about him, that they would not fuffer him to ve in fach a thame and dithonour. In these requests confumed the whole night, and caused a dili-nt learch to be made, whether it were the anger of e gods or no, that had cauled him to commit fo inous an act. At length it was found, that the trly Sacrifice, due unto Baechus, was not celebrated the fit time : and therefore it appeared maniby, that it thould be the wrath of the gods that moved him to commit Murther upon eating d drinking. But the greatest thing that increahis forrow, was the amazement of his friends. en he faw them thrink from him, and that none them, after that deed, would gladly use such faligi communication as they did before. Then he perceived

10

is

m is

h

ae

ld at

ie

e-:h

25 h

d

s. il

t.

se.

[-

1-

h

0

is

perceived that he should live as a wilde Beastrain a Defart, both srighting others, being also assaid himself. The next morning he commanded the Body, bloudy as it was, to be brought into his Chamber, which when he saw lying before him, he fell on weeping, and said:

Shall I thus requite my Nurse, whose two Sons were sain for my sake at Miletum, by the killing of her Brother (that was her only Joy) at mine own Board? What refuge shall that wretched Woman have? I was all the comfort that did remain to her, and now be shall never with joy behold me. Shall It, the wicked Killer of my Preservers, return into my Country, when I shall not be able to present my hand unto my Nurse, without the remembrance of her misery and shame?

When he could put no end to these complaints, the Body was taken away, by the appointment of his Friends. After he had stayed three days thus up in his Chamber, sorrowing after this manner, the Squires, and such as had the keeping of his person, seeing him given obstinately to death, brake into his Lodging, and with great pain brought him (though he long withstood their prayers) to take at length some relief and suffenance; and to the intent he should be the less shamed of Clima death, the Macedons decreed, that he was lawfully killed and would not suffer him to be buried, but that the King commanded it.

Having confumed ten days at Maracanda, specially to confirm the grief he had conceived at Clines death, he tent Epheltion, with part of his Army, into Ballria, to provide Victuals against WinBook VIII. of Alexander the Great.

11

n-

ly,

TI

On

id

ere

ber

1

0110

the

ery

ts,

un

er,

er-

ke

at

inth.

d

the

6.3

peat

Ar-

in-

er;

res 4 and committed the fame Province unto which before he had given to Clims. thence he marched into a Country called pa, that confineth on the Seyrbiant; which being well inhabited, and full of Villages, doth with the plentifulnels thereof, not only detain the lulis bitants to dwell there still; but also inviteth straners to come amongst them. The lame was a we fuge to the Outlaws of Battrin, that fill rebelled But after Alexanders coming was known, the were driven forth by the Country-men, and two thousand and two hundred of their Horsemen (which were accustomed to life by Their and poil in time of Peace, made worfe not only by the War, but also by despair of forgiveness, and their wilde dispositions) did give an On-let suddeny upon Aminiar, who was Darius Licutenant. The attel was long doubtful betwire them; but finalthey lost feven hundred of their number, whereof three hundred were taken priforers, and turned heir backs to the Victors, not without reveng or they flew of them fourfcore, besides three hunred and fifty that they wounded; and yet vithitanding, after this fecond Rebellion trained pardon. When Alexander had brought em to his obedience, he came with his whole irmy into a Country called Nama, whereof was called Sifimethred who had a his own Mother, it being lawful these for the arents to have the Carnal Knowledge of their hildren.

The faine Sissimethres, with 2000 armed men, ortified and kept the Straight at the entry of the

Country,

Creating, where it was most narrow. The passage was detended both with a River and a Rock, through the which Rock the way was made by sorre of hands: The light is received in at the Entry, but further inward there is none, but only such as men bring with them. From this Rock there goeth a Vault underneath the ground, that hath issue into the Fields, which is not known but to such as are of the same Country. Though this straight was naturally strong, and desended besides by a strong Rower, it withheld not Alexander to attempt it, who brought Engines, which they call Arieties, to heat down their Fortification I and with Slings, and shot of Arrows, did force his Enemies from the places of their detence.

When he had driven them away, he passed through the Works he had won, and made approach to the Rock; but the Stream that grew out of the force of united waters; falling from the Mountain, was an impediment to him therein: It seemed a wonderful work to fill the Chunel of the River, yet he caused Trees and Stones to be brought to the place. When his Enemies, that never had seen any such thing before, beheld the Work suddenly to rise like a Mountain, they were put into a marvellous sears by which the King supposing they might have been brought to render it up, sent one Orienter, of the same Nation, to perswade Signeethers to render the Rock; and in the mean season, to put them in more terrour; he saused Towers of Wood to be brought forwards, and did shoot from the Engines with such violence out of the same; that the Enemies sorsaking all other strengths, retired into

ato the top of the Rocks Onig 24 finding beet in this fear, perswaded him rather to Alexanders Benevolence then his Power; and that all Creatures submitted to him, that he should not be his hinderance, marching now his Victorious Army into India, whereby he f um other mens plagues upon his own neck thes would have been contented to foll dvice, but that the who was both his Mot is Wife affirmed . how the would rather die ommit her felf into any mans hand; and the being albamed that the love of Library main more in a Woman, then in him s more honest then since ; and discussing him as the Mediator for Peace, he determine to abide the extremity of the Sice had well weighed his Enemies Power, and he together, he began again to repent him of hores Counsel, it being more rath then promo , and made finit , that Oxioner, would return exing then to commit himself to the Kin il, only requiring of Oxidetes, that he we utter his Wives Opinion, for lear left that ald not obtain her pardon. He lent the rtes before, and he came after, with I Children, and all his Kinsfolk , without for any affinance promited to him by Alexander bearing of their approach . demen before to cause them to flay, an for his coming ? And when he was come to the where they did abide, he offered Securities to da and Willows , actioning mis Siferiolica

TC

bat

ren

h a

nto

are

was

ng

11,

nd

la-

led

ch

thi

in a ser to

11

iet

m

ĸ

oul

od

he

at

ed

former Rule and Authority, putting him in hop of I greater Country, if he would fatthfully continue in his Friendflith's and took his two Sons prefeated to him by the Father, to ferre him in his

alegate felt instrounce to their sock is not yet yellded, and went forwards with his blond n into other parts. The way Moult, which at at first they induced indifferent ter afterwards, when their Horfe-hoofs were torn and they ucterly foundred, many were not able to follow, but rode-dispersed, and out of order, th sections of their travel to much overcame thank The King norwithstanding changed often his Horse and purfaced, without intermission, his Enemies that the Woole before him; by reason whereon, all the Woole roung men that were wont to accompany him left behinde, Taving only Philip, Lymbich and of great likelihood to become an excellent ma followed one test till king that the ries on the fi en by the loace of fifty furtion's I yes times, for all that, profered him his Eldefe in no wife he would depart from the King Militarding that he iso his Corder on a ATTHOU

When the King pailed through the Wood wher his Enemies lay in Ambushment, he lought notable and protected the Kings perion, lighting with the Enemies: But after they were put to flight, and driven out of the Woods, the greatness of his countage, which had fillfained him in the hear of the right, fainted with his body, and being all our

[weat

weat he learned himself to a Tree, which could not to much shay him, but that he sell to the earth and being taken up again by the Kings hands; he immediately after did shrink down, and died. The King being somewful for his death; received some other intelligence, no less to be lamented, for before he came to his Camp, he was advertised at the death of Engine; one of the most Noble of his captains, whole Funerals were celebrated with great Pomp and Ceremonies of Honour.

From mence he determined to go unto the Da on, where he understood that Spiramenes was out Formie, that never ceased to favour him , di nexpectedly finish that journey of his, as the die my others. Spitamener was inflamed with an exeffive love to his Wife, whom he carried with him vall his hazards and adventures : But he d ould not well endure flying, nor to change place ke an Outlaw, became to weary of travel, t lattery and air means he inned he leave his flight and go about the me he law ays to escape ) to procure Alexander procure note Clemency (the faid the trad from to a rience. And to move him the more the brought before him the Children be wise them, making request, that at the less ald take pity on them; wherein the thoug yer would be the more effectual, because a der was so mar at hand. But Spitament a ring that the did not do this by way of cou of purpose to betray him; and that the delired fubrist her felf-to Alexander, in considence of he any drew forth his Sword with an intent to have

正り世界が見れているのできるのでは、のうなは

Z

killed her, if he had not been withheld by his Bre-thren. When they would not fuffer him to hurt her, he commanded her to avoid his light, threatning to kill her if the came again into his prefence s and to mirigate his love rowards her, he confumed that night amongst his Concubines; but his love that was to deeply grounded ceafed not, but thereby rather kindled the more toward his Wife : Wherefore he reconciled himself again unto her, making his continual request, that she would not counsel or move him any more on that subject, but be content with fuch chances as fortune would fend him; for he effeemed Death lighter, then to yelld himself. She purged her self of the former per-fuzzion, which appeared to her (she said) to have been good; and though it were out of a womans frailty, yet it proceeded of a faithful meaning; and from thenceforth, the faid, the was contented to do as it should please him.

Spiramenes overcome with her counterfeit affection, made a great Feast, and after much eating and drinking, became drowsse, and was carried into his Chamber. When his Wife perceived him to be in a deep sleep, she pulled out a Sword, which she had kept secretly for that purpose, and cut off his head, delivering the same, being sprinkled with bloud, unto her servant that was privy to the sact; and with him only, as she was imbrued with the blood, she came unto the Macedons Camp, withing it to be signified to Alexander, that there was one come, who had something of importance to communicate unto him: He by and by gave Communicate unto him: He by and by gave

such configuration of the second second representations called

ceived her defiled with blood (thinking in had some to lament force injury done unto her) he willed her to declare what the would have ! She defred that her fervant might come in From underneath whose garment the took Spitamenes head, 

e s

ed

re

e-1

,

ot It

d

d

e

9

The palenels of the face wanting blood, had taken away the knowledge whole face it was but when the King perceived it to be a imans head, h parted forth of the Tent; and by inquiry unde flood the matter. This brought him into gree perplexity, and he was driven by divers imagine tions into fundry opinions; he judged the kill of fuch a one (being a Fugitive and a Rebel) great benefit unto him , who living might be on the other fide, confidering the horribleness of the deed, that the thould kill him by Treaton who ed her to thirely, and by whom he had many ildren, the violence of the act overcome the mks of benefit, and the was commanded to dethe Camp, left the example of Och licentinels might corrupt the manners and civil disposi-

then the Dahans understood of Spitaments ho was Partner with him in his Conspiracy and themselves unto Alexander. Ex being defrom the greatest part of his prefent leas. mined to sevenge the injuries of them who cen miluled by the pride and covetoulucis of deputies and Officers; Therefore he committee Prata

The Life and Double Book of His Preducestor, to him as a prisoner. Tumform was substituted Ruler of Caria in the place of Arfames: Arfaces was fent into Media; to the intent that Oxidetes should remove from thence: And Babylon upon the death of Mazeur, was committed to Deditamenes.

when he had ordained thefe things, the third moneth he drew his Army out of their Winter-lodgings to go to a Country that was called Gabaza. The halt days journey was quiet, and the next not very tempelluous, yet darker then had been accuflound, but not without forme figuitication of their miles that were coming : The third day, the Element was full of Lightnings and when the Lightning cealed, it was very dark; the beholding thereof did much amaze the Souldiers, and did put them into a great fears It thundred, in a manner, continually, and the Lightning fell in strange similitudes; to that the Army stood associed, and durit nother go forwards, nor remain fill in one place. Then there came fuddenly a shower of Hail driving like a Tempelt, which at the first they defended by the coverture of their Armour's but thortly after their hands were so cold and wet; that they could nor hold their Weapons, nor yet device which way to cura themselves, finding always, where they turned their faces, more violence of the Tempelt wanding about the Woods; and many that were wearied by leaf; rather then by travel; lay down open the ground, norwithstanding that the force of the Cold had converted the shower into a Ronaute with the Cardon and Tapicient, to

\*1.12.X

Frott. The Trees, against which they leaded more a great lately and help to many and advent they were not ignorant in when they maked, that also chole themselves a place of document on when they left to move their bodies, the manifed heat but them; but case was so pleplant to find as there we ted, that they resuled head we have only whether leves. Their affliction was not only whether to the time, but also continued very long, to the increase whereof, the light, which is an armulation upto men a through the darkiness of the home, and, the shadow of the Model's was the lader on the lader away in that it appeared as if not hadron.

The King only was able to and ne third miles who ceated not to norshout the Army, drawing platers together when they were disperted ing them up that lay upon the ground a and to sil-urage them , he he wild them the Smuth that a aiar off from the Cottages , whither the lexsted them to draw for factories. There was not thing more effectual to their friend their than iom they faw to indure this mischief, they chased micives with their atmost labour ! But needling in adverletoriune is of more force schen a an) found out a remedy for this good : Three felt utting down the Wood, making every where les and tracks thereof, and let them on free Then man would have indged that the whole Wood had on a flame, for there was flowerly force left vixe the firestownier ap hand a This wither name joynts began to be moved with the heat, and

23

ther.

RESTORATED BOOK FOR THE

their spairs, which were oppressed by the force of the cold, began to have their free recourse; some recovered the Cottages, which necessity caused them to leak out in the uttermost part of the Wood, and the rest recovered the Camp, which was planted in a mouth ground: but by that time the Shower fand Souldiers, with Varlets and Slaves. It is faid, Trees, and yet feemed as though they had been li-

Le chanced that a common Souldier of the Macedone, who had much pain to go and carry his Ar-mous, came at fall into the Camp where the King was; who notwithstanding that he was change of his own body against the thre, yet he did rise out of his Chair, and pulling off the nummed Souldi-ers Arthour, who was almost past his remembrance, he set him down in his Seat . He a great while knew not where he fate you who had acceived him; but at length, when his natural heat came to him, and the Kings Seat, and the King to be there present, he was afraid, and did start upragain: But Alexander beheld him in the face,

Perceivest them not now, my Souldier, with bon much better andiction than livelt, then the Perlians do under abein Kings: Alfor it is death to them to fit in the Kings Seas, and the fame both been the fafeguard

b. The next day he called his friends, and the Captains of his Army together, promiting to tellote to them whatfoever they had lolt; wherein he per-

Book Kill of Alexandera formed his promite's for Sifing and a great musber of Sheep and Oxen buted all amongst the Souldiers, wherein restored to them their loss, and also delive from their houses. The King gave grea unto Sismethier's and commanding his to carry hix days Victuals really drefted, ed against the Sature, where he desti Country; and of the Booty there to thirty thousand sheep in gift to Sisimethre chance he learne unto a Country belong Noble Prince called Cobortamer, who subjected felf unto the King; and he again reltore Country to him, exacting nothing of his shat of his three Sons, he diduld fend two of the to force him in his Wars a But Cobortains of to him all three, and made a feast unto Alchana with fuch sumptuous ness as belonged to to the of their Country, therein all the please there could be devised! This say the week that could be devised! the Noble-mens children were brought in 6 mder, amongst whom there was Constant aughter called Romane, who in beauty and exce mey of personage; and comelines of apparel is mongst those Nations) excelled all the reliotwithstanding that they were all of excellent cauty with whom the was accompanied , yet the new all menseyes towards her, and especially the ings, who could not well now govern his affiin fuch prosperity of fortune, it being an many which the frailty or man feldome can

it

Link it de Bress and and Bress

74

Thus

the beheld the Wife of Deriu and her highters (to whom Roxane was not comparable) with no other defires then he might have beheld his Mother, was to overcome with the love of a young Virgin, being but of mean Parentage, if the should be compared to the Bloud of Kings, that he affirmed it to be a thing necessary for the E-Rablishment of the Empire, for the Perfians and Macedon to marry together, by which only means name might be taken from the vanquished, and oride from the Conquerours. He also shewed a prelident, how Achiller ( from whom he was defeended ) joyned himfelf with a Captive : And left his doings should be counted lastiviousness, he refolved to take her to him by the way of marriage. The Father joyful of this which he looked nor for, gladly confirmed the Kings words; who in the heat of his defire, caused Bread to be brought forth, according to the custom of his Country, the fame being the most Religious Geremony of Marriage among the Macedone This Bread was cut afunder with a Sword, and each of them made of it a Sacrifice. It is to be thoughed that fuch as effablished the Cultoms of that Nation, coveted, by a moderate Dier, to thew to them that were the gatherers of great Riches, with bow fmall a thing they ought to content them-

This he who was both King of Africand Europe, joyned himfelf in Marriage with a Maid brought in at a Malque, to beget upon a Captive one that should Reign over the Victorious Missedom. His friends were ashamed that he should chuse, upon

drink.

wook VIII. of Alexander the Grant 34 wink, a Father-in-law among them whom he had lately subdued. But after Clinic death, all the liberty and freedom of speech being taken away, they seemed to agree with their countenances, as with the most apt instrument to declare the consent of their mindes.

e

e,

s,

d

18

a

e-

ıd

5 , I-

d

10 ht

n,

of

15

th

ns

UI

be.

in

iat

lis

on ik.

After this was done, he prepared his journey towards India, purposing to visit the Ocean Sea: And because he would leave nothing behinds him that might be an impediment to his expedition, he took order for thirty thousand young men to be lewied out of all the Provinces, and to be brought to him armed, minding to use them both as Piedges nd as Souldiers. He fem Craterus to purfue H mer and Garenes, of whom the one was taken, and he other llam. Polipercon also subdued the Cou mothat was called Babacen; and having let all things in order, he fee his whole imagination woon he was of the war was counted to be a very ch Country, and to abound both with Gold, Peache p and Precious Stones unuch to Voluptuoutnets as Magni was fold, that the Souldiers there had their Target nade of Ivory, and of Gold: And therefore let be who thought himself to excel the rell; should be uspatted in any point; he caused his Souldie, mith their Targets with Plates of Shive the Horfemen cobeautifie their Bridles with Gold ind Silver. There were one hundred and swens land armed menethat followed Alexander in the at the tops prepay diverbiged

When all things were ripe for what he long before conceived in his evil disposed minde, he thought at

what due to the bridge

346 The Life and Death Book Will

honour of a god, and so willed himself not only to be called, but also to be believed to be the bon of Japiter; as though his power had been as well to reftrain mens thoughts, as their tongues; His intent was, that the Macedons should fall prostrate on the ground, and worthip him, after the same manner that the Persuas did their Kings a and so such his delife, there wanted not permitious flattery, the perpetual poylon of Princes; whose Estates have more often been overcome by stattery, then by any force of Enemies. The Macedons were not in their Country Customs to be subverted; but it was the fault of the Greeks, who with their for did conditions, corrupted the profession of honest sciences.

There was one Hagir of Argor, as evil a Foce as was fince Cherillus days, and another called Clea, a breilean, given to flattery, both by his nature, and by the Culion of his Country: These, with some other of the dress and resule of their Countries (whom Alexander reputed more then any of his Captains and Kintroen) would make it appear to the world, that Heaven lay open for Alexanders and Aicked not openly to pronounce, that both Herother and Backbur, Captar and Follow, should all give place to his new godhead. For the bringing of those things to pais, the King commanded, upon a following the Feast to be prepared with great pomp, inviting thereunto all the great Lords and Gentlemen, both of the Materians and the Greaks; with whom when he had fate and caten a while, he departed out of the Feast.

Then Clean, as was before determined, made a peech in the praise and admiration of the Kings rtues, tohearling his exceeding benefits toward mall; which to require, he faid, there was but way, and that was, if they would acknow-ige him a god, whom they knew to be one; For a finall thing (quoth he ) to recompense fach near benefits towards you, with the expense of a line. Frankincenfe? He thewed she Perfiant Coffen be both Religious and Wile, in prorthipping the ings as gods, thinking their defence and the a, shar Hercules and Bacchus mere Deified, ey bad once overcome the coury of fuch as lived the time; and men that come after, as eaftly belt things as have been confirmed by sheer Production I env of you (quoth be) will fick or this ma ye shall see me the first, that at the Range comes ball fell down upon the earth, and worship him seb President arber men ought to fullow, and office y the men of most wisdom, that should always be ples to others in doing ober duties towards the

is Speech tended directly against California to the King's for he thought him the mai o only had flayed the Macedons, that t uld readily have done him that honour. Bet on, every mans eyes were fathened on Calife-

and

of

to inate

me

ta

te.

tes by

加山山山

cA

as eo, and anc es

to

d

Tr.

of

n n d

3

e

n

the King were present (O Cleo) to bear these the de, it sould not be needful none to answer thee;

be este and elected signed and fin be binglift would make request, that he might in this finerve into the custom of Strangers; nor would be suffer that then shouldest deface, and bring into the obloquey and entry of men, with such thy permicious sta and good fortunes ! But because he is absent, Ifor his mill shawanswer thee; There is no fruit soon ripe, sha with consinue long; this I mean by thy divine humours which whilest thou gotst about to give unto the King one nakelt bio Mintour from him : There is a time respired, that men flouded believe bim to be a god's for that gift bath showing been given to great men, when they are once dead, by such as came after them . I will out she King Immortality after his death, and that his life may be long, and his Estate continual. But Desiring is a thing that sometimes dath follow a ma hat it never doth accompany bim. Thou didit rebear camples of the Delfying of Hercilles and Bacchus nahest thou that they were made gods upon draile and by the degrees of one dinner? The nature of Alex anders Musality must be removed from our eyes, before the fame can bring him into Heaven. Are not they good b) gods (Cleo) that then and I can make? Would Hing (shinkest about) be content to receive of us the authority of his godbrad? I have a great define to prove the pomer : If show ourf make a god, first make a King ? w much more cafee is give an earthly Kingdom, then the possession of heavens Thinkest then (Cleo) that the Immortal gods will heav thee without distain, or suffer those thy winked complete to take any effects They would that we should hald us content with the customs of our Forefashers is and for my part I am not afterned of my Comity a and defination to learn of the mount marrier ! Monta WILL of Alexander the Great. 349

d bonour my Prince; for, in my Opinion, we ledge him Jufficiently to be both King and Conq of whom we receive Laws to live under. alifthenes was favourably heard of all men, as the versal Liberty. He did not only in this Speech or out fuch flatteries, but also lively expressed the on of the Macedons, especially of such as were nt men, to whom the exchange of old cultous words that had palled between them; for d behind a partition of the Hall, and heard all difeourie: He fent word therefore to Hager and that at his coming in they should move the Country custom: And after a while, the King. ough he had been about some business of imance, returned again unto the Feathand then the ans fell down, and worthipped him, after fuch as was appointed; but Poliperconthat fate above King at the Board, asked one in scorn, who proiffed no harders with which words he moved & der to fo much anger, being always imparient of hat he faid to Polipercon Is it thou that disquineft to or me? Shall The mocked of thre alone? Polipercon veted. That as it was not feemly that a King hould corned, so it was not that a Subject should be despiand throwing him down, he laid unto him, supon the carth; Lo, balt thou not done that which before thou didly four in another maniferenpon he commanded from to cultudy, and

uld

go The Life and Death Book VIII

lo brake up the Feast. Poliperson being thus punished, was afterwards pardoned; but Califener, whole contempt and stubbornness the King had long gredged at, found that the King had more deeply grounded his displeasure, on whom there chanced thortly after an apt occasion for revenge . It was a Cultom (as it hath been faid before) among f the Mobie-men of Macedon, to put their Sons, when they were pass their Childhood, in service to the King, as Pages, to do necessary business about his perform. Their usage was to watch nightly by The Concubines were by them brought in at another door; where the Guard watched: They likewife received the Hories of the Grooms of the Sta-ble, and brought them to the King when he mount ed . They always were about the King, both in Hunting and in Battel ; and were brought up in the s of Liberal Sciences: The chiefest honour was given unto them , because they did lit and eat with the King: None had power to cottect them with firipes, but only the King himfelf. company was like a flore or Seminary, from w all the Captains and Governours of the Maced did proceed. From thence came their latter King whole Lineage the power of the Romans long after did extinguish.

Hermolaus, one of that number, because he had struck a Bore, (which the King had thought to have struck himself) was by his Commandment beaten and thourged with Rods: which rebuke he took most greevously, and complained to Softratus his strend, who was one of the same company: he seeook VIII. of Alexander the Great. 351

tion, and peradventure for force other causes e ended also with the King before , to excited He olane (who was provoked fufficiently already) at each gave Fanh to other to finde a way to effroy the King: Which they undertook not with ny Childish proceeding, but wifely agreed to bring Beoftratus, Antipater, Afelepiodorus, and Philotas, nto the fellowship of their Conspiracy : And afterraids they joyned them unto Anticles, Elaptonies, nd Ephimaner. But the way how to perform this pole feemed very difficult, because it behoved at all of them should watch together: And it was cultom, that according to their couries, forme atched one night, and force another; for if any her should happen amongst them, who were not ivy to the Conspiracy, the fame might be a let to whole Enterprile . Therefore about changing couse of their Warch, and in other preparate the execution of their Conformacy, there palled and therty days.

ſ

Ĥ

n

e

S

7

- - - - -

At length the night came, when the whole numof the Confpirators should watch together, who
ofced greatly among themselves, that each had
a faith to other, whereof so many days silence
delven good proof: during which time, neither
a nor hope had altered any of their mindes, so
tat was the displeasure they had conceived ainfitthe King, or else the fidelity they bore to one
other. They were standing at the door where
King did sup; to the intent; that at his rising
to the Banquer, they might bring him to his
namber: But Alexanders fortune, and the pleasamber: But Alexanders fortune, and the plea-

THE REPORT OF THE PROPERTY IN

farmels of luch as were in his company; moved him to drink largely; whereby and by realon of other paltimes and devices; the time was to prolonged, that the Conspirators stood in a marvellous perplexity: For one while they were glad, because they trusted to finde him drunk when they should go about their Enterprise; and another while they were in a great agony, left he should fit vill day-light, for then the custom was to relieve the Watch, and others to fucceed in their places; and because their course should not come about again till the leventh night after, they could not be affured that every one of them would keep the thing fecter till that time. But when the day began to appear, and Alexander was rifen from the Banquet, they were to glad to execute their deligne, that they were joyful to reseive the King: There was a Woman accustomed to haunt the Court, who being diffracted in her minde, and feeming by some inspiration to shew things to come; met Alexander, and would in no wife suffer him to pass, but perswaded him by all the means the could devile, to return and fit down again: He faid to her in sport, that the gods gave him good advice; and thereupon called back his friends, and fate drinking till it was two hours within day; by which time another company had relieved the Watch, and were standing before the Kings Chamber-door; yet for all that, the Conspirators remained there still, after the time of their Watch expired, to vehement is the hope which mens minds conceive, when they be drowned in the defire of great Archievements. The King spake more gently to them then he

Was

K

d

of

1

Ļ

y

CH

e

d n

g

O •

t

2

8 1-

d

d d

be

d 7Q a-

ne

of ch

he

725

was accultonied, and willed them to go to reft. caute they had watched all the night before; and moreover he gave unto every one of them for a reward 50 Sestercies, with commendation that they continued their watch longer than their times Being thus deceived of the great hope they were in they departed to their Lodgings, in expectation of the night when their course should come again. But Epimanes, who either by the gentleness of the Kin the wed him amongst the rest, or else that he thought ludenly changed his minde, and opened the confe racy to his brother Estrilochus, who was not privy to it before.

The punishment of Philotal was to fresh in Vinant memory that Duriborus and immediate. y hands upon his brother, and brought him into ne Court. He called to the Watch, and told the brought news pertaining to the Kings Sa uard; which thing well appeared, as well by cir coming actisch i time, as also by their sacindex the wrichinen called up Projonia aus, that lay within the Kings Chamber, no straightway brought them to the King, and wakened him, who by reason of his much mking lay in a dead sleep. It was long ere he woke, but by little he came to himself, and Thanked be the gods. Then faid Edition determined the ruine of our Family. For to my Brother intended an harnous Act, yes come to repensance, by him the mass

ter

for is brought to light. The very same night Trea-son was confirred against you, the Authors are such as you would scarcely think: And thereupon Epimanus declared all things in order, with the names

of the Conspirators. It is certain that Califibenes was not named as one privy to that Treason; but it was confessed that he gladly gave ear to the discourse of others, when they blamed and spake evil of the Kings procredings. Some do adde thereunto, that when Hermoldus did complain to Califibenes how the King had bearen him, he bad him remember that he was ment in patience, or elfe to fair him to further malice, it remains the in doubt. When the King was fully swaked, and called to his memory the peril he was in, he gave Eurilochur fifty Talents, with the loriest of a tich mans goods called Taridases, and partitioned his Brother before his pardon was requi-ted. He commanded the principals of this Taxafor to be kept bound, and among them Califbenes, who being taken and brought into the Court, the King slept all the day and the night ensuing, he was so likely with drinking and watching. The next day be called a great Council, whereat the Fa-ther and Kinsfolk of the Conspirators were pre-fent, not very well allured of their own safeguard, because that by the law of the Mosedans all ought to die that were of kin to Traytors. All the Configurators except Califbenes, by the Kings commandment were brought forth; who immediately confessed the whole Treaton they had devised. Then every man prefent reviled them a and the King

Book VIII. of A exanger the circulass King demanded what he had done to them , that they should conspire his death. When all the other food full and held their peace. Hermolans answered thus

We demand this thing of us as though you know not ibe matter. We began to kill you, because your to reign over us as if we were flaves want not free

As he was speaking these words, his Father Per-Sepolis called him Traytor and Muntherer of his Pas rents, stopping his mouth with his hand, because he should speak no further. Then the King plucked his Father back, and willed Hermolans to speak such things as he had learned of his Matter California Then Hermalaus proceeded.

S

7

1

B

5

S

1

1

C C ¢

y L

I will use your benefit, and declare those things rehall Thave learned to the great milchief of me all. How for se the number of the Macedons remaining at hat have a caped your crucity? Attalus: Philpus , Parmento, Lincettes, Alexander, and Clifus, are more dead net to our Enemies behoof they be alive. Live food in he Fight and defended you minks hen Swards received counds for your glory and wittory, which have are very fell rewarded. The one helprinkled your Table with his a, and the other could not be leffered tastie above nary death. Thus spe Capeains of your people are sor-118, of whom they were Conquerous. Parments, by 2018 you less your Enemy Attalus, was you so death them sudgement. Thus we you the bonds of us esches, as instruments to kill one another s and such as now spere to be your Tormentors, draw bimays you and to be tormented by others.

Aa 2

356 The Life and Death Book VIII.

At those words, the multitude b gan to shout against Hermolaw, and his fasher drew his sword to have slain him, if he had not been hindred by the king, who commanded Hermolaus to speak, requiring the rest to hear him plead for himself, who she said enforced the cause of his own punishment. At length with great labour they held their peace, and

then Hermolaus began again.

How liberal is be to fuffer boys to feak, when the voice of Calisthenes is som up in prison, because be atone is able to declare blingelf? and why? because be fearerbishe free freech of an innocent, and cannot endiere to behold his face, and yet I will justifie he is not privy to this matter. But others that are here present, who commerced with me a noble Enterprise, of whom shire is not any shot can accuse Califthenes of confent s and yer our so patient and so righteous a King, bath deservation bere his death. These be the rewards of the Macedons, whose blond to discheemed as of no value. the both 30000 Mules carrying short and treasure, and yet the pure Souldiers carry nothing with them but un-rewarded there and wounds; all which things we did cafily fuffer before be did berray us to the Barbarians; and by a new trade of conquest made us bit own Souldi-ers Slaves. He alloweth the apparet and discipline of the Persians, and defiffeth the manner of his own Counerey: and iberefore we determined to kill biss, not as King of Macedon, but as King of Pettia, and as a turncoat to be perfecuted by the law of arms. He would have the Macedons breed to bim, and worthin him as a god. The refused Philip for the Father; and if any god bad been before Jupiter, he would have refused him likewise. Do you marvel if freemen vanuor bear this his pride? What What

Book VIII. of Alexander the Great 357

What can me hope for at his hands, steing we must either die as innocents, or else (what is worse than death) live and remain in hondage as slaves? He is greatly in my debt, if by this proof he could amend for he may learn of me the thing that free hearts cannot endure. Spare them whose age shall be sufficiently tormented with the lost of their children; but upon at canse execution to be done, to the intent we may obtain by our own death the liberty which we sought for by thine.

When Hermolaus had spoken these words, the

King answered after this manner:

je

4

ė.

ıŧ

How falle thefe things are which he hath learned of his Infructor, my patience doth d clare. For normithstanding be before confessed this Treason, yet my minde was that you foomld bear what he could fay, knowing ve ty well, that when I give liberty to this Villain to fresh, that he would need be fame rage & fury in his discussion. which before mov d him to have kell'd me robom he one he to bave loved a bis father. Of late when he afed a great prefumption, I commanded him to be chafiled after the tome of our Countrey used by the Kings of Macedon's bich chastisement we must grant needful to be wort, or be pupils are chaftifed by their tutors, and wives by to sibands and fervants by their mafters. This was all the melty I wed towards him, which be would be we receipe with murder and Treason But bow gentle Laurte at h out suffer me to use mine own disposition, fince you your lves do know it it were superfluent for me to rebearse. I motor marvel at AU, ibough punishment of reaprors be pleasant to Hermolaus, who is beingles to great a taytor & when he commendeth Parmento and Philois, it maket for his own parp fe. I paramed Evnhis; Alexander being accused by two witnesses. A a 3 that

358 The Life and Death Book VIII.

shot be twice conspired Treason against me; and being og sin compilted yet deserved I his pusishment two years; till you your selves required be might have his desert. Touching Actalus, you remember very well how be prought Treason against me before I was King: And for Clitus I would be had not moved me to wrath, sobole rash songue speaking the rebuke and shame both of me and you, I suffered longer than be would have done me, feaking the like. The clemency of Kings and Princes confilterb not only in their own diffosition, but in theirs also who are under their subjection; for the rigour of such as are Rulers is mitigated with humility: But when men's minder are void of reverence, and high and low are confounded all alike, then it is necessary with violence to expelviolence. But why do I marvel that be laid cruelty to my charge, that durft object against mescaverous mist i will not call you to withest one by one, lest Ishould upbraid you with my liberalitie, by making declaration what I have bestowed upon you. Bebold she whale stemy, who a little while ago had nothingelf but shis bare Armour, do they not lie in filver Beds to are not their Tables charged with Plate? and posses they not whole flocky of slaves & They are not able to futain the foils of their Enemies.

But it as faid the Pertians are bonomed of me, whom we have completed. Truly they are fo, and yet what dreater people can there be of my moderation, than that I do not reign from ly over such whom I have subdued? I came into Alia, not neverly to subvert the Nations, nor make the one half of the world defart, but to give the conquered can be not to repine at my Victorie. This is the occasions bey gladly fight for you and for your Kingdom spend their blond; who, if they were providly used, would

book VIII. of Alexander the cook 250

mond fraight rebel against you. That possession is rable which is kept by violence, but she thanks of a benefts received endurers everlastingly. If we purpose to enjoy Alia, and not to make a progress only shrough a we must make them partakers of our clemennie and the their fidelitie shall make our Empire stable und perpethat's and truly me have now more iben w well with or defire. Covetoufuell is an unfatiable Difease, especially when men desire to fill the vellet that

runneth over

e

1

e

d

t

6

y

e

I I The same

But you will say that I mingle their customes wi ours. It is fo; And why? Because I see in many Nati ons many things which we need not be ashamed to fol low ; and fo great an Empire of we have got cannot o everwise be aptly governed, except we deliver some bings to them, and receive likewise some things back m them again. One thing is to be laughed at that I vald refuse supiter for my Father, being so acknowedged by his Oracle, as who faish, the answer of the ods mere in my power. He proffered the name of his on anto me, which was not a thing unfealons e Atchievements I intended. I would wish abouthe idians could believe me to be a god; for the successive ar standeth much by Fame's, and that which is falsebelieved, sometime morketh the effect of things that re true. Do you note me given to excess and prudigaty, because I garnished your Armor with Gold and Sila ver? My purpose was to shew to men accustomed to such, bings, nothing to be more vile then such kinds of metal. nd to declare that the Macedons (invincible in other) bings ) could not be overcome with Gold it fill. After, is manner I shall blinde the eyes of the barbarous, who always want at the first fight to wonder at things, be Aa 4 they

360 The Life and Death Book VIII.

they never to bafe and viles. And in that we then to wake no estimation of it, we shall declare to all men that we are not come for desire of Goldnor Silver, but to sub-due the whole world; from which glory thou Traytor wouldest have bereaved me, and bestrayed the Macedons (I being flain) to the barbarous Nations. I am exhorted to Baro sheir Parents; Although it was not expedient to part their Varenti, Although it was not expensely that they should know what I have determined of them, and so the intent they might die with the greater grief, bave forborn the custome of putting the innocent Parents and kinsfolks of traytors to death with the offenders; and I now profess to pardon them, and have them all in the lame estimation I had before. I know those wouldest have thy Master Califihenes brought forth, who only deemed thee, being of his complexion, because thou de-rest to hear pronounced from his mouth those railing words which even now thou didle vomit out against If he half been a Macedon born, I had brought a into the place with thee, a worthy Master of such a south but being born in another Commrey, he is sub-

When he had spoken these words, he dismissed the Council, and commanded all such as were condemned to be delivered to the Souldiers of their own Regiments; who, because they would declare by some crucky the love they have towards their Prince, slew them by all torments. Califbenes also died upon the Rock, innocent of the conspiracy against the Kings person, but a man not pliable to the cution of the Court, and abhoring from the disposition of Flatterers. There was never any thing that brought the Greeks into a greater indignation against

Alex-

Book VIII. of Alexander the Greet. 351

Alexander, then that he not only killed, but caused to be tormented to death, and that without judgement, a man indued with godly Manners, and good ociences, and one by whom he was perswaded to live, when he purposed to have died for formw that he had slain Client, for which his cruelty tenentance followed that came too late. But left he might nourish idleness, apt for the sowing of seditious remours, he advanced towards Didia, always more

glorious in War than after his Victory.

t

T

d

t

s

æ

A

y

g

a

d

e

e

0

i-

iit

The whole Country of India lieth chiefly to wards the East, containing more in length than it dorn in bredth. The North parts are full of Mounains and Hills, but all the reli of the land is plain aving many fair Rivers, which running out of the bunt Cascajus, do país plealantly through the buntrey. Indus is more cold than any other of ne Rivers, whose water is not unlike the colour of he Sca. But of all the Rivers in the Orient, Ganelleth directly through many great Mountains, unthat by the encountring with Rocks, his course is e ted Sea: The violence of the Aream breaketh own his banks, swallowing trees, and much of the round. In many places the fream is kept in with e rocks on which it beareth a but where the ground more fost, there the River becometh more irge, and maketh many Illands. The greates els of Ganges is much increased by the River of celines which both meet before they enter into the a: at their meeting the water is violently trouand whiles the one teliketh the others entry neither

The forest will be a second with neither of them frem to give place to other. 'Diordnes is a River of the lefs Fame, because it runneth in the uttermost bounds of India: but yet it bringeth forth Crocodiles as the Nile doth; and alto Dolphins, with Monters unknown to other Nations. Crooked Erimunt bus, with his many turnings and reflexions, is confirmed by the Inhabitants with watering their ground; which is the cause that when it draweth near the Sea, it becometh very little, and beareth no name. There are many other Rivers that divide the Countrey; but none of them are to famous as thefe, because they do not run fo far. The North-winds doth blaft and annoy those parts most that are next unto the Sea : but those Windes are to broken with the tops of the Mountains, that they cannot endamage the inward parts of the Countrey; wherefore Fruits are very plenmuch differ from the ordinary course of time in other parts of the world, that, when other Countries are burned most with the Sun, India is covesed over with Snow? And when other places are Frozen, the Heat is there most intolerable; and yet there appeareth not any natural cause why it

The colour of the Indian Sea not differing much from the water of other Seas, did take his name of King Erithrur, by reason whereof the ignorant Greeks took opinion that the water of those Seas was red. The Land is very aboundant of Flax; whereof the greater part of their Garments are made. The twigs of the Trees are so tender, that they receive the Print of Letters like wax. The Birds

Birds by teaching, counterfett the voices of mentioner are many Bealts which are not bred among other Nations. Rhinocerots are there bred, but not brought forth. The Elephants of that Country are thronger than thole that are made tame in Africk, and their highnels doth answer to their fixength. The water of the Rivers doth carry down Gold, and run mildely without any great fall. The Sea doth cast upon the Shore both Pearls and precious stones, whereof proceeded the caule of their great Riches; for after their Merchandize was once known to other Nations, the purgings of the Seas were

highly effeemed, as the fanlie of man would mal

h

d

i-

,

m

ြ

le le

1-

ts

11-

lo in

0es

id

it

ch

of

nt

as c;

re

at he

rds

The dispositions of the men (as in all other places) are according to the situation of the Countries mey dwell in. They make their Gaumonts of Linnen Cloth, which cover their bodies down to their feet. They binde Sandais under their set, and wear Rolls of Lunnen about their Heads. Such a are in any Degree, either of Nobility of Richest, we precious Stones hanging at their Lars, and mey cover all their Arms with Bracelets and Ornaments of Gold. They are great curiosity in Combine of their Heads, which they cut very seldome, mey shave without any form of gravity all parts their Face, saving their Chin. But the excess of oblighthousiness (which they call magnificance) and by them, doth exceed the vices of all Marions, when their will is to be seen abroad, their sevants arry about them Perfutning Pans of Silver, and fill the ways where they go with sweet Savors: they come are born in Litters of Gold hanging with

with pearls, and the Garments they wear are of gold and purple empaled together. The armed mentollow their Litter, and fuch as are of their Guard; among whom are Birds born upon boughs, which they teach always to ling, when they are conversant in earnest matters.

In the Kings Palace are pillars of gold carved a-bout with vines of gold, wherein the Images of thole Birds they delight in most are artificially wrought. The Court is open to all comers. When give answer to the Embassadors, and execute justice upon their people. When their Sandals are taken off. their feet are anointed with fweet odours. The great-It travel they take, is when they hunt wilde Beafts inclosed in Parks, which they strike whiles their Concubines are finging and dallying with them: the rows they thoot are of two cubits long, which do not the effect of the force they are thor withal, be reason of their weight, which is an impediment to their swiftness, wherein the property of the Arrow chiefly confliteth. In small journeys they use to ride on horseback: but when they are to travel further they are carried upon Elephants, whole huge bodies are covered all over with gold. And because no vice should be wanting in their corrupt manners, great numbers of Concubines do follow them in golden Litters. The Queens have their companies leparate by themselves, who in all excels of voluntuousness are nothing inferious to the Kings. It belongeth to the women there to drels mear, and they also serve men with wine, whereof there is great plenty among the Indians. When the King hath largely drunk,

of A crander the Great. ed is fallen into a fleep, his Concubines use to carry im into his Charber, calling upon their gods in Hymn after their Countrey manner.

n

h gt

a- 6

lly

en

to ice

A.

atifts ei the

do

to OW

ride er die

HUOU ink. and

Who would think that amongst all these vie ere were any regard of vertue? there are among them a rough kinde of people, when they call wife men, who count it the most glorious thing to prevent their own death; and they use to burn them-felves while they are alive. It is imputed for a teat thame to fuch as either cannot well fin for or have not their perfect health, if they pro their life till their natural death approach : nor They think the cares to be defiled. If the bo be not alive that are burned in them. Such in Cities after a civil manner, arrain to the growledge of the motion of the Stars, and of the phecy of things to come; not can they think the man doth therein his life, that it the without fear. They eftern that ion they begin once to workup, and the violating of which, they toxbithey number titly days to the twithdranding limit their years, as a places. They note not cheir unite of the Moon, as is common the fi vice from the full Moon-but trops the in the beginneth to be noticed; and a earthe lame manner, they make reat den rate more uncersain. There, neis h to cive

to the Swart Tax

As Alexander entred into India, the Princes of the Countrey addressed themselves unto him, submitting themselves, and declaring that he was the third man being begotten of Jupiter that came into their Countrey. They faid that Hercules and Bacthat were not known to them, but only by fame; but they rejoyced that they might behold him prefent with their eyes. Alexander received them with all the gentleness he could devise, and willed them to accompany him, because he would use them as Guides in his Journey. But when he faw and Epbetian with part of his Army before, to lubdue fuch as would not submit themselves; and wilthem to go jorwards till they came to the Rive of India, and there to make Boats, in which he might tramport his Army! and because they had to pass many Rivers, the Boats were to deviled that they might be taken alunder and carried in Cores and afterwards joyned together again. 'H ppointed General to follow him with the Phalans ing he with fuch Floritation and Footmen as wen ight armed marched before; and being Encountred on his way, he Fought a finall Battel, and deve his Enemies into the next City. When Gra rene was come (to the intent he thight finke ter the Macedon Force ) he commanded that when they wan the Chyl they hould kill both main wo tion, and anide, and burn mergine to me exound but as he was riding about the Walls, he was hurt with the first and sometimes the Silvery won, and all put to the Sword, the very houles not

sook VIII. of Alexander 180 Great, 367

Ĺ.

he it-

he

ito

20le j

re-

m

ed

ule

w

cas ib-

i.

ve

ho

106

escaping the cruelty of the Conquerous.

After this, he subdued an obscure Nation, a came to a City called Nifa. It chanced that whiles ey incamped in a Wood before the City i there Il a cold in the night which more afflicted the Madans than ever it had done before in any other act; against the which they prepared the remedy at was next at hand, and cut down the Wood to ke them great fires of the fame (whereof to d of the Sepulchres belonging to the City, whi reason they, were made of Gedarchies were so ou fire, and never left burning tilk they were all and in the Games for the Citizens thereby ed that their Enemies would make force a Kagainst them mand the Marehous perceive the barking of other Dogs school she note o men, that the Indians would falley our upon the Section of the Section of the Camp Battelly flewer fuch vasiantempted the Fig. pons they within the Can became tot dis is 3; forme swere reinnied to yield, and segmed to radio where the exercish yield and so their saltetions, he a adaltain from laighers land on deget wheelenginining were for chemiches. They aftened after or one devalue conficience of the factor of the feet of a Mountain called before one which Mountain theing repoint to of the dubabliants; he lens Victuals before and

alled thither with his whole Army, incamping

The Mountain grew full of Vines and Ivy, aanding with Springs that flowed out in every Apples of most pleafant taste: the ground also brought forth Corn without cultivation. There ilde fruit. I cannot impute it unto any motion but rather to plenty and wantounels, nt caused Alexander to repair thither; where, of Souldiers, who can up and down the Hills (af-souldiers, who can up and down the Hills (af-adiffolute manner) all the hollows and valleys estabout rebounding with the voice of 6 many contands of men, calling upon Bacchie, to whom at place was dedicate: which license and libersing beguin of a few; was spread to studdenthrough the whole Army, that the Souldirepoling themselves upon the graft and that they had gathered together, at it been a time of quiet and most affired act a which licenticularies of the Souldiers, it og chance; Alexander did not withstand; bu who can therefore deny, but that greated fame and glory, is often in a a benefit rather of time than all writte? for their Rolemies had no enter to fee upon them, while they were drawned this excels of hanqueting, drankenkels, and hoth is overe he much afraid at their drankennels, as it they they had heard their cry encounting with their to Battel: which felicity preferving them here, and af-terwards defend them after the fame manner to the middelt of their Enemies, returning as it were in all to feating and to drunkennels.

0 6 4

d

in the property of the propert

When Alexander descended from the Mountain, he went to a Countrey called Deddle, which the in-labitants forlook, and fled to the Woods and wild fountains; and therefore he paffed from the perinto Acadera, which he found both burned and a bandoned likewise of the inhabitants, whereby a scellity he was compelled to use the Waz after anoher manner. For he divided his Army into divers atts, and shewed his power in many place at the By which incans he oppressed them become y could provide for themselves, and such as to their atteration. Prosoners wook most Country but Alexander won the greatest, and after made joyned again his Army together, which he detected a River call A. Che the many forwards and a River call A. Che the many forwards palled a River called Choupe: where he is to beliege a rich Gity called Brzira and felf went to Mazage, where deflatants had left the Dominion both of the Comme he City to his Mother Cleepher. There hundred thousand Footpen to detend which was both well fortified and throng ation, being inclosed upon the is River, having steep Banks defeate, that it could not be approache Upon the South and the Wen ere for the once ) had planted high the

betweet them, and deep hollows and pits made many hundred years before; where the Rocks scaled, there bream a Ditch of Wonderful depth and wides ness. The Wall wherewith the City was inclosed, was 25 Furlongs in compass, whereof the nether parts were builded on frone; and the upper parts of clays yet the frones were mixed with the clay, to the intent that the frail substance clinging to the harder, the one should binde the other; and less the Earth washed upon with the rain might fall all together, there were stanchings of Timber put betwick to stay the whole work, which, covered over with speeds was a way for men to go upon.

decade, was a way for men to go upon.

decade beholding, this kinde of fortification was incertain what to do. For he faw he could not approach to the Walls, but by filling of those and hollow places; and that he could not cherunic fill them, than by making of a Mount, which was the only way he had to bring his English was the only way he had to bring his English to the Walls; but whiles he was viewing the time after that manner, he was struck from the altern that manner, he was struck from the one and without wrapping of his wound, he called for his horse, and letted not for his hurs to give order for such things as he thought expedient. But at length, when by hanging of his leg, the blowdraw from the wound and waxed cold, whereb his hur becam to pain him, he then said he was called the fon of Topiter, but yet he felt in himself the formatter of a diseased body. Not withstanding he would not seturn into the Camp, before he has viewed what was necessary, and gave order for a things he would have done. After the Souldie

coky up of A exence the oreas, a had received then orders, for olucking down of Houses without the Town, they got great plenty of mileto make the Mount within and or calling nocks of trees on heaps into the ditches and hollow places, the Mount within mine days was raised up to the top of the walls, and the Towers were planed upon the ame; fuch was the labour and difface that the Souldiers ruled in this buliness. The ing before his wound was cloted up, took the sins to fee how the Works went forwards, and men he perceived them in fuch height; he comended the Souldiers for their dingence, and cana things to be prought to the walls by realon of lich, they that defended the walls were fore all ed with thor: and by reason they had not seen any or kinds of work before, they were wonderfully azed, efaccially when they beheld he cowere of bleness to some ocwards, and ye could not ceive by what incans they were moved the Gor judged it to be done by the power of the And selice sees repeter nearly comme moustavension that for great Drais and Speak e among them. Though he that by English therefore of the defence of their City. layshed any manner of way in the which d themselves, they fell compandors to the to ask pardon , which being obtained at his Til Olivin with a gracing of Rob an south a rear the mends coosed gold Queen preferring her intle son the grat only obtained paraon. o a reflorement to succional a contraction of the

-

of

O.

10

)-0-

B b 2

tore some thought that her beauty procured her nore favour than his mercy; but this is certain, that the Childe which atterwards she brought forth (whosoever did beget it) was called Alexanders from this place Polipereon was sent with a power to a City called Nors, where he overthrew in Battel the inhabitants that encountred with him, whereby he

got the City to his possession.

There were many other Cities obscure of fame which came into Alexanders hands, by the abandoning of the inhabitants, who affembled themselves together in arms, and kept a Rock called Dominic. The same was, that Hercules had belieged this Rock beforetime in vain, and by reason of an Earth quake was ensorted to depart. When Alexander viewed this Rock, and saw how steep it was and unpassable, he became void of counsel, till such time as an old man that knew well the place, came to him with his two sons, offering for a reward in guide his men by a way to the top of the Rock. As leasander promised them sourscore Talents, and keeping one of his sons as a pledge, he sent him to perform what he had promised.

Multiple the Kings Secretary was appointed with certain Souldiers light armed, to follow the Guide whose purpose was to deceive the Indians, by setching a compass about the Rock s but this same Rock was not as the most part of Rocks are, which lying associated ways up unto the top by degrees; in the sould upright after the fashion of a Burt, being broad beneath, and ever as it grew upward, it greates not less and less, till it became sharp in the tops and it was not ofted on the one side with the River of Indiana.

havir

BOOK VILLE OF ELECTION OF COLUMN having high and fleep banks, and upon the other fide with deep directes and hollow places, full of water and mude. Wherefore there could be deviled no way to win it, except thole ditches were till filled. There was a Wood at hand, which the Klug commanded to be cut down; and caming the boughs to be shred off for the carriage, they filled the hollows with the bare flocks. Alexander bare the first tree, and all the Souldiers followed with a couragious thout a for there was no man that would refuse to do that which they saw the King begin, so that within seven days the ditches and hollow places were filled up. Then the King appointed the Agrians and the Archers to go to the Affault, and did chuse thirty young men of fuch as he judged most apr for the purpose, our of his own Band, appointing Charge and one Alexander to be their Conductors , and exhorted Ale ander that the remembrance of his Name might make him hardy.

T

th

to.

he

he

ne

m-)o-

ed an

Wal

uc

m

1

vi id tc

yil

el Bil Di At the first, because the hazard was somewhet, the King was not determined to adventure his own person; but when the Trumpet blew to the Alfault, ne was of such a ready courage, that he could not abstrain, but making a signe to his Guard that they should follow him, he was the his that let soot ipon the Rock. There were few contented to tarry behinde, but many lest their array whose they should in order of Battel, and followed the hing. The chance of those was milerable whom the running River swallowed in, when they sell down from the Rock; which sight was sorrowful to such as were out of danger, being admonstred by the peast of Bb.

what they ought to fear themselves & hereipun their compassion being turned into fear, they lamented as well themselves, as those whom they saw die before their faces. At length, they advanced to far, that without getting of the Rock they could not retire back again without apparent destruction. For their Enemies rowled down great stones upon them, wherewith they were easily beaten down, by reason the Rock had so slippery and unstable standing. Yet for all that, Charas and Aexander, who were appointed to the leading of the thirty chosen Souldiers, had gotten to the top of the Rock, and began to fight hand to hand. But there was fo many Darts call at them from afar, that they received more wounds than they could give: wherefore Alexander, both mindful of his name and of his promise, whiles he fought more eagerly than warrly, was inclosed about and flain. Whom when Charte law dead, he ran upon his Enemies; and unminiful of all things, faving of revenge, he flew many with his Pike, and divers with his Sword. ur being laid at by fo many at once, he fell down dead upon the body of his Friend. The death of these two so hardy young men, and of the rest, moved Alexander greatly; yet perceiving no remedy, he cauled the Retreat to be founded. It was greatly for their fafeguard, that they retired by little and little without appearance of any tear. And the Lidians contented to have repulled their Enemies, purfued not after them. Alexander hereupon was descrimined to leave off his purpole, feeing he law no hope how to win the rock : yet he made a countenance as though he meant to continue the Siege

end made an approach with to ways putting fresh men in the place of them, this were wearied.

When the Indians perceived Meanuters oblinates,

two days and two nights they hanqueted continually, and played upon timbrels, after this manner to sufe their Enemies to think they had no doubt in the Siege, but trulted certainly to prevail. The third night the noise of the timbrel cealed, and many torches were leen burning, that the Indiana had the Rock in the dark of the night. Mekander fint Balachrus to discover the Event, who found that the Indians were fied, and that the Rock was abandoned. Then a lighe was given that the whole army should give a shour engether, whereby they did firike fuch fear amongst their Enemies slying withour or-der, that many of them thinking the Macedone at their backs, leaped down the Rocks, and flew themselver ; whereof some malmed in their falling, were left bede their fellows that fled away.

Thus the King being Conquerour of the place rather than of the men, relithed not with handing, with folemn facrifice to the gods, a greatness or viory, and fet up Altars on the rock to Minerva and Victoria. And though the Guides that he appointed to his light armed men, p stormed not to much as they promiled a yer their reward was truly given them. And the rule of the Rock, with the Countrey thereabouts, was committed to Sifocultur, he himfelf going forwards with his Army from thence to Echolimate reduces at the through the season of

ey

cy

ney. e-

at

1-

d 1-

IC F lt.

t

1

1

Biblion Alex-

276 The Life and Death Book VIII.

through the which he should pals, were kept by one Eric with twenty thousand armed men, he committed that part of his Army that were heavy laden to Gown, to be brought on by soft journeys; and going before in person with the Slingers and Archers, he put his Enemies to slight, making the way clear for his Army to pals that followed after. The said our, whether it were for the hatred they did bear unto their Captain, or else to get the favour of the Conquerour, killed Eric as he fied away; and brought his head and his armour unto Alexander. He considering the soulness of the alt, would not honour the doers for their example sake, nor punish them became they served his purpose.

that part of the River called Indus, where Ephelism had prepared all things in such fort as he had committee. One Omphis was King of that Countrey, who before had perswaded his Father to submit himself unto Alexander, and immediately upon his Fathers death sent Embassadors unto him to know his pleasure, whether he should take upon him as a king before his coming, or elfe live privately in the mean scalon: And although he was permitted to govern as a king, yet he would not use the authority granted him until the king came. He had caused Ephelism to be received in the best fort he could device, but notwithstanding he had not visited him, because he would not commit his person to any mans tidelity, but to the Kings.

When he understood of Alexanders coming, he went rowards him with his whole Power, whose

able ville of Alexander Dec Court hants by finall diffances mixed in Batte mongst his Footmen, thewed alar of like Call At the first Alexander did not take him a Friend, be ss an Enemy; and therefore fet his Men in order of Battel, and his Horlemen in wings in readingly to Fight. When Ompose underflood the errour of the Maccdone, he commanded his men to flay, and putting his fours to his Horfe, he rode forward one: Alexander did the like, not questioning w ther he were a Friend or an Enemy, but though himself secure, either through his own munhoo or the others fidelity. Their meeting, as it a seared by their countenances, was very including out for want of an Interpreter they could not peak together; therefore after they had calle one onto them, the Lidian King declared unt lexander, that the cause he met him with an irmy, was to put immediately his whole power o his hands; and tarried not to increat for any forance by Mellengers, but upon trust only had mmitted both his Person and his Kingdom to him hom he knew to make War for the winning

5

1

e

f

d

h.

0

11

-

S

V

S

n

d

e

E.

e

e

Alexander rejoyced to fee his simplicity, and professed him his right hand as a pledge of his promile, and reftored unto him again his Kingdom. He prented unto Alexander fitty and fix Elephants, with may other Beatts of exceeding greatness, and three housand Bulls, which is a Cartel or preat value in hole Countries, and much effected by Kings. Alexander enquired of him; whether he had under the Dominion more Sanddiers, or Tillers of the ground.

ory and Fame; and therefore could not lear

d, that he was driven of necessity to have Repedone tay beyond the River of Hyadlpis; er names were Athalates, and Porus, but the and and refolved to adventure the bazard of the Battel with fach of them in should invade him first. Here-upon Alexander granted unto Omphis both to take upon him the Diadem, and the name of his Father, that was called Taxtler; the cultom of the Countrey dom, who loever enjoyed it.

When he had received Atexander honourably in hospitality three days, the fourth day he declared to his Army's presenting to the King, and to all his Priends, Crowns of Gold, and belides of Coined Silver fourfcore talents. Alexander rejoyced for much in his good will, that he both returned again to him his Gifts and gave him belides a thouland Talents o e (poil he brought with him, with much Plate o and thirty of his own Horses, with the lame fur iture they did wear when he did ride upon them which liberality, as it obliged Omphie, fort greatly of ended the minde of the Macedons. For Meleage at Supper when he had well drunk, faid, He was vie ry glad that Alexander had yet found one in India and Talence. The King bearing in minde how much he had repented the flaying of Client for the fold him . That envisue men were ever Tormentors to them (elucia. ook VIII. of Alexande

e

te

f,

ey

in

ed

пd

115

ed ch

ol

ur

i

of ger

lia

ort.

OW

th

ye

5 10

The

ne unto Alexander, who accom flon offered all things with his win brance being confirmed, they return heir Master. Alexander therefore think rough the greatness of his name, Porus ought to do the like feat Class area to him to and tribute, and to fummen him to come and tomage, when he hould emet the bounds of he adom. Ports made and well. That of those quests be would perform one, which was to mee im at the entry of bu Kingdom, but that should be dems, and with a Power. Alexander therefore bedetermined to puls the River of Hydefix . Bo ones that had been Author of the Recellion nongit the Arachoffant, was taken, and brong o him bound, with thirty Elephants, an apt of ance against the Indians, that are wont to ore crust in those ocasts than in the trust of the m Nation. Gamaxie, King of a final pomor dia, which had confederated with Borne ought likewife bound unto him. Wi miniming them both to priton, and R ints to Omphie, he came unto the River of

But Form lay encamped on the further lide hinder his pallage, having fourfeare and five Elemans of huge fixength of body, three hundred aggons of War, thirty thouland lootmer, among thom, there were many Archers, whole flats is at been faid before) were more heavy than they all wield. Form, himself did ride upon at Elemant greater than all the reft; who also being of a flattice, appeared notable in his Armour than

courage equal to the frength of his body, and for exact a wildow as was possible to be found amongst to rade a Nation.

The Micedous were not so much assaid with the subt of their Enemies, as they were with the greatest of the River they had to pass, which being four Furlogs in bredth, and so deep that no sooting could be found, appeared to them like a great Seas and yet the largeness thereof nothing mitigated the violence of the stream, but it ran with no less surely than if it had been narrow, appearing by the repercussion of the water in many places, to be full of

great flones in the bottom.

This River being fufficient to affitight them of it felf, the light of the further bank, sull of Horse and Men, was an increase to their tetrour; where the Elephants that had bodies of an unreasonable greatures stood in their sight, being provoked to bray of curpole, to the intent that with their terrible noise they should fill their Enemies ears with sear. Though the Mucelone were couragious, and their hearts ful of good hope, as they who oftentimes had experient of their own acts, yet their Enemies and the Rive both together, made them wonderfully amazed for they could not think how to keep a stediati court to the further shows in so weak and uncertain Boats who when they were there, could they see how it arrive with success.

There were many Islands in the middest of the River, into the which both the Lidiaus and the Macedone did swim, holding their weapons above their heads: There they seems show their heads:

note VIII. of Alexander the Great. 301 and of both Kings, who by experience of the mall bickering, made trial of the fucces of the Entert to come.

nga

the

eat-

our ing

furell of

of it

th

eat

y o

ue fu

**CI**I(

TV

ied Un

ats

v i

th

ligh

But amongst the Macedons there were two noble young men, called Sisimachus and Niesser, excelling in courage, and in hardy attempts; and through their continual good fortune, had got a resolution to despite all peril. Other young men took them for their Captains, and without any other amount awing their Pikes, Iwom over into an Island, which was tull of their Enemies, where through their boldness only, they slew many of them, and so might have returned with glory, if rathrels (when it findeth prosperous success) could ever be content with measure: But while with soom and prost they tarried for their Enemies, they were suddens inclosed by such as did swim over the River, and were killed with Darts, which they cast at them from afar. Such as escaped their Enemies, were drowned in depth of water, or eddies of the stream.

drowned in depth of water or eddies of the fiream.

This fight put Form in great counge, who saw all their doings from the further those? And though descender was long uncertain what way to take the at length he deceived his Enemies by this course. There was an Island in the River greater than the rest, and apt to hide his designe, by reason it was full of Wood, and had a great rampier cast upon that bank which was towards his Enemies, there both his Footmen and Hosemen might stand covered from the light of the Indians; and the nature to take their eyes another way from looking towards the Hosemen to show themselves against their Enemies of Hosemen to show themselves against their Enemies.

tar

382 The Life and Death Book VIII

the off from the Bland, and to put the Indians in tear of them, making ever a flew as though they would fwith over the River; which thing Protomy did many days together, to the intent that Porne hould be inforced to remove his Army to that part to withhand him, and thereby brought them out of math of the Island. Alexander also caused his own avison to be set upon the Rivers side over against his Lucinics, and all the pomp that pertained to the tate of a king to be set forth within their view, with his Lifequard standing in sight, the same thich was wont to attend his person: Furthers for a decay, who was equal with Alexander in arts, and like unto him both in face and person should there openly apparelled like the King, and It might appear to Porne, that Alexander was in temaning there, and went not about to pass he River.

The execution of this defigne was first letted by a supper, whereby afterwards it was furthered, and proight to good effect; softune ever using to turn the discommodities into good success towards him for when the Enemies were thus aftern to observe training who lay upon the river against him, and Alexander with the rest of his. Army was lashe about the passing of his men into the Island before mentioned, there fell suddenly a great storm, scarcely tolerable to such as lay within their Cabines, which is much assisted the Schildters abroad, that they torsook their Boars, and sed again to laid. And yet for all this, their bushing and noise was not hear of their Enemies, through the vehicinency of the shower.

As this Tempelt began indigenty, fo it for

in

cy ny ns

ırt

of

vn aft ho

N,

of the said and of the contract

sled ; but the clouds remained to dark . peared not to much light as the Souldiers now one another by the face, when they (pake her; which darkness might have seared some en, confidering that they had to sow in hat they knew not; their Enemies (personaling for them at their landing, who want as blinde men that for glory fought ut Alexander used that which put other men in our, to serve for his delire, and willed that even into the course of th Boats with filence : his Boat was the first that law from the shore, towards, the further side of nemics. Parar only keeping his Watch are tolony. There was but one Boat that Proce he way upon a Rock, and all the other recove

discander then commanded the Soudier to their armour and fall into array; and and to march towards his Ehrmiss and to march towards his Ehrmiss ared to Power, that a great number of come over the River, and la ild flerightway give him Battel.

( according to the fault that is )

ough overmuch confidence in him but thought that Abialance, we take with him, had come to his affile the with him, had come to his affile the day appeared; and the truck Route put fouth a hundred armed we shouland Horsetnes, under the had brother, to keep Alixander in action.

They counted these Waggons their principal Force; for every one of them carried fire men, two Archers, two with Targets, and two that ruled the Horles, which were not unarried a but when it came to the Fight, they let their reins look, and beltowed their Dares among their Enemies. But the use of those Waggons served to small purpose; for the shower sac had fallen more violently than was accultomed had made the fields wet and flabby, that the Waggons could not fitt, but stuck in the mire, and beour baggage, or any thing that might be an impedi-

ment unto him, hercely invaded his Enemies.

The Sepitains and the Dabans were the first that
gave the onset, and Perdiens was appointed with the offemen to charge upon the right-hand-Battel of the Indians. Then the Battels beginning to Joyn on all parts, they that had the charge of the Waggons. counting them their last refuge, let loofe the reins and ruthed forward into the midit of the Fight.

coming of thele Waggons appeared to be donbeful and dangerous to both Parties. A first bening the Maccains were born over an thrown by them; and when the Waggons cam my rough or miry place, the Ludian were throw nema: For when the Horlesthat drew then use galled, and put in fear, they carried th without government, and tumbled part of the thirt; and part into the River: a few tra-e fields, and fied for frecom unto Perm, who Waggons feattered all over the Fields; and doue with their Rulers, he diffributed of his Elephants among this Friends, and placed

generalism that a grice of the archive archive end a grice of the decided by the first three of the control of hred by the fulfi Blind them has it Arrows were a nuck them on this and well-one other Die

amor

ogesethere was in emer Force notweld with a few, with whore the umfean, allembled fuch of h storespilerting his Elephants in ciel. They put the Migrain identificie universated on lengt of surally do feas them, but also diffurtion their product sufficient left in the little before thought themselv int which respective include and the decision of the decision Quarer ngurita (a) The Battel was prolong

and formering pursuing area them, accertain kinds of emolies weapons, prepared for the purpose) shey cut upon the legs: Their the Macedon by divided a for not only the feat of to the fear of a new kinde of tormen raufed them to leave nothing unactempt-y, the Elephants wearied with wounds, without frugling, did cafe their Gover-pearth, and did tear them in pieces; se sous in first, feet at the contraction put in lich fear, that they were no puther Enemies, but driven out o

contaken of the greatest part of he course cast Darte, whereof he had plea pen his Elephant, amongs them the im, whereby he wounded many; as be lay open to every mane blow, he was all parts, till he received hime wounds! before a charge which he bled to must no power to calt any more barts, but they fell out of his hunds. The Eleph be did vide upon, pricked forwards a less great diffurbance amongs the Ma il that his Governous seeing the King

AND WILL OF BELLEVISION IN THE LOCAL

In the mean feafon, the Brother of Clarifer the to fear by Alexander unto Porse, begin to realio im that he should not be to oblinere to prove an attendity, but rather yield hungelf amounts Conmercur : But he, not with the ding that h as almost decayed; and his blood fasted youthed up at a known voice, he last, That he have the the up at a known voice; he had, That he be will d bis Country; and with that word shot a Die nich by chance was not fallen from hime the te midde of his Breeft into his Beat timed freein newed this left proof of his Manhood. he field ain more fall then before: But when the 18 hair, through many wounds that he had nearly inned in like fort; then be flayed and that his recement compands this Enemies that purfue

that time Alexander was going near unto his o understanding the obstitutes of Date; wifes a cobe spaced that made resultance; who come in man threw, their Daris against Population contract that have in his defence, info or length he was to apprecially that he had informatis Elephant. Then the Indian his Governour, thinking that Posts de ve alighted y canted the Beatt, after h ed manner, to bind towards the earth tring himfelf, all the rest, as they were down their bodies likewite cause of Piece taking, and of the ush that faw Posts on the ground, he can be spouled, thinking he had been due Cca

THE PERSONAL PROPERTY. recession about him to pull off his Armour and his attore a which thing when the Elephant faw; he again to date not his Matter, running upon the Spoil, is, and to day him district of lift him up again upon his after with repeated to lift him up again upon his after within possible and low him condition had being to lift up his eyes; he can declarate the behold to lift up his eyes; he can not be added to be a lift up his eyes; he can not be against the being the lift up his eyes; he can not be a lift up his eyes; he can not be a lift up his eyes; he can not be a lift with compassion at the about his him with firm with a lift with compassion.

When the respectively a lift is being the Fame of mine and being the lift in the lift. consider the second of the sec man of greater Power then my felf; but now that find a little falls which the college with the second selection of the select manner he thought good the Victory should be dead The best squothere; of wellieb for away where but terms had been sunberein there but been sufficient play henry bom transitions is the felling of many one ebrewor on the sound bound bound his Admorthment availed him more then if he had bounded him more then if he had bounded him for his life a For hen Alexanderic faut the greatness of his courage, this leasts to order of fear that to could not be brown with any advertity, he was moved met only to

ve him his life, but allo honourably to enter an for as long as he awanted of his wounge. e had fought in his quarrel; and when he was once healed (contrary to that which all men looked for ) received him amongst the name profits friends.
inhege Anis Kingdom grezier then it was before. There was nothing in Alexanders nature more Femue in Mutation, when it was list that delerved true praise and glory, especially when he less the same in his Enemy. But when it was sound many of his own men, it was somewhat cross unto him, thinking that their same might be a destruction. on to his own greatnels, which he ever thought to ow preater, as they were of greatnels, whom he based in the spiritual of with the section of the confestio Soundless resto more willing to de installing the color (be Wars, life alle control ones and (alter he had common control of Accional your in the last recent The second control of were in minch policy of throughout them with Greek but of the had never for

his

om he

on,

in oct on on

A STATE OF THE STA

OS CURTIUS

ord a un promited him code, dans hige: to the litten, that having overe e at might with the Ocean Scribat we of all the world. The Mountains, next a pleasiful of Comber to make Ship, with ling down whereof, the Macaen its of fisch biggiels, as they had not for d allo Rhidsecroter. Beatle that he feld any other places which name was give they that not feen Beatts that be feldo une Greit, form the history and

the plants of Springs keeping the ground moil is there was also many Serpents (een, whole Scales galler a like gold; There was nothing more dangerous then the poylon proceeding from them; for immediately upon the flinging, death followed, until fact time as the Inhabitants of the Country thewed a tenedy. From thense, through Delarts, they came unto the great River Hidragian, where, into there lovined a great Wood, which having the Lies as are not wont to be seen in other places, was also full of wide Peacocks. Alexander removing his Camp from thence, took a Lown by assault; and taking Holtages, appointed them to pay Tribute.

Foliages, appointed them to pay Trilie came to a great City (builded afmer of that Country) which was both
and also invironed about with a deep ont o hant? they roffered real ceilige sacciono nas citras encomonid were tyed,

e Macedone did win by affault a Some of the following spirits of the following spirits and affault a Some of the following spirits and affault a spirit spirits and affault a spirit spirits and affault and affau when a distanter land gotten show address, with a part of his auctors outly, and committing another in the foldout of fuch as sweath of oth the reliability of fuch as sweath of oriver the national a little

nt do o do do do no ne

mir estimated,

book la, boo

and who have A them. The the charge west's garment of gold, that covered the Catt of his diversion his feet wate let with his arms were garnished with d hanging at his cars two precious Ron's,

tride) with heathle faired and and another faired and another faired and be Kingdom and his hand has Country mounts had been another faired and another faired and the King characters to they detailed unity unto Alexander put four of the Lyan, who fireight was took had another along the faired and the fair

But check white your child the long to the

h d,

h

15 5,

miss New Great When

on the greatuefs of the Lin ation of the Country, for difficultive ght it arbited katesprife, to feel our nliabiting the vices mothers and affect on the other fide, the greeding be distincted deligated by the production of the contract of t dalischarithe Macedone, which connected and were given a citizative described with the citization of citization of the citization of citization of the citization of citization of the citization of the citization of citization of citization of citization of citization of citization of citizatio

o He in the least of the least

and hat leh hers

hen

The Life and Death Booking

en File River of Digits a complete oper one of them; a Bridges Piants according by a Bridge. Fame never reported things maket be the begreater than indeed they see Glory, though it be grown to a contain yes it is more in Panie then in affilia. the of you of late did think that you prout a good of which all to endure the Elephants; showing afair of a Galler? Who thought I could have possible the interpretation in the best field out of Alia, if I ales and have seen the society of backs. Think, you that the Eloch to best to be greater than the Herds of Bealls you a few in ather places, foring they are 6 year in the substitution of the process of the process of the state of the process of the states of the process of the states of the process of the states of the process of the pr

took tie. of Alexander the creat

the party, then against us a Why separth and a series of their business we have prepared for the That matter is it whether they are of the littless when the ter that Porus bald, or whether they are three those thing we perceive that when two or three are w ed, the rest begin to fly away? And for asmuc of well be governed when they are but few, w there are so many thousands together, they must not be an impediment one to another, and breed a confe of amongst themselves; they are so univieldy, by re son of their huge bodies; that they be neither app pass forwards, nor yet to sly: I have always so lit steemed them, that when I have had pleasy of them would never use them, knowing very well, that they are note dangerous to such as implay them, that to their members. But peradventure it is the multitude of their rsemen and Fastmen that move your Were your words to fight against such numbers & or is it the sime you have encountred with districted male de ? The River of Granike is a witnest how in able the power of the Macedons in against a straight and so and so is Cilicia that stowed with the Property and so Cilicia that stowed with the Property of the Cilicia that stowed with the Cilicia t Mond, and Arbella, whose Plant are b their bones. You too late begin to number it bave made Alia a Wilderness . When you er the McMelpont, you skould then kave con to small numbers! Now the Sevenians de fil hove aid at band front the Bactrians, and we pomerateb the Sogdians s yet for ollabo formen in grhom I pur my confidence v. Thate a to your force i. I reserve your manbood about

はいはいりはしいなかけいといいはとりいうなのははは

The Life and Death ' Book IX.

ge and afformate of my archicucments : So long as the field amongst you, I will neither weigh I stand in the stells amongst you, I will neither meigh my felf, nor mine Enemies, do you but shew an ap-personne that there is hope in you, and chearfulness? are not needly entred into our travels; but bave passed all our tabours, being come unto the rifing of the Sun, and to the Ocean Sea, except our own floth be our impoliment: from thence having subdued the world, we fould return Conquerours into our Country. Do not you as those negligent Husbandmen, that lose their fruit after it is once ripe: The rewards of our jonency are greater then our peril: The Country into which we are now marching is rich, and of no force; thither I purpose to bring you, both to win glory, and to get you spail; for worthy are you to carry those richer into your Country, which the Sea doth there fo plentifully east them up upon their shore: You are men of that vertue, as to leave nothing unprovided, nothing endone: I define and conjure you, by the glory you have gotten, in which you exceed the state of men, and by all that I have deserved of you, and you of me, in which we remain invincible, that you will not forfake me, purposing to visit the end of the world . Me, I Jay, that have been brought up as a childe amongst you. I will not make mention how I am your King; in aother things I have commanded you, let me now intreat you once in this; It is I that make this request foremelt in the adventure and danger, and oftentimes with my own Buckler bave defended my Army: Take not the Victory out of my bands, by which (if envy be not the let ) I wall become both equal in glory to Hercules and Bacchus: Give you affent to mine interceffion,

and of Liexander the Great 260 ed at length break your abstingte silence: When your shouting become, that was wont to be a Declara sion of your chearfulness? Where are the chearful countenances of my Macedons? I know not your Souldiers, and it frems that I am not bnown of you I seak, methinks, to your deaf ears in vain, and in vain go about to ftir up your unwilling, and immoveable mindes.

Notwithstanding all these words, they have own their heads towards the earth, and perfevered

2

A

6

A

lf

29

be

r-

till in silence: Then he proceeded.

I know hat (said he) wherein I have unwitting offended you, that you will not once vouch aft to look no in the face: I frem to be folitary, and in a Wilde els; Is there none of you that I freak unto will an for me? It there name at the least who will deny m request? What is the thing that I require? so was glory, and your own profit. Where are they no born I fam not long ago contending, who should first ake up their King when he was wounded, and now you we me alone, you for ake me, you berray n memies? But I will not leave mine enterpri go alone; leave me alone to those Rivers. easts, and to thase Nations, the very names of ou fear so much. The Scychians and Bacter with me, who of late were mine Enemies. and mbo are my Souldiers; I had rather die then be a King ruled, and at other mens appointment Go. get on home, go I fay, and triumph of the a luning your King's for I will here either obtain i Bory, reof you have despaired, or else die e ub that all be bonourable.

Not withstanding what he said, there was not one Souldier

402 The Life and Death . Book IX.

Souldier that would open his mouth to Beak, but tood waiting when force of the Princes and great Captains finned declare unto the King, that there remained not in them any oblinate refulat of the Wars, but that they were exhausted with wounds, se fow and with communit navel that they were Cable to maure any longe . As they tood thus contined, and afraid in plence, and looking upon rumour amongst them; and afterwards a lamentation , and by little and little, they began more manifellly to thew their complaints, the tears falling trom their eyes. The Kings anger was then for med and compassion, that he himself was not able to abstrain from tears. At length the whole Assembly. burting out into an excellive weeping, Cents took upon him to press forwards towards the Judgment-Scat where Alexander stood, fignifying that he had omewhat to lay: When the Souldiers faw him pull his Helmet from his head; (for to it was the cuftom to speak unto the King) they began to require him that he would deliver the cause of the whole Army: Then Centr began on this manner:

More the gods defend in from all wicked thoughts, as I doubt not but that shey do, there are none of your Souldiers but are of the same minde towards you, that they have been in times past, if it be your pleafure to command them to go forwards to sight, to hazard themselves, or with their blood to commend your Name and Posterity. And if you will needs persevere in your Opinion, though we are unarmed, naked, and sticken blood, we will cither come after you, or go history you, a you shall think expedient: But if you will

will be content to bear your Suildiers griefs and complaints, which are not fained but expressed by the utmost necessity, I bumbly befrech you then, that you would veuchfafe favourubly to bear them, who constantly have followed your Authority and fortune, and ar yet ready to fallow whereformer you will appoint. O Alexander, with the greatness of your Air, you have not opercame only your Enemies but allo your own Souldiers : What foever mans mortality is able to fulfit, that is performed by us, having passed over so many Se and Countries better known to us, then the Industra shem selves: We now remain almost in the acturment co of the world; and yet for all this your purpose is passinte another world, and less out an Incia unking to the Andrews. Le cover to pluck out the a minding to learch further with your Victories Sun bath rifited with his beams in which tru magination answerable to your beart, but ing our capacity and bower. Tour manhood a always increasing, but our force is now dehold our bodies destitute of blood, pierced mi wounds, and deformed with so many skars; now are dutied, and our armous confumed opporel after the manner of the Perfians, ele que Country garments du fail us we devener ete in range babits who is he that hath a Coulet or Honle icul or to himself & Examine bow many of the Ma ns reein amongst us, and what remained to er man of e Spoil: Being the Oraquerours of all m ll men se are the poored that the about ance or a fr that lerbut barabe very War a left. Our a unition War is confirmed, and yet you minde to put bibis ens Iv

ì

Ľŗ

ø,

3-

4-

UT

re

nd

go

026

rill

goodly Army of yours naked unto Beafis, the multitude of whom, though the Indians purposely do increase, yet by their vain report, we may perceive the number to be great. But if you be absolutely determined to pass yet further into India, the Country that lieth couthward is not so desart as the other; which being subdued, you may pass to that Sea which Nature bath appointed to bound in the world. Why do you seek that glory star off, which remained to your eady at your band? Here the Ocean Sea doth meet us; and if we mistake not; we are come to the utmost place where you be not leads you. I had rather speak these things before, then behinde your back, for I seek not so much to win the savour of the Souldiers, as I desire that you should rather hear the voice of them speaking, then the marmure of them complaining.

When Cents had made an end of his Oration, there arole a cry and lamentation, which in confused voices every where call d Alexander their King, their Father, and their Lord. Then the other Captains (and especially the more ancient of them, who by teason of their age had the more honest excute, and greater authority) made the like request; so that the King was not able in that oblinacy, either to chantle them, or asswage them: Therefore nucertain what to do, he leaped from the Judgment Seat, and commanding his lodging door to be thut, he admitted no man to come unto him, but such as were accustomed to be about his person. Two days he contained in this angry melancholy, and the third day he came forth amongs his men, causing twelve Altars of square stone to be let up as a Monument of his journey, and willed the Trenches

of his Camp to be made wider, and the places where the Souldiers lay to be marged greater then ferved for the bigness of their bodies, thinking by form and thape of things thus increased, to leave deceitful Worder to Posterity.

From thence he returned by the way he had put led before, and incamped near unto the River of Acefines. Cenus chanced there to die, whole death the King lamented; bur yet he faid, that for follow days he had made an over-long Oration, as thou he alone should have returned into Macdon. By that time the Navy of Ships which he had appointed to be made, stood in readints, and affore an Memnon, in the mean feation, brought him out of Thrace 6000 Hortemen, and befides from Flary and 7000 Footmen, with twenty five thouland Arms that were wrought with filver and gold, which he differbuted amongs his men and commanded the old to be burned; purposing to pals unto the Ocean Sea with a thousand Ships : But before he departed, he reconciled by Affinity Pores and Taxiles, betwixt whom there was a new discord sisten upon their old harred. He had obtained of them great aid, both in making and the furnishing of his Fleet.

e

5

H

)-

8

•

1,

10

a,

). V,

n,

25

es

of

During the time he was about this buliness; he builded two Cities, the one whereof he called Miccea, and the other Bucephalon, naming the latter by the name of his Horle that was dead. He gave order that his Elephants and Carriages should pass by Land, and he sailed down the kiver, proceeding every day about forey surlongs, to that he might always land his power in such places as he thought

Dd 4

con-

convenient. At length he came into a Country where he Rivers of Hydesper and Acesine, do joyn together, and do the from thence into the bounds had on called Sobient. They declared, that their Present store fick, did inhabit the Country: They were cloathed in beats skins, using Clubs for hear weapons: And though they had left the customs of the Greeks, yet there appeared many things amongst them, that declared from whence they were descended.

Here the King landed, and marched two hundred ten furlougs within the Country, which he wa-and took the chiefest City in the same. There rate forty thousand men that stood in desence sainst himsupon a Rivers side; but he passed the sates, patting them to slight; and after they sted the City, he wan it by some: The young men were all flain, and the rest sold as slaves. After that e assaulted another Cary, where he was repulsed by the great force of the Desendants, and lost many his men : But when the Inhabitants law that he continued ttill the Siege, delpairing of their lafe-guards they fet his on their houles, and destroyed themselves, then Wives and Children; which fire when the Macdon quenched, they kindled the tame again: It beened aftrange contention, the Citizens to delivoy their own City, and their Enemies labouring to preferve it; the Wars to contrarily chang dithe Laws wrought in man by nature: The Caffile was laved wherein a Garrison was elett. Alescander went about this Caftle by water, which was invisioned with three of the greatest Rivers in

look IX. of Alexander the Great 1407

Il India , Garger excepted , Index passing of North-fide , and Acefines running into on the South. Where thele Rivers met role like furges of the Sea, being full of Mu Ouze which by the course of the water ren upon the shore; for all that the Bures broad, yet the Channels are but narrow, when the Ships must pass, The waves did rife to hi and thick, breaking formetimes upon the and formetune upon the fide of the Ships, that the Marriners began to vail their Sails; but they we to troubled through fear, and the violent swiftness. of the stream; that they could not order their tacking, to that two of their greatest Ships were drowned in fight; and the smallest Vellels, which were e able to be governed, were driven upon the ore without any harm. The King changed upon a place where the Waves (welled highest, where the his Ship was so tolled and traversed, that the m could not direct its course, wherefore the ig fearing to be drowned, pulled off his ots being seady to eath himfelf into the u his Confidents did fwim near thereabout to receive him. It appeared to him to h peril was the greatest, either to swim me (bil aboutd. But the Marriners la estully with their Care-cadding all the for ay in mans power to cut through th whose importunate travel the water feemed to the plunder and to give place. So that at length got out of the surges, and yet me able to bring the surges, and yet me able to bring the surges. at length nip to the from, dashed upon the in Rt. flat. it caring that the Ships and the Stream tought ttel together. Alexander

108 . The Bife and Death Book IX

Alexander having escaped this peril. fet up to eve-Reveran Altan, whereupon he offered due Sacrice y and that done, he past forwards thirty furadricant and Malliant; who being accustomed to be at wer among themselves, were then joyned in Society. They afferibled in Arms to the number of thouland Footmens ten thouland Horlemen and nine hundred armed Waggons; whereof when the Maccions were advertised, who believed that they had palled all perils, seeing a fresh War arise with new fresh Nation, they were amaz'd with a sudden fear, and began again with feditions words to repove their King ! They alledged, that he would forger, to make war upon those Nations inhabiting eyond the lame; which enterprise, though it we est, they had not for all that ended the Way neve the more, but rather made an exchange for a ne labour, being put forth amongst this wilde Nation to make the Ocean Sea open to him with the blood, and to be drawn beyond the Son and th Stars: They were compelled (they faid ) to vil those places that Nature covered to remove from mans knowledge: They grudged, that to the whom if they should vanquish, and put to sligh they could not lee what benefit they thould receive thereby; but only darkness and obscurity of the Air, which always covered the deep Sea, replenished with multitudes of Moniters wallowing in tho immoveable waters, in which dying Nature did Abserted T

look IX. of Alexander the Great. 409

ve-

II-

the

in of

ind

the

hey

ith

ud-

to

of

ing 7en

ve

iev

th

(0)

ha

eiv

th

he

not

The King little moved for himfelf, was much much for these passions of his Souldiers : when re he affembled them all together, declaring of ow feeble a force those Nations were, whom they ared so much, and who only remained, and were an impediment to them ( having passed over many Countries) to attain to the period of their avels, and to the end of the world. He thewe ow that in respect of their owner lead, he had see Enterprise over Ganger, with the Constituted the ations inhabiting beyond the lame; and had di ched his journey this way; whereas their gloreal) be as great, and their danger less, seeing the cean was in a manne within fight, the Arrivhere he telt blowing in his lace. He required them erefore, that they would not envy the glory he ught, by calling the bounds of Hercules and h er, feeing that with fo little pain they inghe give o their King perpetual Paine and Immercally doing whereof, they thould depart out of half Conquerous : whereas otherwife they hould n to dy away from thence. It is the property o multitudes, and forcially of Men of War, to be wo with every little motion, amongst whom, as from doth from ande, fort is foon pacified. re was never a more chearful cry made of any

my before, then the Souldiers now made to Alexader. Who willed him to lead them wherefore would, and make himfelf equal in glory unto make himfelf equal in glory unto me whole Acts he did chulate. Alexander rejoying in the willing nefs that appeared in his Souldiers removed traight ways towards his Empires, who here the figure people of all the Indian. They

prepared

010 The Life and Death Book X repered themselves manfully for the Wars , and choir, for their Captain one of the Oxidracans, who was of an approved Manhood; he incamping at the foot of a Mountain, made-fires all abroad, to use his number to appear the greater, and went bout in vain to fear the Macedons, when they were at reft, by making of alarms, with their cryes and manner of howling. When the day appeared, Alexander having an affured confidence to obtain the Vi-Gory, commanded the Souldiers to put on their Armour, and chearfully to fall in order of Battel; Bu the ludigue (whether it were for fear, or by reason of some sedition risen among st them ) suddenly sled me the Delart Mountains, whom Alexander followed in vain, and not able to overtake them, took their Carriage. After this he came to the City of the Order whereunto great numbers were fled, owell in trult of the strength of the place, as of their own power. As Alexander was about to make the approach. Demophon, his Diviner, admonsthed his that he should either defer the asfault, or else a meddle with it at all, for there appeared fignes the heard his words, he beheld him, and faid

If any main should interrupt thee when thou art ha fie about thy Science, or considering of the Entrails should not be seem unto thee to be troublesome, and ha coming to be ungraseful? Let truly (faid he.) So are about now unto me (faid Alexander) for baving so great actions in band, of more moment then the Enmails of Bealts, I finde no greater impediment then a

And as toon as he had spoken the word, he cau-

O'ALE AMERICA COLOR them to reaf up the Ladders; and whileft other on fricked and flayed at the danger, he mounted the wall in his own person. The same was venarrow on the top, not divided with loops commonly used) but inclosed with one whose and named. Battlement round about, which caused to be the more hard to scale: Alexander therefore ving no convenient place to fland for his denger the Darts that were cast at him from all ts. His Souldiers could not get to him, they were beaten from the walls by the shot that came ing given up into their Enemies hands, hame ercame their imminent danger. But their overuch halte became their hinderance, and was the use why they could not come to the relicue of their ng : For whiles every man coveted roalsend the iddens, they were to heavily laden, that they brake inders, and fuch as were mounted upon them tell wn again deceiving Alexander of his only be: So that in the light of all the Army fie those litute on the walls, as in a Delait, without an or fuccour, and had weared his left arm ich he held his Target) in receiving the Dates wo unto them, who shood in readings to rece the beigiving no car unto them, and stock the the state took the head of before a deferving rather the tepor offiness, then of any fame that might found cy is for with a delperate leap he call bamb. the City that was feel of his Enemi

and Hs.

in

ent ent ent

lex Vi Ar

Bu for Red

W-

neir

th

the man had been at

aused

Pag.

build segover his feet again , it was likely eithe e hould have been flain, or taken alive. But he b chance to conveyed his body, what he fell upon his feet, and fought with fuch as came against him : For tune to provided, that he could not be enclosed a bout, by reason of an old tree, which as it had bee of purpole stood near the wall, whose broad bought being full of leaves, covered him from above; and the greatness of the flock kept his enemies from coming at his back, and upon the forefront he received the darts that were cast against him with his Target. For though there were never so many that contended with him afar off, yet durft there no man come nea

darts as well as his Target did.

In this extremity, the greatness of Alexander Fame chiefly fought for him, and next of all despe neally. At length, through the multitude of his nemies that continually flocked about him, both h Target was laden with thot; his Helmet was bro ken with frones, and his legs fainted and failed un him by reason of his continual travel; which when his enemies perceived, they without fe drew more near unto him ; of whom he receive two with his fword in such fort, that they fell dow dead at his feet : and from that time forward no was to bold to approach to near him, but three Darts, and thot Arrows at him afar off. He lay at pain ) defended himself upon his knees, un fuch time as an Indian thot an Arrow at him the wat two Cubits long, which a little above his rig

selfed through his Confe and he thed to much bloud, that he le as one at the point of death; and therewith ne to faine, that he had not firength to plude Assow. Then the Indian which had me with great joy to spoil his body but lexander feltibis enemies hand upon him moved it is to be shought) with despite to receive an inby to that extremity, he called again his to at were palling away , and with his fword th enemy ( being unarmed ) through the body hen he had thus flain three of his edemies o who dead before him; all the test shood amaged after Then Alexander deliving before his last breat ould fail to be killed fighting, began to maile up body upon his Target's but his strength would be serve him thereunto a and therefore he reached a bough that hung over his head, covering ther to have raised himself subat his ability not soft him, he fell down again upon his knees, and and given with his basid, challenged his enem y of shem durft come and tight with him. dast Princester tepulling his chemist on mother ng, came unto the place where the King Alexander espied hien, , though he had no ne to live, yet he took his genoing fond) comfort his death, and for all his ferbleucks began to rest himfelf. of Then carne Timeste, and within a while marue, and after them driftones. When it was ac published amongst the Indians, there disharder as entred within the walls of they left their desence other places, and came docking thisher, where they

by his conditions of the condi

iea an

der

ipe ho

is c

un hie

fe iv

Ol

7.C

ıy.

th hill there feered a stated finders shood in defence of the state period. Taken y after he had fought notably, and received many wounds, was there flain: Perceiver also, not withstinding that he was stricken and wounded with their Darts; yet with his Target hadefended die Kings person, without any regard of himself. And Leonami, whiles he relifted the Indians that eagerty fan upon Alexander, received sofore a blow on the neck, that he fell down in a swound at the Kings feet. By that time Pencesses became so seeble of his wounds, that he was not able to detend him any thore: The last hope and refuse arounded, that he could not endure any longer the force of the Indiana.

In the mean leafon the fame was optead amongstone because, that the King was flain; which because a matter that should have put others in feat, used up their hearts, and made them the hadier: For from that time forwards, there was none that had respect of his own petil; but adventured unto the walls and breaking down the same with Pickerses, entred in at the breach, making flaughter definite Enemies, of whom sew thood at deserte, but

fed away.

There was neither man, nor woman, nor infant forted; for whomsoever they met, they judged him to be the person that had hurt their King; and fort length; with the flaughter of the multitude, their just enger was fattated. Clirarches and Tima-general do write, that Piolantells, who afterwards became him of Egyps, was prefent in this encounters but he himself, that thed not to deay any thing that

Book IX. of Alexander the area

n

24

d

C-

n

64

ot

nd

ie-

al-

Ng

C

ar,

nat

ato

k-

but

ant

200

and ade

ma be

ter

ing that

that flood with his own plory, did put in men now that he was then ablent, being imploye nother Enterprise Such a negligence was t in those who did write the Antiquities of things, such a credulity, which is a fault no tell than t other. When Alexander was brought into his lod ing, the Chirurgeons cut off the stale of the shall in fuch fort that they moved not the head that wa within the flesh; and when they saw the wound pare, they perceived hooks to be on the Arrow-hea lo that without the destruction of his body it con not be pulled out; except by incidion they made of wound greater; and yet in that point they feared eft blood flowing too abundantly, should be an pediment unto them; for the head was very great. and it seemed to be entered far within his body There was one Critobalus that was very cunning, and most excellent amongst the Physicians and Chirureons; and yet in fo dangerous an accident as this, e was fearful and in doubt to undertake the Cure, of if any thing should chance to the King otherrife than well, whileft he remained under Cure, he blame thereof might light upon his head, the ore when Alexander perceived by his weeping a ear he was in, and that through trouble of minde e looked pale in the face, he faid unto him

What is it that then lookest for? Or why dost the least wife ridding me quickly out of this pain, at the least wife y death, if thou canst not otherwise bring it to pass? or seeing my wound is incompble, why searest thou that my thing should be laid to thy charge?

When Critobulus heard his words, he either ceaed or diffembled his fear, and exhorted Alexander

Ee

that

16 The Life and Death Book IX. that he would fuffer himfelf to be held while they pulled the Arrow-head that was within his fielh; for the least motion he faid might be hurtful unto him. The King would not be held, but kept his body at a flay without moving, in such fort as they appointed him. When they had cut the wound wider, and pulled out the head, there iffied out fuch abundance of blood, that the King fell in a fwoon, and a dimness came over his fight, and he stretched out himfelf as one in the pangs of death. Then they wrought all the means they could to flanch the blood s but when they perceived it would not avail, his friends began to weep and lament, thinking vesily there had been no way but death. Notwithstanding at length he ceased his bleeding, and recovering again his spirits, began to know them that stood about him.

All that day, and the night enfuing, the men of war flood in arms about the Kings lodging, confessing that all their lives depended upon his breath, and would not remove from thence before they understood that he took some rest: but when they knew that he was fallen in a sleep, they returned into the Camp, bringing unto the rest more certain hope of his recovery. Alexander, about the curing of his wound, remained there seven days, and understanding that a constant same of his death was spread abroad amongst the Indians, he caused two Ships to be fastened together, and a Lodging to be made for him in the middest; so that remaining upon the water, from both sides of the land he might be seen of them that thought he had been dead. When the Indians perceived he was alive, it took a

Book IX. of Alexander the Great. way the hope that some had conceived upon the fall

Report.

ä

2

d

e

.

1-

Y

10

il.

e-

n-

T-

od

of

eC. h,

n.

nev

ned

ain

ing

un. was

WO be

up

ight

ead.

k a-

way

From thence he passed down the stream, leaving a distance between his Ship and the rest of the Na vy, to the intent that with the beating of the Oar they should not disturb him of his rest, which was necessary for his weak body. The fourth day after his embarquing, he came into a Countrey abandoned of the Inhabitants, but plentiful both in Com and Cattel, in which place he thought to reft himfelf and his Souldiers. It was a custom amongst the Macedons, that when their King was discaled, the chief Princes and the great Men watched about Lodging , which custom being then observed, entred all together into the chamber where Alexan lay; ac whole fudden coming he was fomewhat mazed especially because they came all together. He tought they had brought him forme firinge tidings, and enquised of them if they understood of new Affembly of his Enemies. Then Craterys that vas appointed to speak in the behalf of them all, ake unto him after this manner :

Do you think that the coming of any Enemies could the in so cureful (though they were entred within your mp) as me are of your health and Sufiguard, though this is the thing which you regard least? Thon Marions confire against us with their Power, though whole world were filled fall of men of War, the Sea perspresed with Ships, and never so many strange beasts be against us, is confisted in the presence of your nfon to make us Conquerours. But bow can any God mile that you, who are the Light and Star of Maccma, can be of any continuance & feeing you are fo defrom

Ee 2

118 A The Life and Death Book IX.

from to pur your person in such manifest perils, not renumbring that with your death you draw with you into raine she lives of for many of your Countrey-men? Who is be that either can or doth defire to live after you? We are come so far following your Fortune and Authority. that, without you, none of us are able to return home again. If you were yet contending with Darius for the Hingdom of Perlia, though we all would with you would not adventure your person so perillously, yet in that case ne could not marvel fo much at your prompt resolution; for where the danger and the benefit that enfueth thereof are equal, the fruit is the greater when the bufines fuccerdesh well, and the comfort is the more when the thing ennecth evil. There are none, not only of us who are your Souldiers, but even of fuch as were your Enemies. ving any understanding of your greatness that can suffer fo bafe a town, and of so little fame, to be bought with the price of your life. My heart thrinks at the remembrance of the danger which we but late did fee with open eyes; I am amazed to rehearfe how those vile bands were in a readines to bave carried the foils of your invincible Person, if Fortune of her elemencie bad not preserved and delivered you from their crueltie. So many of us as were not able to follow you, are all Traitors and Forfakers of our Prince: And though it was a matter that lay not in our power, yet if it please you to note us all with reproach, there is none that will refule any punishment in the purgation of it; notwithstanding me would require you, that you would fare us for some other purpose. We will gladly go whithersoever you will have us; me require War be it never to abfoure, and curet the Battel, though our fighting shall rount Fame, for bat you will referve your felf to those hawards which Book XI. of Alexander the Great.

are correspondent for the greatness of your chate. How food doth glory vanish away, and become of no prosise, amongst such Enemies as are of no reputation? And what thing is there more unworthy, than to consume the glory

yon have goven elsewhere, amongst them where your

glory cannot appear?

0

1

95

d

se

13

C-

ng

re

es,

th

m-

ith

rile

s of

So

at as a

u to fule

ding

ome

you

zine,

bich are When Cnaients had ended his speech, Prolony and the others spake to him to the like effect, and all at once with weeping eyes required of him, that he would not from thenceforth be any more so thirtly to win praise, but seeing he had gotten sufficient already, he should content himself therewith, and regard his health and safety, whereon their universal estate did depend. The King took so gratefully their loving affection, that he samillarly embraced every one of them's and after he had willed them to sit, revolving in his minde more deeply their former communication, he said thus unto them:

My faithful loving Priends and Country men, Irender you molt hearty thanks, not only that you picter by Safety before your own, but also that since the beginning of the Wars you have not pretermitted axiong, wherein your love and benevolence might be some domards mes, so that I must confess that my life was never so dear unto me us it is now, because I define long to enjoy you. You are destrous to offer your select to dear in my cause, because you judge that I have deserved that benevolence at your hands; but your magination and mine is not after one roay. In proadventure do cover to enjoy me, to reap of me continuance of my time, but by the greats is of my thought. I might have been content with the violes.

which my Father left me, and with the ease of my boy, within the bounds of Macedon, bave looked for an core and ignable old age; and yet I cannot fee that they who live in floth and idleness can affere themselves of their own destiny; For even such as esteem felicity in long life, are oftentimes prevented with fudden death; But I, who number not my years but by my Victories, have lived long, if I well weigh the gifts of Fortune: For beginning mine Empire in Macedonia, I have Greece in my possession; I have subdued Thrace and Illyria, Ireignover the Tribals and the Medians, being Master of all Alia that lieth between Hellespont and the Red-Sea, and now am not far from the end of world; the which I determined to vifit; and to lav open to men a new nature, and a new world : I paffed out of Afia into Europe in the moment of an bour, being but eight and twenty years of age, and baving reigned but nine years, and I am now become the Victorer of both Regions; Do you think it then meet that Isbould now fe from the purchase of that glory whereunto I have only devoted my felf ? No, I will never ceafe, but whereforever I shall have occasion to fight, I shall think by felf to be in the I beater, where the whole world doth behold me. I will give Nobility and Fame to places that are obscure, and will lay open to all Natious these Countries which Nature bath removed furthelt from them; in ding whereof, it shall be grateful for me to end my life, if Fortune will bave it fo : I am come of fuch a Stock, that I ought to defire many things before long life. I pray you to remember that we are come into thefe Countries, where the name of a Woman is celebr sed for ber Vertnes. What Cities did Semiramis build? What Nations did the subdue? And mb st

Book XI. of Alexander the Great.

M

13

24

5,

Je.

ıd

2-

at

of

24

ed

ng

ed

tb

w

ve

ut

nk

Id

to

ti-

ur-

ful

2 m

egs

are

an

ni•

Ind

21

what great Works did the accomplish? We are not yet become equal unto a Woman in glory's and would have me to be fatisfied with it. Be the e vourable unto our purpose's for there remains for us greater things to do. And it is the next way to make those Countries which me have not yet touched to become ours, if we eftern nothing to be of finall value where there is any occasion to purchase glory. Let it be your care to preferve me from the evil confinacy of my own people, and then there are no adventures in the War shall put me in fear. Philip was more fore in the Front of the Battel abroad, than in the Theatre at bome; be oftentimes avoided the force of his En but he could not eschem the violence of his own & jeds: And if you consider the end of other Kings. shall number more that have been stain by their in men, than by ony Forreign power: But because there is an occasion now offered me to atter that which I have long conceived in my minde, it shall be the greatest finit I can receive of my travels, if my Mother Olympias, when the departesh this life might be confecrated to immortalitie: if the depart in my time, I will do it my elf; but if I shall be prevented by death, remember you to perform what I have determined.

Having spoke these words, he dismissed his Friends from him, and continued many days in the same place. Whilest these things were doing in India, the Greek Souldiers that had lands and habitations appointed them at Catabasiria, through a sedition that chanced amongst them, rebelled against him, not so much for any hate they did bear to Alexander, as for fear of punishment; For they killed divers of their chief Rulers, and assembling in sorce together,

Ee 4

took

The Life and Death Book IX.

took the Caftle of Balleia that was negligently kept, and procured the Balleians to rebel with them.

Albertahrus was the Chief among them, who took

upon him the name of a King, not so much for the desire of the Kingdom, as by authority to make him felf of power to convey himself and others home into his own Country: But one Bicon of his own Nation became his Enemy, and conspiring against him, did invite him to a Banquet, where he was stain by one Boxus Macerianus.

The next day following, Bicon affembled the Greek together, perswading them that he flew Atherodorus but in his own defence, whose purpose was to have destroy'd him. But there was some that perceived his policy, and the suspicion was spread among the rest, so that the Greeks fell to arms on purpose to stay Bicon. But such as were chief, mitigated the wrath of the multitude; and contrary to his expectation, he was delivered from that present peril: Yet he could not be so contented, but within a while after he conspired them that saved his life; whose salthood being known, they took both him and Boxes, determining that Boxes should be put to death out of hand, and that Bicon should end his life by torments.

As they were tormenting him, the Greek Souldiers fuddenly in a fury, for what cause it is uncertain, ran to arms; the noise of whom being heard by them who had the charge of Biom, they set him at liberty, learing that the coyl had been raised for his deliverance. He, naked as he was, came running amongst the Greeks where they were affembled; whose muestable estate so changed their mindes, that they wil-

led him immediately to be fet at liberty. By this means Bieon being twice delivered from death, reminded into his Country with the Greeks, abandoning the Colony whereunto he was appointed by Alexander. These things were done in the Contines of Bandoning

Gria and Scythia.

V

c

4

n

0

It

n

'n

0

fc.

ì-

n,

m

y,

I-

ft

e-

l-d

In the mean feafon, the King of the two Nations. which we fpake of before, fent an hundred Emballadors unto Alexander, who being honourable Personages, did ride in Waggons richly apparelled, havin garments of linnen Cloth embroidered with Gold and empaled with Purple. They declared that the caule of their coming was to yield themselves, th City, their Country, and their Liberties ( wh they had kept inviolately for fo many Ages ) to his will and appointment; of which their fubmillion the gods (they faid) were Authors, and not an fear of for they were contented to yield themselve before they had proved their power with him. The King called a Councel, and received them under his protection, appointing them to pay fuch Tribute as they did before pay to the Arachofians, and believe to fend two thousand five hundred Horsemen to serve him in his Wars, all which things they performed whereunto he invited those Embassadouss, and his lords: he used therein sumptuous preparation, ordaining air hundred Beds of Gold to tar upon, which ring let a small distance one from another, wen drawn about with Curtains garnified with Gold nd Purple.

In that Feath there was thewed and fer forth all the great exe is and voluptuouticis, which either by 104 The Life and Death Book IX

long cufforn was used amongst the Persians, or by corruption was taken up amongst the Macedons, the vices of both these Nations, being there mingled toer. There was at that Feast one Diarippus of tibens, a noble Champion, and by reason of his excellent force, well known unto the King, of whom certain envious and malicious persons, betwixt earnest and jest, said, That be did nothing but fat his body Tibe an unprofitable beaft; and when others went to the Battel, be would anoint bis bady with Oyl, and prepare bimfelf to eas. Amongst others that used evil words of despite against him, there was at the same Feast one Horraius a Macedon, who in his drunkenness llenged Dioxippus, that if he were a man, he should fight she Combate with him the next day, upon life and death, where the King should judge either him to be rath, or the other too much a Coward. Dinxippus aughing to fcorn the pride and arrogancy of the Souldier, accepted his proffer. The next day they were more earnest to go unto the Combate than they were before in making the Challenge: when the King law them to bent, and that they would not leave their purpose, he consented to their will.

There were great numbers of men assembled at the Combate; amongst whom, there were many Grecians who savoured Dioxippus part. The Macedon came into the Lists armed at all points, holding in his less hand an Iron Buckler and a Spear, and in his right hand a casting Lance; and having his Swerd girt to his side, was surnished as though he should have sought with many men at once. Dioxippus came torth anointed with Oyl, with a Garland upon his head; and having a red Cloth wrapt about his

, of Alexander the Great, 429 is left arm, he held in his hand a great knotty Cudgel. The divertity of their Weapons brought eve an into a wonderful expectation; for they thought it not only a rathucis, but a madness for Dioxippus who was naked, to encounter the other who was armed. The Macedon thinking to kill his advertary before they should come to fight hand to hand, threw at him his Lance, which Dioxippus avoided by be ing of his body; and before that he could chare Pike, he leaped to him, and with his Cudgel b the fame afunder: when the Macedon had lost both his Weapons, he began to draw his Sword; but Di rippus prevented him with a close, and taking boo is feet from under him, threw him upon the east and there plucking his Sword from his fide, for his foot upon his neck, and held up his Cudgel to have fruck out his brains, if the King had not caused his to stay his hand.

Y

of

4

n

rdy

be

re

ıft

S

ld

to

ns he

ey

ey

ng ve

at

e-

in

in

his

he

7X+

nd

ut

His

nut

426 The Life and Dear Book IX not endure, but parting out of the Feat fafter he had

written a Letter to the King) he killed himself.
Alexander was very forry for his death, which he took for no token of repentance, but rather of indignation: For it afterwards appeared, through the overmuch rejoycing of his Enemies, that he had been fallly accused. The Embassadours of the Indiana at were dismissed home, within a few days after seturned again, presenting unto Alexander three hundred Horses, one thousand and thirty Waggons every one drawn with four Horfes, certain Veltures Linnen-cloth, a thousand Indian Targets, and one hundred Talents of Iron, Lions of a rare bignels and Typers that were tame, the Skins of great Lizards, and the Shells of certain Fishes.

The King then commanded Graterus to conduct his Army along the River whereupon he failed, and embarquing fuch as were accustomed to accompany he with the fiteam paffed into the Bounds of Mallians, and from thence came unto the Sabraby Kings, but by a Government of the People. They had gathered together fix thousand Footmen, and ix thousand Horsemen, and five hundred armed Waggons, and had chosen three Captains that were approved men of War: But when fuch as inhabited next unto the River ( the Banks being full of Villages ) faw all the River, as far as they could view; over-spread with Ships, and the Armour glistering of fo many men of War, they were amazed at the strangeness of the fight, and thought that some Army of the gods, or else Bucchus (whose name was fathous among it those Nations) had been come amongst

Book IK. of Alexander the Great. 42

mongfithem. The cry of the men of War, with the clashing of the Oars, and the firange noise of the Mariners exhorting one another, filled their fearful ears. They ran therefore amongst their Countrymen, who had affembled their Forces, declaring their madness if they would contend with the gods for they said the Ships could not be numbred that carried those invincible people: with which words they put such fear amongst the men of their own Nation, that they sent immediately Embassadours to yield themselves.

e

s d.

of

1-

d

rd

ed re

ed

a-

V 3

ng

ho

ny

124

agft When he had received their submission, he cause the sourth day into another Country, the people whereof durst no more withstand him than the other did; and there he builded a City, which he named Alexandria: and from thence he entred into a Country, the inhabiters whereof they call Musicans; there he understood by the accusation of the Paramisidans, that Destrictes (whom Alexander had appointed Lieutenant amongst them) had suled in excessive pride and covetouiness, and therefore he commanded him to be put to death: And Oxiartes Lieutenant of the Bathrians being also accused, was not only acquitted, but had a greater Rule committed unto him.

When he had subdued the uttermost part of the Musicans, he put a Garison into their City, and the vanced from thence into another Nation of the Indians called Pressians; of whom Oxicanus was King, who with a great Power retired himself into a strong City; which Alexander won the third day after he began his Siege: Upon the taking of the Town, Oxicanus sted into the Castle, and sent Embassadous to

treat for peace; but before they were come to Alexanders presence, two Towers of the Castle fell with a great noise, by the ruines whereof the Macedoni got into the Caltle, where Oxicanus with a few flanding defence, was flain

The Callle being razed, and all that were within fold as flaves, Alexander came into the bounds of Saba, where befide many Holds that yielded to him. he took the strongest City of that Country by force of a Myne. It feetned a wonderful thing to the Indiens, being ignorant of fuch Policies of War, for armed men to come forth of the ground in the midft of their City, where there appeared no figue of any way under the Earth. Clivarehus doth write, that there were eighty thousand Indiana flain in that Country, belides many prifoners fold as flaves. The Mulicans in the mean time rebelled; for the suppresing of whom Python was fent thicker, who took the Prince of the Nation prisoner, and brought him to Alexander, whom he caused to be hanged upon a Crois as the Author of the Revolt; which done, he returned again to the River where he had commanded his Navy to tarry for him. The fourth day after he came to a Town at the entrance into the Kingdom of Samus, the King whereof had newly vielded himfelf; but the Citizens had thut their Gates, and would not be at his Commandment; whose small number Alexander regarded so little, that he fent five hundred Agrians unto their Gates to proffer them Skimpish, to the intent that by reti-ting, they might draw them by little and little out of their strength, thinking they would follow the Chafe, when they should fee their Enemies Hying-

The

t

n

ıf

1,

ce

-

10

Ift

UA

lat

at he

efthe

to

1 2

he

an-

af

the wly

heit

nt;

tle . ates

retiout

the

ig. The

The Agricus did as they were appointed; and when they had once provoked their Leemies, they immediately turned their backs, and the Indians surfued them, until they came to the Ambulcado where the King lay in person; then the Agrians turned, and the Fight was renewed to hercely, that of three thousand Indians, there were five hundred lain, and a thouland taken, the rell recovered the City: but the end of the Victory was not fo pleafant as the beginning; for the Indians had so enve nomed their Arrows, that fuch as were hurt died he wounds: and the Phylicians could not devile the aufe of to firange a death; for even the lightest hurts were incurable. The Indiane truted that Alexander through his rathness might have come within that danger, who by chance fighting amongh the forenott, escaped unhurt.

Prolomy was lightly wounded upon the left shoulder, and being in a greater danger than the greatnels of his wound thewed, cauted the King to be areful of him; for he was near of kin unto him; nd fome thought that Philip was his Father; but it certain that his mother was Rhilip his Concubine e was one of them that had the charge of the gs perion, a valiant man of War, and yet mon mous in the aris of Peace: he was moderate both this apparel and living; liberal, ealie to be ipoen to, and without any fuch height of minde, as accustomed to be in men descended of the Royal good; by realon of which qualities, it is uncertain thether he was better beloved of the King, or of he Souldiers.

This was the first occasion he had to prove how

the mindes of men were affectionate towards him a for even in that danger, the Masedom began to di-vine of his fortune, whereunto afterwards he after-They had no less care of Prolomy than of the King himself s who used him so familiarly that when he was wearied either with travel or care of minde, he would fit for his folace with Ptolomy, and arthat time caus'd his bed to be brought into his own chamber: When Prolomy was laid there, he fell fuddenly in a found fleep, in the which it feemed that a Dracon offered to him an herb out of his mouth, for the calling of his wound, and taking away of the venome. When he awaked, he declared his dream, and shewed both the colour and fashion of the herb; thirming that he could know it, if any man could finde it out. This herb was fought by fo many, that at length it was found; and being put upon the wound, the pain straightways ceased, and the scar within thort space was closed. When the Indians were disappointed of the hope they had conceived that way, they yielded themselves and their City.

From thence Alexander went into the next Conntry, called Parthalia, the King whereof called Meridet the City, and fled into the Mountains, so that Alexander took the same, finding a wonderful prey of Sheep, of Cattel, and of Corn. There he took Pilots that knew the River, and came unto an Island which stood in the midst of the stream, where he was compelled to remain the longer, because the Pilots being negligently kept, were escaped away. He tent therefore to seek out others, but when he could finde not any, there entred a vehetnent delire into his head to visit without any Guide, the Ocean-Sea,

and

the end of the world, committing his own life d the lives of fo many thoulands, to a River which one of them did know. They failed as men ign ant of all places they came unto, either how far the ica was diffiant from them, what Nations did inha-lit the Countries thereabouts, or whether the Mouth of the River were navigable for Gallies, or not. In all these things they were led by a blinde and doubtal imagination, having no other comfort in their ath Enterprize, but only that they trusted to their continual felicity. When they had gone forwards our hundred Furlongs, the Ship mafters fold the ing, that they felt the air of the Sea, whereby they new the Ocean was at hand. Therear he rejoyced neatly, and exhorted the Mariners that they would ith all the power they could, thake way with their bars, to bring him to the fight of the end of the forld, which he had to long defired.

C

A :,

ıt

D.

V

3-

10

C-

n,

b;

at

he

at

ns ed

n.

at

CY

ok

nd he

Pi-

le

to

nd

Now (said he) our Glory is perfect, when one anhood is such that nothing can stay us: now the fold is come into our hands without any further stard of War; or shedding of Blond. Now since Bounds that Nature buth wrought be so near at and, we shall shortly see things unknown, saving to immortal gods. Yet not withstanding he set immortal gods. Yet not withstanding he set one men upon the Land to take some of the County-men, by whom he trusted to have known the certainty of the truth. When they searched out their sottages, at length they sound out some of the will who were hidden, who being demanded how far he sea was from them, they made answer, that they were heard it named; but they said, that within here days sayling, they should come unto a place

where

The Life and Death

where a brackish water did corrupt the fiesh, by which words the Mariners understood shat they meant the Sea, of the nature whereof the people were ignorant; then the Mariners rowed chearfully, their delire growing ever the greater, as they approached near unto the place which they hoped to be the end of their travel. On the third day they came where the Sea and the River Joyned together, mixing with a small floud their waters that were of a contrary nature: Then because the tide was somewhat against them, they haled towards another Illand standing in the midst of the River, which being an easie place to land at, the Macedons ran about to feek Victuals, in furety as they thought, being ig-

norant of the chance that came upon them.

About three of the clock, according to its ordinary courfe, the tide came rowling in from the Sea, and with his force did drive the fiream backward, which at the first being but stayed, was afterwards so vehemently repulled, that it caused the water to return backward with greater sury then a swift fiream is accustomed to run. The common for that knew not the nature of the Ocean, thought the fame to be a wonderful thing, and that it had been token fent to them of Gods wrath : and while they were in that imagination, the Sea swelling more and more, overflowed the Land which they faw beforedry; and as the water mounted, the Ships and all the Navy was dispersed here and there. Such as were upon land were amazed with the luddenness of the event, and ran from all parts in great fear unto their Ships. But in a tumult, haste dorh always hurt, and giveth impediment. Some there were that

w ent

Book IX. of Alexander the Great. 432

1

le

y,

P-

to

ey

r,

of

25

er

e-

out

8-

di-

ea, rd, rds

to

ort

the

n.

her

Ote

be-

and

a as

Sot

into

ays

hat

ent

went about to let forward their Ships; others forade rowing, and removed not at all; otherwhiles they made hafte away, and would not carry to take in their company, and they moving but flowly could make no way. Some, when they law them press on Ship-board in such throngs, for fear of taking in too many, would receive none at all; to that both the mulneede and the small number were an equal impediment unto the hafte they made. The cry that forme made in bidding men tarry, and the noise that others made in willing them to go forwards, with their voices that differed, and agreed not in one effect, took away the use both of their light and hearing. The Mariners could not help it, whose words in the tumult could not be heard, not their commandments observed amongst men in sear and out of order. The hips therefore did beat one against the other, the Dars crashed asunder, and every Ship either thrust orward or did put back one another. No man would ave judged it to be one Fleet, but rather two Naies fighting a Battel upon the Sea. The Sterns did rike against the poop; such as went before troubled em that came after; and at last the words of men their choler came unto blows. The tide had now ver-flown all the Plains thereabour, fo that nothing peared above the Waters fave the Hills, which emed to many little Islands, whereunto many did im, and left their Ships for feat.

Whilest the Navy was thus dispersed abroad, and artly floated as they hapned in any valley, and artly sluck in the ground as they lighted on the ats; there came suddenly another terrour greater hen the first. For when the Sea began to ebbe, the

water fell back again into his wonted course, with lo great violence as it came forwards, and restored the fight of the Land, which before was drowned as in a deep Sea. The Ships then for faken of the water, fell upon their fides, and the Fields were strewed with broken boards and pieces of Oars. The Souldiers durst not go forth to Land, and yet were in doubt to tarry on Ship-board, looking ever for forme greater mischief to come, then what they saw present or past. They could scarcely believe what they saw and suffered, which was a Shipwrack upon the land, and a Sea within a River. They thought no end could come of this calamity; for they knew not that the Sea should shortly return again, and set their Ships afloat: And therefore they proposed to themfelves Famine and all extremities. The Monsters also of the Sea, which after the water was past, were

The night approached, and despair brought the King into a great agony; yet no care could so overcome his heart, that was invincible, but he watched all night, and sent Horsemen to the mouth of the River, to bring him word when the tide came. He caused two Ships that were broken to be amended, and such as were overwhelmed to be horsed up again; warning all men to lie in wait, and be in a readiness against the water should arise. When he had consumed all that night in watching and giving exhortation unto his men, straightways the Horsemen returned on a main gallop, and the tide at their heels, which mildly increasing, began to raise again their Ships; and when it had once over-slown the Banks, the whole Navy began to move. Then all

the

Book IX. of Alexander the Great. 435 the Coast rebounded with the unmeasurable rejoycing that the Souldiers and Mariners made for their steguard, whereof they were before in despair.

d

15

r,

th

TS

bt

2-

ne

W

nd.

nd

nat

cir

m.

ers

ere

the

VET-

hed

the

Fle

ded.

rea-

had

ex-

men

their

gam

a the

n al

the

When they faw the danger palf, they inquired one of another, by what reason the Sea could so soon bb and flow; and debated the nature of that Element, which one while disagreed, and another while was obedient and subject to the time. The ing conjecturing by the fignes he had feen before. that after the Sun-rising the tide would serve to his ourpose, at mid-night with a few Ships did sail down he Stream; and passing out at the mouth of the River, he entred four hundred Furlongs into the ea; and being Matter of his defires, he there made erifice to the gods of the Sea, who were worthiped in those Countries, and returned again unto is Navy. On the next day he returned backwards gainst the Stream, and arrived at a salt Lake, the ature whereof being unknown, deceived many at rathly entred into the water; for their bodies and by became full of feabs; which difeafe taken forme, the contagion thereof infected many oers; but they found that Oyl was a remedy for lame.

e Spring of the year, sent Leonatus before by Land here he thought to pass, to dig Wells, because Country was very dry, and destitute of water, the mean time, he builded many Cities, and com- anded Nearchus and Onesierius (that were most pert in the Discipline of Sea-service) with his ongest Ships to pass into the Ocean, and to go to forwards as they might with surety, to under-

Ff 3

itand

The Life and Death , Book IX.

their return, to land either within that River, or else within Euphrates. When the Winter was well passed, he burned those Ships which were unserviceable, and conveyed his Army by Land. After nine Incampings he came into the Country of the Arabitans, and from thence in nine days came into the Country of the Gedrosians, who being a free Nation, by a general Counsel had amongst them, yielded themselves; of whom there was not any thing de-

manded faving only Victuals.

The fifth day he came into a River, which the Country-men call Barabon, beyond which there lay barren Country, greatly destitute of water, through the which he passed, and entred amongst the Horitans. There he betook the greater part of his Army to Epbeffion, and divided the Souldier that were light armed to Prolomy and Leonatue; and so they wasted the Country with three Armies a once, and took a great booty. Ptolomy turned to wards the Sea, Leonatus on the other hand, an Alexander himself in the midst. In that County he builded also a City, and brought men our of A rachefia to inhabit it. From thence he came among the Indians, who, lying upon the Sea-coult, do in habit a great Country that is walte and defan They are no Traffique, Commerce, nor Converla tion with any of their Neighbours : but the defart nels of their Country made them lavage, being wild of their own nature. Their nails and hair are neve cut : they made their Houses of the Shells of Fishe and of other things that the Sea calleth up; and be ing clad with the skins of wilde Beafts, do feed of Filhe Book IX. of Alexander the Great.

Fifthes dried with the Sun, and fuch Monflers as the

bea doth caft upon the Land.

it

or ell

r-

er he

to

laled

de-

the

lay

er,

gf

ot

iers

and

a

to and

ati A

ng

ni c

fatt

erfa

Cart

vild

ieve

The

I be

d of

Here the Macedons confumed their Victuals, and inft endured fearcity, and afterwards extream hunger , fearthing out in every place the roots of the Palms, which is the only Tree that groweth in that Country : Bar when that kinde of nourithment faildithem, they killed their Carriage-beafts, and abfained not from their Horfes, infomuch that lack ing Leasts to bear their Baggage, they were infor ced to confirme with fire thole Spoils of their Enemies, which had caused them to travel into the ut ermost bounds of the Orient. After their Fanine, there followed a Pestileuce; for the unacultomed nourithment of the unwholefome mea hey did eat, with the travel of their journey, and ne anxiety of their mindes, did spread Discales asongs them in such fort, that they could neither ontinue in a place, nor yet go forwards without mat definition: Hunger oppressed them when mey tarried, and the Pessilence was more vehicular ver as they went forwards. The Fields therefore ere firewn full of men that were half dead and half ive; and fuch as were but half fick were not able follow the Army, it marched with fo great a seed: For every man thought fo much to further sown fafery, by how much he made hafte to get fore his fellows:

Such as fainted and could not follow, defined oth such as they knew and knew not, to help them orwards: but they had no Beasts whereupon to set tem, and the Souldiers (who had the imminent mischief that sell upon other men, represented be-

t t 4

tore

fore their own eyes) could hardly bear their own Arms; wherefore when they were called upon they would not vouchfafe once to look back; fear had to taken away all compassion from them. Then they who were left behinde, cried upon the gods and their King for help, alledging. That they were all of one Country and Religion, which was a Band for one to relieve another: But when they had cried long in vain unto their deaf ears, through desperation they raged, withing the like end to their Friends and Companions which they themselves endured.

The King possessed both with sorrow and shame, because he and none else should be the cause of so great a destruction amongst his men, did write to Phrataphernes, Ruler of the Parthenians, to send to him upon Camels, Victuals ready to be eaten; and certified the Princes of the Countries round thereabout of his necessity, who did slack no time, but made provision according to his will. Thus, his Army delivered only from Famine; was brought within the bounds of the Gedrosians; and for almuch as the same was a Country sertile of all things, he thought good to stay there a while, with sell to recover again his seeble Souldiers.

There he received Letters from Leonarus, that he had won the Victory of the Horizans, who encountred him with eight thousand Footmen, and five hundred Horsemen. He was advertized from Craterus. That he had taken and put in hold Ozines and Zariasses, two Noble-men of Rensia, who went about to rebel. Alexander also undentanding that Memnon was dead, gave the charge of the Country whereof he had the tule, unto Siburtim, and after-

wards

look IX. of Alexander the Over.

wards marched into Cormaniai Afpaster was Goemous of that Nation, who being suspected of Innovation whiles Alexander was in India, met him on the way: But Alexander diffembling his wrath, entertained him gently, and gave unto him his accustomed honour till fuch time as he had better proof

of the acculation which was laid against him.

1

d

y T

C

10

g

n

d

e,

(o

to

to

br

a-

ut

NIS ht

IF-

35, to

he

n4

VĄ

4-

nd

ut

m-14

erds When the Princes of India, according to his up pointment, had fent out from all their Countri great plenty of Horses, and other Beasts, both for Saddle and Draught, he gave Catriage again to all men that wanted; and reflored their Armour to the former beautifulnels and excellency; for they were come into a Country joyning upon Perfla which was both abundant in all vinings, and alfo quietly established under his subjection. Hethough it then a time to counterfeit Bucobus in the glory and same which he governongs those Nations. Who ther it were a Triumph that Bacchus first instituted, or a palitime uled of him in drunkemiels . Alexander was determined to counterfeit his Acts; having his minde elevated above the effate of man. He commanded therefore all the Villages through the which he was to pass, to be strewed with Flowers and Garlands, and Wine to be fet forth ar every mans door, for all men that would drink. He caused Waggons also to be made, of largeness able to carry great numbers, and decked the farne with precious Furniture. The King went foremost with his Friends, and next to them his Guard, wearing upon their heads Garlands of Flowers, some playing upon Flutes, some upon Harps: every one generally through the Army adorned his Chariot accordin

440 . The Life and Dunb Book IX

cording to his ability and Substance; and confuming the whole day in Banquetting, did hang their sich Armour belide them. Alexander, with fuch as he called to his Company, was carried in a Charlot, laden with Cops of Gold, and other golden Veffels; and with his drunken Army he marched thus feven days together, in offentation of the prey they had eotten; wherein they thewed fuch diffoluteness, that if one thousand of the subdued people had given them the onlet; they might have taken them Peiloners, and led them away in triumph. But Fortune, which bath appointed both Fame and Estimation to things, turned all this disorder unto his Glory: for both the Age that was then; and the Posterity that came after, marvelled, and took it for a wonder, that ne durft go to diffolutely among those Nations, not get established under his Empire; the barbarous People reputing his Rashness for an affused Considence. out fliedding of bloud enfued after this Triumph : For Prince Affastic (spoken of before) was commanded to be put to death : So that his excess in Voluptuoufnels, was no let unto his Cruelty, nor his Cruelty an impediment to his Voluptuouinels.

and the first beauty to a soft fix not a soft educaon the engine of the constitution appeals below the first product and the constitution of the engine engine to a soft and with the first constitution of the engine

- in return aparticular than the many threat and a provident land

Harden for the factor of the control of the control

1

is

n d it n

0

r

it

t

-

.

S

.

E

## \*\*\*\*\*

## TENTH BOOK

O F

## QUINTUS CURTIUS.

Of the Ads of Alexander the Great, King of Ma-

Bout the fame time Cleander, Siracles, Agail and Heracan, who by the Kings appointment had put Parmento to death, returned to biundringi with them five thousand Footmen and a thousand Horfemen. There were many Accusers that followed them out of the Province whereof they had the Go-vernance; their behaviour being such, that the acceptable service they had done to Alexander, in killing of Parmenio, could be no facisfaction for the multitude of offences they had committed : They is fed such an universal spoil not abstaining from Temples, nor from confecrated things. The Virgins also and great Ladies of the Country whom they had ravilhed, complained of them, lamenting the shame they had fluttained. They used such Covetousness and inordinate Lust in their Authority, that it caused the name of the Macedons to be hated amongst those Nations. And yet among all the reft, Cleanders offence

The Life and Death Book X.

offence was most horrible, who ravishing a Virgin of Noble Parentage, gave her to his Slave to use as

his Concubine.

The greater part of Alexanders Friends were not fo much offended with their cruelty and foul acts, whereof they were accused, as with Parmenio his death, which they kept in silence, less the rehearfal thereof might have procured them favour with the King; rejoycing that the Kings Justice was fallen upon the Ministers of his Wrath, and that no Power or Authority gotten by evil means, could

have any long continuance.

Alexander hearing the Caufe, faid, that the Accefers overslipt the greatest Offence, which was the despair of his own fafety; for if they bad either boped or believed that be should ever have returned out of India, they durft never (he faid) bave committed any fuch baioffences. He commanded them therefore to prison, and fix hundred Souldiers to death, who had been the Ministers of their cruelty's and they also were executed the same day, whom Craterus had brought as Authors of the Rellettion out of Persia. Within a while after, Nearebus and Onefferitus, who had been commanded by the King to fearth the Ocean-fea, returned to him, declaring forme Discoveries by knowledge, and some by report: They thewed him of an Island not far from the mouth of Indus, which abounded with Gold, and had no breed of Horles amongst them; wherefore the Inhabitants would give a Talent for every Horse brought from the Main-land. They also told him of great and monftrous Fifnes (whereof those Seas were full ) which carried down with the Tide, would

would shew their bodies as big as a great Ship, and follow the whole Fleet with a terrible noise; and when they dived underneath the water, they troubled the Seas, as it had been a Ship-wrack. These were things they had seen a Ship-wrack. These were things they had seen; the rest they received by the report of the Inhabitants: as how the Red-lea took his name of King Erithrus, and not of the colour of the Water. They shewed also another River not far from the Main-land, growing full of Palmtrees, where was a great Wood, and in the midst thereof stood a Pillar, where King Erithrus was buried, with an Inscription on it of such Letters as

were used in that Country.

2

t

5

1

e

0

-

١,

0

d

h

ic

31

d

e

n

15

ld

They added belides, That fuch Veffels as carried the Merchants, and the Vassals of the Army, through the coverousness of the Gold which had been reported unto them, were landed in the Illand by the Mariners, and were never feenafter. Thele words moved Alexander much, and put him in a great de-fite to get more certain knowledge of those parts; and therefore he commanded them again to Sea, willing that they should coast the Land, till they came within the River of Euphrates, and from thence to come up to Babylon against the Stream. The things were infinite that he compassed in his head: for he determined after he had brought the Sea-toof of the Orient under his subjection, to go out of Syria into Africk, for the envy he bare to the Carthaginians; he purposed from thence to pass over the Desarts of Numidia, towards the Gades, where he understood by fame that Hercules had planted his Pillars; and fo directing his Journey through Spain ( the which the Greeks of the River Iber us

till he should come to the Coast where the next passage was unto Epirus. For this intent he gave commandment to his Officers in Mesopotamia, That they should cut down Materials in Mount Libanus, and convey the same to Capsagus, a City in Syria, and there make Gallies of such greatness, that every one of them might be able to carry seven Oars upon a Bank; and from thence he willed them to be conveyed unto Babylos. He also sent commandment to the King of Cyprus, to surnish them with Iron, Hemp, and Sails.

Whiles these things were in doing, he received Letters from Porus and Taxiles, signifying. That Abiazures was dead of a Disease, and that Philip his Lieutenant in those parts was slain, they being put to death who were the Actors of it. Alexander in the place of Philip preserved Endemon that was Captain of the Thracians, and gave Abiazures Kingdom to his Son. From thence he came to Pasargades, a Country of the Persians, whereof Orsines was Lord, who in Nobility and Riches exceeded all other men in those parts, as one that derived his Pedegree from Cirus, that once was King of Persia. The Riches his Predecessours left him were great, and he by a long continuance in his Inheritance and Authority had much increased the same.

He met Alexander coming thicherwards, and prefented both him and his Friends with Gifts of fundry forts, which were a multitude of young Horses ready to be backed, Chariots wrought with gold and filter, precious Moveables, excellent Pearls, and sparkling Stones, weighty Vessels of Gold, Robes of Pur-

ck.X. of Alexander the Great e, and four thousand Talents of coyned Silver unthis his liberality was the occasion of his death for when he had presented all the Kings Friends with Gifts above their defire, he honoused not Bisson the Eunuch with any Gifts at all, whom Alexander elec gally favoured for the use of his body, by which b did oblige the King unto him: There were therefore some that gave him admonition how much Alexan der effecimed Bagons ; but be answered them,

That his culture was to bonour the Kings Friends and not his Minieus and that it was not the man of the Perlians to bave any in estimation, who did pollate themselves in so shameful an abuse.

3.6

<u>n</u>èy

id

id

ne

a

1-

to 1,

d

at

P B er as

đ,

5N

m iis

ng ad

e-

гу dy il-

k-

11ile.

When his words were reported to the Europe b used the Power which he had got by dishones Are to the destruction of that noble and innocent mention bardid suborn certain lewed persons of Orfice Country, to bring in falle Acculations against hi ich he warned them to prefent at luch a time a should appoint auto them . In the mean (calon) agnificeret Baggar got the King slow, he would fill is credulous ears with tales against Orfores see issembling the saule of his dispirative, but chreeb a might lose the reputation of his soile report. The King had not Orines yet in Suspirion of the

Came as afterwards he was obarged within but h an to grow with him out of estimation. I His ac ulation was ever to ficinet, that he could never nowledge of the pend that was privily perought gaintl him. This importunate Favourite, in this is convertation had with the King, was mindful er of the malice he bare to Orfiner, who ould not scale to bring in fulpition of Covetoul-

ness

446 . And The Life and Death Book X.

to use him familiarly. And now the falle Accusarions were indecadingly, which he had prepared to the definitions of the innocent, whose faral destiny,

which did approach could not be avoided.

wherein Cyrne Body was buried to be opened, prerending to use terrain Ceremonies for the dead; but
thinking in very deed that his Tomb had been sull
of Gold and Silver a whereof there was a constant
time amongst the Persians. But when it was viewed, there was nothing found but a rotten Target;
two Seythian Bows, and a Scimiter. Alexander
must the Cossin wherein Cyrne Body was laid; to
be rovered with the Garment which he himself accustomed to wear, and set thereupon a Crown of
Gold, marvelling that the sumptuoniness used in
land of such a King, endued with so great Riches,
was no more then in the burial of an ordinary person. When this thing was in doing, Bagon stood
next unto Alexander, and beholding him in the face
said unto sum !

When marked is it shough the Sepulchres of Rings be compey, when Bords Honges are not able to hold the Gold shat they bey boys taken but from thence ? For my part, I never families Tomb before; but I have beard Darius aport, Thus there were three thousand Talents buried with Cynus. From hence ((aid ha) proceeded Orlines liberality, in winning your Favour by the gift of that which be have be could not heap.

Note he had thus stirred up Alexanders wrath against Orlines, he presented them whom he had suborned to accuse him a by whose report, and by

Bagoas

ainst Orliner, that he was put in prilo tould suspect he was accused. The Europe not contented with the destruction of this in man, but at his death laid violent hands upon unto whom Orimes laid, I have beard shat Worther past bave reigned, and born great rale in but it is now a more strange thing that an E most Noble of all the Persians. He was not on innocent man in this matter, but such a one as pear lingular affection unto Alexan fiewed great liberality to him and his. At tithe Pbradares, who was suspected to have Alexander began then to be much inclinited the ports of bloud, and to be create out in talk reports to be fact a force in Brothers bout to make himfelf King, was pr rige a mans hature, wherein le deration of Vertue. Thus wild not condemn Lincettes as acculed by two Witnesses, an f more mean ellate to be acqui it that they feemed not guilty to our the who bestowed Kingdoms upon the om he had fulldued was in the end to muc from his former inclination, that against a appetite, at the will of a vile Minion, he work Kingdom's unto some, and take away to others. bout the fame time he received. Letters of the lits in Europe, whereby he understood the he was it India, Zopyrius his Lieutenant of Thrace

he 7 >

din

eut

ill nc

et,

der 10

of in

old

ath had by Life and Death Book X

brace made an Expedition against the Geterwhere by Storms and Tempelis that fuddenly role upon man, he was destroyed and all his Army, When Suthes understood the defeat of that Army, procured the Odrifians that were his Countrymen to revolt; so that all Thrace was in a manner lost thereby, and Greece it felf stood in no great

The Writers of the Acts of Alexander the Great, make mention in this place of Calanus an Indian, a nan very famous in Philosophy, who by the perswaon of King Taxiles, followed Alexander, and ended his life after a strange manner: When he had lived enreescore and thirteen years without any Disease at his coming into Perha he felt a pain in his belly by which conjecturing that the end of his life was come, left fuch a perpetual felicity as he had lived in d be interrupted by any long Difeate, or torented by the multitude of Medicines which licians do use to administer, he required Alexando that he would cause a Fire to be made, that he

The king began to diffwade him from his purpole. inking to have withdrawn him from the execution of to horrible an act; but when he perceive with what fledfattucks and conflancy he upheld his resolution, and that there was no way to keep him any longer in life, he suffered a Fire to be made according to his will, into which Calamer did ride on horseback, making first his Prayer to the gods of his Country; and taking the. Macedons by the hands, required them that they would lipend that day pleasantly in banquetting with their King whom

Torace

Book X. of Alexander the Great. 4

When he had spoken these words, he went chearfully into the Fire; and carrying his body in a
comely posture, he kept still the same getture and
countenance at his death, which he was accultomed
to do in his life. When the Fire stamed, the
Trumpet sounded, and the Men of War made such
a shour as they were accustomed to do when they
soyned in Battel with their Enemies, which reboundted to the skies; the Elephants also made a terrible
moise. These are the things which grave Writers
do testime of Calantis, who was a notable Example
of an invincible minde, and constantly bent to en-

dure adverfity.

L

i,

From thence Alexander advanced to Sufa, where he took to Wife Statira, the eldelt Daughter of Dain, whole youngest lister called Dyrpeits, he gave marriage unto Ephiftion, and befrowed fourfcore legins of the Noblett of all the Nations he onquered, to the principal Mandom, and to the hief of his Friends, because he would not feen es were celebrated after the Perlian manner, and magnificent Feaft prepared at the Espoulais, at high there were nine thousand Guells prefere; to ery one of whom Alexander gave a drinking Cup Gold. At the fame time the Rulers of the Cis whom Alexander had funduced and builded. Tent to him thirty thouland young Souldiers that were of one age, furnished with fair Armour, and tic rany Enterprize of the War, whom he called Epiy, that is to lay, Successions. The Macedons at Gg 2 wea50' The Life and Death Book X.

carried with long War, used often in their Aslemblies to murmur, and speak mutinous words against their King; for which cause he prepared these Souldiers to restrain the arrogancy of the

others, and gave them great benevolences.

Harpalm, to whom the King had committed the charge of the Treasure and Revenues at Babylon, hearing of the Acts that Alexander had done in subduing the greater part of the Kings of India, and his success to be so prosperous that nothing could withstand him, knowing the unsatiable desire that was in Alexander to visit far Countries, and to increase his Glory, thought it should be a hard matter for him to return to Babylon again: Wherefore he gave himself to delight and not, missing many that were Noble and free-women, and wallowed in all kind of voluptuousness; insomuch that he sent for a samous Harlot called Potonice, to whom he both gave many great and Princely Gifts while she was a live, and also after her death spent thirry Talents of her Tomb:

fe

I

tċ

Having in these and such other voluptuous Vanities consumed a great part of the Treasure, when he understood that Alexander was come out of India and did execute Justice upon his Officers, who mis used them over whom they had the Rule (by reason he was privy to his foul Conscience) he search the like might fall on himself: And therefore go the like might fall on himself: And therefore go thering together five thousand Talents and six thousand mercenary Soulders, he took his way toward Arbens; no man being willing to receive him by the way. When he came to Tenaron (where a great number of the mercenary Greeks who had been did charged

Book X. of Alexander the Great. 451 charged out of Afric were affembled) he left his Souldiers there, and went to Athens with his Money.

C

ds

be

he

he

n,

in

nd

ald

nat in-

ter

he

any Lin

en

ot

5.2

ani

are

g hou

an

y cl

gre

rge

When he was come thither, a great number of Citizens flocked about him; but more for love of his Money, than for any respect unto himself: but especially the Oratours, whom by small Rewards he easily corrupted to defend his Cause before the People. But afterwards, at a general Assembly, he was commanded to depart the City; and so he returned again among the Greek Souldiers, by whom he was slain. After that, with thirry Ships they palfed over to Sunium, which is a point of Land in the Territory of Athens, from whence they determined to have entred into the Haven of the City.

These things being known, Alexander, who was much moved as well against the Athenians as against Harpalus, prepared a Navy to make War in person mmediately against them. As he was busied about he understood by fecret Letters, both how Hiralm had been in Arbens, and had corrupted with soney the chief of the City, and also how after ards, by a Council of the People, he was comanded to depart from thence, and returning nough the Greek Souldiers, he was betrayed and sin by one of tham. These news greatly rejoyced lexander, whereby he had occation to leave of his ourney into Europe's but he fent commandment o all the Cities of Greece, that they should receive the their bandhed men, such only excepted as had emmitted any murder on their own Country men, Ithough the Greeks knew this to be the breach of eir Liws and wiberties, yet as men that durn not lobey his Wall, they called home their bammed

Gg3

men,

Book X. n, and reflored to fisch of them their Goods who id remain: Only the Athenians, who evermore defended obttinately the Liberties of their Commonwealth, and who had not been accustomed to live under the obedience of any King , but under the Laws and Customs of their Country would not permit that fuch dregs of men should live amongst chem, but did drive them out of their bounds; ready to fuffer any thing, rather than to receive fuch who fometime were the vomit of all their City, and the refute of the Outlaries.

The time was come that Alexander now intended to difmis his old Souldiers, and to fend them home into their Country; but he willed first thirteen thousand Footmen and two thousand Horsemen to be cholen out, to remain still in Afa, which ne indeed might be kept with a small Army, because (he thought) the many Garisons he had planted, and the Cities which he had newly buildd and filled with Inhabitants , would be able to awe such as should attempt any Rebellion. But before he would diftinguish who thould depart, and who should remain he caused a Proclamation to be made. That all Souldiers should declare sheir debts Conherenith be perceived many of them to be beavily burdened ) , and though it did rife through their own excip, yet be was determined to discharge every man. But the Souldiers thinking it had been but a device to finde who were most prodigal, delayed the time, and brought not in their Declarations

The King perceived fhame to be the cause thereof. and not disobedience or oblinacy; and therefore he caused

example the Great.

h

d

ŀ

m

ch

10-

ad d-

to

But

ind be

bts

es-

ugb

arge DEEN

de-

ara-

reot

re h aused

et to be fer up through his Campand ter capled T thousand Talents to be prought forms of all which Treafure, when their Debts were paid, according to the just accompt, there remained of Talents no mote but an hundred and thirty: Whereby it appeared That they who were the Conquerous of to many rich Nations, brought out of Affa more Glory than Spoil. After it was once known that fome thould be dismissed, and some remain behinde, they thought the King would have established his Kingdom perpamally in Afia : Wherefore like madmen, and unmindful of all Discipline of War, they filled the Camp full of feditious words, and came to the King more arrogantly, and with greater violence than cver they did before, and all with one voice required to be discharged, shewing him the hoariness of their nair, and their faces deformed with icars. And h y could not be staid, either by chastisement en Officers or by any reverence of their King then he would have tooken unto them, they wou or fuffer him to be heard, but duturbed his with their turnultuous cry, and violent thron time. That they would never move one foot forwards any place, except it were towards their own Country ter forme hours (because they thought that Alexanwould incline to their purpole ) they kep! lilence, nd flood in expectation what he would do. Then llexander spake thus unto them:

What meanesh this fo funden a consternation of your sinde, and this so perutant and so wilde an insolence? am afraid to freak unto you, you have fo manifestly oken your obedience towards me. I am now become King at the appointment of my People's you have nei-

Gg4

ther

ther less me the libertie to speak unto you, nor to know you, not to exhaut you, nor to behald you. Being determined to send some into their Country, and to bring the reli with me shortly after, I see those who are to be dismissed, to cry out and mutiny; as well as those who I appoint to stay with me. What is the meaning of this? The cry is all alike everywhere, although the Cause is divers. I would fain know whether they complain that depart, or they that are to tarry?

When he had spoken those words, they cried all (as it had been with one mouth) All, All. Then

he faid;

Truly it cannot be fo ; nor can I be perswaded that should all be grieved for the cause you declare seeing touchesb not the greatest part of you's for I have appointed more to depart, then to remain with me. There malt needs be something of worse consequence then apreaceth, that you bould turn away from me. When eas it ever feen, that a whole Army bath for sken beir King? The Slaves run not from their Mafters all at once; but there is alwaies a bame in some to leave bim, when the rest for sake him. But why do I forget that you are deferately mad? why do I go about to re those that are uncurable? I condemn from benceforth all the good hope that ever I conceived of you, and on determined to deal no more with you as with m Souldiers ( Seeing you will not be mine ) but as with men unge steful, and unmindful of my goodness. The can of this your madness is even the abundance of your profreeity, whereby you forget your old estate, from which you are delivered through my benefit. Les are nien wor the to have hent your lives in your former beggery. Jeeing you can better lett your adversitie than praserou fortune.

sonk X. of Alexander the Great.

Torisme. Behold, you who not long ago were Tribines to the Illyrians and the Perlians, do now different, and the foils of so many Nations: Ion, who der Philip did go half naked, do now comenn Rober. Gold and Purple. Your eyes cannot endere any the to behold the light of Gold and Silver a Ton defire again your Wooden Dishes, your Targets made of Wicker, and your Swords covered with ruft. Ireceived you in gallant condition, with five bundred Talents is debt, when all my Exchequenesceeded not the value of first Talents. This was the Foundation of my Acie, with (without envy be it foken) I have subdued to greatest part of the World. Are you meany of Allawbich bath ministred unto you occasion of so much Glan that by the greatness of your Alls you are made equal unto the gods? Do you all make fuch hafte into Eusope, to for sake me that am your King? The great part of you hould have lacked Money to bear you brone if I had not paid your debts. Are you not ashaused who have plundered all Asia, to carry the Shorts of many Nations within your bellies only and to see borne to your Wives and Children, not being able to shern any of the Rewards of your Victorie? Many of year the way shall be compelled to pawn your Armon. if you for sake thingood bope which you might receive my band. Thefe are the goodly men of War that I foll want, who of all their Riches bave nothing left them, but only their Concubines. The way lies open for your departure; Get you gone out of my fight: L. with the Persians, will defend your backs when you are gone : I will bold none of you: Deliver mine eyes, you nograteful Country men, of the fight of you. Shall your Parents and Children (think you) receive you wish joy.

wben

no be bo

of be

m-

all en

bat

ing ap-

ere ap-

ben ken

all

ave get

10

iceano

m nen

ale 76

ick 201

lee 011

ine.

in they to all fire you resears withbour your King? Shall yours to mice fuch in are fugitives, and for fakers of Prince? Ishael truly triumph at your departure ( twhereforever you shall be I shall define to be revenged; souring always, and preferring above you, those whom a base less. here with me. Now you shall know of bee force on Army is, that is deficture of a King v and

When he had spoken these words, he leaped in fury from the Judgment-feat, and ran into the throng of the armed men, where he took with his own hands such as had mutined most against him; f whom there being not any that durit make relifunce, he delivered thirteen to his Guard to be ifely kept. Who would have thought that an Af-embly, who a little before had spoken unto their times with such audacity and rigour, could have men to fuddenly appalled with fear; and feeing their impenions led to execution, durit none of them ardinate liberty they used before, and seditions vioence, was then to staid, that not one of them durit relift the King, running amongst them, but were all association tear, and stood like men amazed with doubtful imaginations, looking what he would determine of themselves. Whether it were the reverence they bare to his Name, because the Nations that live under Kings are accultomed to honour them as gods; or whether it were the Majetty of his Person, or else his own affured Coultancy, executing his Authority with fuch violence, that did put them in fuch fear: but they shewed a notable example of Patience, for they not only not friered

the execution of their Companions, whom they knew to be put to death in the night-sime; but were more diligent in performing their duties than they were before, pretermitting nothing pertaining to obedience, and the natural affection, awards their Prince: For on the next day they came to the Court, and being not suffered to enter, but all that out faving the Souldiers of Afra, they made a fortowial cry and lamentation, which spread over all the Gamp; protesting, Thus they mould not live, if the King commend full in his means, But he shares obstinate in all things which he had once conceived in his head, having commanded the Macadons to keep still in their Camp, did affemble the things souldiers together; to whom, by an interpreter, he made this Oration:

6 9

d,

m of

nd

in

he

is i-

be

f-

re

tr m i-

m

1-

10

re

ie

O

1-1-

at

le

dat

At what time I came first out of Europe into Asia, my tross win to bring many noble Marions and a great power of Man moder my Empire and Dominion, who in I was not decrived: For besides that Fame reported you to be the men of Valour, I have found in you are thing more, which is an incomparable Obedience. Finding, and Affection towards their Prince. I charge Voluptuonsness had overflown all Vertues amongs you, and that through your great selicitie you had been drowned in Plensures: But I finde otherwise, and preceive that none do observe the Discipline and Order of the Wars better than you, nor execute the same with more activity and resolution; and being manful and valiant men, they embrace Fidelitie as well as Fortitude. This I do but now confess, but I knew it long ago: which was the easie that I choose you ont of the Laurit of some ny Nations, to be my Sauldiers, and did incorporate you

amonut

mongs mine own People, causing you to mear the same Armour is his your Obedience towards Authoritie appeareth much better in you, than in them: Therefore Thave juyned in my felf in Marriage the Daughter of Oxares, who is a Bertian, not diffaining to beger Chil-dren upon a Caprice: And afterwards defining about Landly to increase the Islan of my body. I took to Wife the Daughter of Davius, and was the Anthor that my near Triends Should beget Children upon their Captines; se by this boly Covenant to exclude the diffecome between the Conquerous and the Conquered. Therefore you must now think, that you are not Soulad Europe is one Kingdom, without any difference. I save given sure you Armour after the manner of the Macadons: I have brought all strangeness and novelty mes a custom's and now you are both my Country-men and my Souldiers; in all things receiving one form d fashion. I have not thought it unscently for the rians to hadop the Customs of the Macedons, nor r the Macedons to counterfeit the Perlians, seeing ey all ought to be under one Law and Gustom, who

When he had made this Oration, he committed the custody of his Person unto the Person; he made them of his Guard, and his Officers of Justice, by whom when those Macedons who had given the occasion of this Sedition were led bound unto Execution, one of them who was more ancient, and of greater estimation than the rest, spake

after this manner :

How long will you give place unto your will, in exetating its after this strange manner? Tour Souldiers and Book K. of Alexander the Great.

and your own Country-men are drame to Extension by their own Prisoners, before their cause is heard. If you have judged us morthy of death, at leastwise change the

Ministers of your weath.

Ġ

e

f

Ä

Ŀ

f.

ıy.

B

1.

l-

1

be ty

en

be

tor

ng bo

ed

he

u-

nad

ind

ici-

ake

oce-

iers ind This was a good admonishment, if he had been patient to hear the truth; but his wrath was grown into a fury, so that when he saw those who had the charge of them to stay a little, as willing to respite the fixecution, he caused the Prisoners to be tumbled into the River, and there drowned. Note withstanding the equelty of this punishment, the Souldiers were not moved to any sedition, but repaired in great numbers to their Captains, and unto such as were near about the King, requiring, That if there yet remained any infested with the same Offence, that be should command them to be put to death a proffering their bodies to be pamished, and executed at his large will.

After it was known that the dignity of being the Kings Lieutenant was given unto the Perfines, and that they were distributed into divers Orders, with such names given unto them as were unto the Mandons, and that the Macedons were sejected with reproach; they could not then longer contain them selves, nor the dolour they had conceived in their hearts; but with a great throng pressed to the Court, wearing only their nethermost. Garments, and leaving their Weapons without the Core, and token of repentance; there with weeping, and all tokens of humility, they made reques to be admitted to the Kings presence, beforehing that he washe wonebsafe to pardon their Offence, and so pack bit prath with the death of so many of them as the

bould think good, rather than to fuffer them to line in fuch a reproach; which except he would rescale, they protested they would never depart out of the place. When thele things were declared unto Mexander, he caused the Court-gates to be opened, and came forth amongst them; where beholding their lamentation and repentance, and the posture of their milerable affliction; he could not abstain to weep a long time with them, and in confideration of their modelty, forgave them their former offences; md again comforted them with gentle words, he Scharged many from the Service of the Wars, and no them home magnificently rewarded, writing to built ser his Lieutenant in Macedonia, that he flould igne them the cine places in the Theatres at Triophs and publick Shews, where they flould fit ldren after their deaths should enjoy their Fathers y. He appointed Crateris to be their Ruler, to om also in the place of Antipater he had committee Government of Macedonia, Theffalia, and recie, Antiparer being fent for to repair unto

Alexander had received Letters before, both from him and Olympias his Mother, by which there appeared to be forme discontents between them: For his Mother accused Amipater that he went about to make himself King; and Antipater did write how Olympias did many things otherwise than did become her. Antipater did take his calling away so grievously to heart, that he compired thereupon to poylon Alexander, who having accomplished what

e refolved to have done, advanced to Relations Media; to fet in order the negellary Affairs of I eastings.

It chanced that Ephelion, whom the King er ly loved; and used in the place of a Brother, die at the same time of a Fever; whose death Alex ander took more heavily than may well be cred committing in his grief many things that were befeeming the Majesty of a Prince: He comman Epbestions Physician to be hanged, as though he died through his negligence. He lay imbracin he dead body, and could hardly be taken awa is Friends, but continued his forrow night

e

,

f 

5

ť

H

b

a

-

19 10

į.

ia

to 

m Pot

to

W

je. 10

to

rat

he

There are many other things written on this d , which are leancely credibles but it is a hat he commanded Sacrifice to be made unti s to a god, and confumed in his Burial, paking of his Temb, above twelve should need to be was returning to Babylan, the ean Prophets me him on the way, callon or to enter into the City is for it was begined he went thither at that time, he should be it eril of his like. Notwithstanding, be t their Admonitions, but went lower tney, according as he was appointed it deritood that Embassadouss were come om all Regions, and sarried for his comis trour of his name was to spread through the lat all Nations shewed an obsequious news. im, as though he had been appointed to b ing: This caused him to make halle to be DESS.

162 The Diffe and Death Book X

World. When he was come thither, he received the Embassadours gently; and afterwards dismissed

them home again.

There was about the fame time a Banquet prepaat the house of one Thessatus Medius, whereunto the King ( being invited ) came with fuch as were spoonted to keep him company: But he had no coner drunk of Hercules Cup, but that he gave a p grown, as though he had been struck to the are; and being carried out of the Feat half dead; he was to cormenced with pain; that he required a slift abroad, that drunkengels was the cause of disease; but in very deed it was prepared Treathe infamy whereof, the Power of his Succes-did oppress. The poylon prepared long before, delivered by Antipater unto his Son Caffander, with his brethren Philip and Ibla, were accu-ed to leave the King at meat! he was warned he should not commit the faid Poylon to any rion, except it were to Ibeffalus, or to his own en Philip and Tolla, who were both accustomed to the after of the Kings Cup; and having the offen ready in sold water, mixed it with Wine, tter they had rufted it. When the fourth day me, the Souldiers, partly because they suspected was dead, and partly because they could not dure to wantlong his fight, came forrowfully un-the Courts defining to fee the King; who by his santiandment was admitted unto his prefence, by unliarlish incellurge of his person. When they beheld him lying in that effate, they

made

Book X. of Alexander the Great.

O.

e

O,

1

el,

dof

1-1

C E, Tue bynd

he .

n-

his

by

ade

made great forrow and lamentation, for he letter not to them to be the same whom they were accustioned to behold but rather a dead Corpse. If their grief were great, the sorrow of them who stood next to the Bed, appeared much greater; whom when Alexander beheld to lament after that fort, he said unto them:

When I shall depart, you shall finde a King worth

It is a thing incredible to speak, how that during the Souldiers of his whole Army came to visit him, he never altered his countenance nor gesture, but continued in that presence, which he gave unto the first, unto the last man. When he had disnissed the multitude, as though he had been discharged of all lebt of life, he lay down to rest his weak body, and his voice beginning to fail him, he commanded his Priends to draw near unto him: then taking his king from his Finger, he delivered it to Perdinar, and gave therewith a commandment that his Body though be conveyed to Hammon. They demanded to whom he would leave his Kingdom? he said, To the worthield by which words it appeared, that he foresaw the Contention that was like to ensue upon his death. Terdious moreover demanded of him, when he would have divine Honours done unto him. At such time, said he, as you shall findly our selves in Ferdious.

There were the last words Alexander spake, and howly after he died. Immediately after his death, in Court was full of howling and lasticuting and whatby, as it had been in a delast place, all things the halb, and a forrowful filence was spread over the halb, and a forrowful filence was spread over the halb.

464 . The Life and Death . Book Y.

the event should be. The young men of the Nobihty that were accustomed about the Kings person,
could not bear the greatness of their doiour, nor
keep themselves within the compass of the Court,
but ran about as men out of their wits, whereby their
City was filled with sighs and tears, and no kinde of
lamentation pretermitted, that sorrow is accustomed to administer in such a case: Such therefore as
were without the Court, as well Macedans as others,
came running thither, where the Conquerours from
the conquered could not be discerned to so equal and
mutual was their forrow.

The Perfuser called upon their just, and merciful Lord, and the Macedons made invocation unto him that was so just and gracious a King; and thus there was a certain contention among them. They did not only use the words of grief and heaviness, but also of murmiring and indignation, that so young a Prutee, being in the slower of his age, and so fortunate in success, should by the envy of the gods be so taken out of this world. They called to remembrance what a chear subness they had always seen in his countenance, both when he led them to the Bartel, or when he besieged or assaulted any City, or when he would give any commendation to the Varliant in any Assembly.

Then the Macedons' repented that ever they had denied him divine honour, confessing themselves both wicked and ungrateful in depriving him of any name whereof he was worthy. And when they had continued long in the veneration, and desire of him that was dead, they began to lament their own condition,

who

who coming out of Massedon, were beyond the River Emphrates, amongst the middest of their Enemies, who unwillingly received their new Governments. They saw themselves left destitute, and the Empire without any certain Heir; for want of whom every one would go about to draw the Power of the State into his own private interest. Then they began to conceive and sorelee the Civil Wars that did entue and that they should be inforced to shed their bloud again, not for the Conquest of Asia, but for the Title of some such a one as would go about to make himself King. Moreover, that such who by reason of their age had been discharged from the Wars by their noble and righteous King, should now be inforced to spend their lives in the guarrel of one who was but his Souldier.

1

T

1 1

5,

n

al

B)

bt

Ga a

ufo

in

N-

19

ad

sth me

bat

ho

Whiles they were in thele imaginations, the night sine on, and increased their terrous: The men of that watched in their Arms, and the Babylonian looked over the Walls, peeping but from the tops of their houses, to discover looke certainty how the Affairs palled. These was not one that duri sliddle my light; and because the life of the eye did fall, they laid their ears to lear the running and words has were spoken; and many times they were affaired, then no cause of furt was; and when they met regether in the narrow meets, or dark lanes. The Respansianted and hispert each other as enemies. The Respansianted their accultomed manner, cut hort their han, and with their Wives and Children amented the death of Alexander in mourning Garments, with inheighted affections, not as a Conquertour, or one that lately had been their Enemy, but as

SESTERAL DESIGNATION cle right and natural King, for they being acmore worthy then himfelf to rule over them.

This fortow was not, contained within the walls he City. But firaightways it (pread over all the ity thereabouts. And the Fame of to great a thereof unto Derin Mother: She at the first et did tear alunder the garment she did wear, putting on mourning apparel, the pulled her and fell down groveling upon the earth. One r Neeces late by her mourning for the death of tion, who not long before had married her, and n universal heaviness bewailed the cause of her ate forrow: but Sifigambis alone fustained all ir mileries, and bewailed both her own condition, her Neeces, her fresh forrow caufing her to call minde things past. A man would have judged by behaviour, that Durim had been newly flain, or the had now celebrated the Funerals of two s together: She did not only lament the dead, forrowed also for the living.

Who feall som ( laid the ) take care of thefe young omen? Or who can be like some Alexander? Non we are taken Prisoners again: We are newly fallen again from our Dignity and Estate. After Danius death we found one to defend us; but now fince Alexander is gone, who will have respect muto us?

Among these things, the called to munde how Occurs the cruel King had stain her Father, and sources.

core of her Brethren in one day, and that of fix Children born of her Body, there was but one of them left alive. She law that Fortune had advanced Darius,

H

or hierander the orlat.

Darin, and cauted him to Routth for a time, to the intent the might end his life by greater cruelty. nally, the was to overcome with forcow, that the covered her head, turning her felf from her Nee and Nephew that fate at her feet, and abstaining both from meat, and from beholding the light. The ended her life the afth day after the was determined This her death was a great argument of the to die. clemency which Atexander had thew'd towards he and of his justice towards all the Captives, feein ther after Darine death the could not endure to live but after Alexanders departure, the was asnamed

continue any longer. 117

ľs

ne.

2

rlt.

u,

er

ne

of

nd

ier all

m,

by or wo

Oc-

MIT-

fix

iced

P 3 346 1

Comider Alexander justly, and we must impute a his Vertues to his own nature, and his Vices either to his youth, or to the greatness of his Fortune ! there was in him an incredible force of Courage, and an exceeding fufferance of Travel: he was enduced with annood, excelling not only Kings, but also fact had no other verme or quality . he was of then serality, that oftentimes he gave greater thing an the Receivers would have wilhed for of God, he multude of Kingdoms that he gave in Gift, d reffered to fuch from whom he had taken them force, was a token of his Clemency towards em whom he had tubdued. He thewed a perpetual intempt of Death; the fear whereof doth amaze oier men : And as there was in him a greater defire Glory and worldly Praise than reason would adit; fo it was tolerable in so young a man, pereming to great and wonderful Atchievements. The verence and affection he bare towards his Parents, peared in the purpole he had to confecrate his Ma-Hh a

ther

Se Life and Digh. Book le ther Olympias to immortality, and in that he fo friety revenged his Father Philips death. How gentle he towards his Friends? and how benevolent towards his Souldiers? He had a wildom equal to the greatness of his heart, and such a policy and forefight as to young years were scarcely able to receive. A measure he had in immoderate pleasures, and lusted less than Nature defired, using no pleasure but what was lawful: These indeed were wonderful reat Gifts and Vertues; but in that he compared bimielf to the gods, coveting divine honours, and believing the Oracles that perswaded such things, that he was offended with them that would not worthip him, and given more vehemently to wrath than was expedient; that he altered his habit and apparel into the fashion of strangers, and counterfeited the caltom of thele whom he had subdued and deled before his Victory, thele were Vices to be atbuted to the greatness of his fortune : As the heat of youth flirred him unto anger, and to the dehire of Drinking, to age might have mitigated again thole diffempers. Notwithstanding it must needs be confessed, that though he prevailed much by his Vertue, yet ought he to impute more unto his Fortune, which only of all mortal men he had in his own power. How often did the deliver him from the point of Death? How did the protect him with p rpetual Felicity, when he had rathly brought himfilt into peril? And when the had decreed an end to his glory, the even then was content to finish his life, staying his tatal distiny until he had subdued the Orient, whired the Ocean, and fulfilled all that mans mortality was able to perform.

là

di

hi

tì

nì

fe

er ca

行品品的行行

Book X. of Alexander the Great. 469

To this to great a King, and to noble a Conqueror, a Successor was wanting; and it was a task of too great an importance for any one man to take it upon him: his Name and Renown was to great amongst all Nations, that they were counted most noble, who could be partakers (thought it were never to little) of his prosperous Fortune. But to return again to habylon, from whence this digitalion hatir been milled.

They who had the Guard and Cuftody of Alexan ders person, called into the Court such as had been his chief Friends, and Caprains of the men of War, after whom there follow'd a great multitude of Souldiers, defiring to know who should be Successor unto Alexander. The throng of the Souldiers was fuch, that many of the Captains were excluded, and could not enter into the Court. A Proclamation therefore was made, whereby all men were forbidden to enter, except fuch as were called by name: But be cause their commandment seemed to want authoity, it was but little regarded, and the multisude at full bean to make a doleful cry and lamentation ; But immediately the defire they had to understand the event, stopped their lamentation, and procured filence. Then Perdices brought forth in fight of all the people, the Kings Chair of Effate, wherein Alexanders Diadem, his Royal Habiliments, and his Armour was laid; amongst which Ornaments Perdicent also laid down the Kings Signer, delivered to him the day before; at the fight whereof they began to weep, and to renew again their forrow. Perdiccas :

n

015

m

01-

nd

his

the

ıns

To

Lo, here is the Ring wherewith he was accultomed to Seal such things as pertained to the Government of his

Hh 4

Em-

Empire, which as he delivered to me. If westere is again to you! And though no offiction can be devised by the gods (were they never so much offended) compar abis; yet considering the greatness of the Atis which the bath done, we must think that as the gods fent such a man fo to reign in the world, (his time being expired that was appointed) they have called him back again to the place from whence he came: Forasmuch therefore as nothing more of him remaineth capable of immortality, let as perform the Rites pertaining to his Body, reembring in what City we are, amongst what kinde of male and what a King and Governour we have loft. We ler and confut bow to maintain our Conquest thate men over whom it is gotten; for the doing it is needful for us to have a Head; but whether the fame shall be one or many, it doth confist in you-Tou are not ignorant that a multitude of men of War is a Body without life. Six months are now paffed, since Roxane mas conceived with childesme defire of the gods that the may bring forth a Son, which may enjoy this Kingdom when be cometh to Age : In the mean feafon

When Perdiceas, had spoken these words, Nearchus

appoint you by rehom you will be governed.

role up, and laid:

There is no man can deny, but that it were requisite shat the Succession should continue in the Blood-Royal; but to look for a King that is not yet born, and to pass over one that is born already, is not expedient for such men as the Maccdons are, nor yet doth serve the necessity of the time. There is a Son whom Alexander beget on Bartines, what should hinder why the Diadem may not be set upon his Head?

Negrobus discourse was acceptable to no man;

Book K. of Alexander the Great.

o

b

f

ß

g

g.

is is

p

115

te

ß

sb

f-

2-

172

rc

therefore the Souldiers, according to their cultum classical their Spears against their Targets, and continued making a noile: And when he would not forfake his opinion, but obstinately maintained the same, it had almost bred a sedition which being perserved by Psolonty, he spake after this manner:

Neither the Son of Rounne, nor of Barfines, is an Iffue meet to reign over the Maccdons, whose names we should be assumed to mention within Europe, their mothers being Captives. Have we subdued the Persons to that end, to become subject to such as are descended of them? That was to which Davius and Kerkes, being them? That was to which Davius and Kerkes, being them? Person did labour for in vain, with so man millions of men of War, and with so many Navies. This therefore is my opinion, that Alexanders Chair of Estate he set in the middest of his Cours, and that all such as were accasioned to be of Counsel with him, as semble together, so often as any business requires to be consulted on, and that the Captains and Rulers of the Army be abedient to that Order whereants the greatest number do assent.

There were some agreed with Prolomy, but few with Perdictas. Then Aristonia spake in this manner:

When Alexander was demanded to whom he would leave his Kingdom, he willed the worthieft to be chosen? Whom judged he worthy but Perdiccas, to whom he delivered his Ring? This was not done at such a time is he was alone, but when all his Friends were present, he did oust his eyes manness them, and at length chise one one to whom he delivered it. For this easse I think it right, that the Kingdome he committed to Perdiccas.

Many agreed to his opinion, so that the Assembly cried out to Perdicear, that he should come touch

amongit

The Dife and Death. Book X

H

C

mongs them, and take up the Kings Signer: But he stayed between ambition and modelty, thinking the more modelty he used in the obtaining their hings he so much defined, they would be so much the more carnest to proffer it to him. When he had stood a good while at a stay, doubting what to do, at length he drew back, and stood behinds them who sate next to him. When Meleager, who was one of the Capitains, saw the stay that Perdiceas made, he took countage on his seeming unwillingness, and said to the contents.

Neither the gods will permit, nor men will fuffer; that Alexanders Fortune, and the weight of fogreat an supire should rest upon bis shoulders: I will not reefe that there are many prefent more noble than he is, and of greater worth, without whose consent no such bing may be suffered to be done. There is no difference abether you make Perdiccas King, or the found Rox ane, whenformen he shall be born ? Perdiccas goeth a hour to make himfelf King, under presence to be Govern our to the Infant's this is the came why no King can please bim, but fuch as is not yet born. ... And in fo great a bafte as all we make to have a King ( which bafte is both just and necessary for the preservation of our estate; ) be only doth wait for the expiring of times and months, imagining that she should bring forth a man-obilde, which I think you doubt not but be is already prepared to counterfeit and exchange, if need be. If it were fo in very deed that Alexander had appointed him to be our King, I am of opinion that the fame thing only ( of all the things he had commanded) ought not to be observed or performed. Why do not you run rather to feize upon the Treasure, seeing the people ought to inherit it ?

When he had spoken those words, he brake tho-

Book X. of Alexander the Great

row the press of armed men; and they who gave way to him, followed him to the spoil, whereof he made mention. The greediness of the Freasure caused a great Band of armed men to stock about Meleager; and the Assembly began to fall into solition, which had grown to a greater inconvenience, if a mean Souldier ( whom very sew did know) had not stronger to the contract of the sould be sold on the sould be sold on the sould be sold on the sold of the s

frepped forth, and spoken to the multicude.

What need me (said he) grow into a Civil War feeing me have a King Mready, whom you feel to finde 2 she same is Atideus the Son of Philip, and brother to Alexa ander, who lately mas, one King, born and brought up with him in the same Religion and Commonies that me do not, who being the only Heir. I marvel by what undefert of his be is neglected? on what bath he done in may be spould not enjoy his right descended unto him by the minersal law of the world? If you seek one to be compared to Alexander, you shall never sinde him. If you will have such a one as shall be not more Alexander, this is only be.

When there words were heard amongst the multitude, they kept silence at the first, as if they had been commanded by Authority; but atterwards they cried with one voice, that Aridem should be called, and that they were worthy of death who made the Afsembly without him. Then Python being bedewed

with tears, began to speak.

.

)

d

18

1

2

V

Service T

Now I perceive (faid he). Alexanders case to be most miserable, seeing he is defrauded of the fruit, misich such as were bit Souldiers and Subjects should bring forth at such a time as this is 2. For looking only on the Name and Memory of your King, you are neterly blinde in other things.

His

His words tended directly to the reproof of Arishms, that was his clothed King y but his Speech procased more harred to the Speaker, than contempt to the going man against whom it was intended. For the compassion they had of Ariden, caused them the more to favour his Caufe; and therefore they declared with a general Acclamation, That they would fuffer any to reign over them, but him only w as born to so great a bope; and still they call d for Ardeus to come forth amongst them. Whereupon deleager (for the malice and envy he bare unto Perear ) took an occasion boldly to bring him into Affembly, whom the multitude faluted as King

This was the voice of the people; but the Nobility were of another minde, amongst whom, Python took on him to put Perdiceas Plot in execution, and ap-Perdicer and Leonary De Candes both of the Blood-Royal) to be Sovernours of the Son which should de born of Rosane; Adding moreover, that Crateria and Antipaser thould have the Rule within Enrope and upon this they Iware the Souldiers to be obedient to Alexanders Issue. Meleager then doubting, not without eaufe, that some evil might come unto him, departed with tuch of his Faction; but he returned immediately again, bringing Philip with him into the Court, and cried out to the multitude for the allitting of the .Commonwealth, in aiding of King, whom a little before they had Elected's and willed them to make an experience of his Abilities, perfecading shew that he was the fittel to Kule over them, being the Ifine of Philip, and bath both a King to his Father, and a King to his Brother.

Book X of Klexander the Great.

There is no profound Sea to flormy nor temperatures, or that raileth up to many furges and ways as a Multitude doth motions and alterations, when they swell with the hopes of a new Liberty, and likely long to continue. There wanted not some who gave their nonlent to Pardices: but more agreed to make Philip King: They could neither agree nor dilagree a long time together; one while repenting them of their Counsel, and immediately again repenting them of the repentance. Yet finally, they were inclined to prefer the Kings Blood.

Ariden was put in such fear with the Authoris the Nobility, that he departed out of the Affi after whose departure, the favour of the So as rather filenced than diminished towards that at length he was called again, and hi thers Royal Flabiliments which lay in the west put upon him , and Melsager put on et. following as a detence to the Pealon of thing. The Phalame clashed their Spears to argets, threatning to thed his bloud, who pout to take the Kingdom that persained not m. They rejoyced that the itrength of the Enough not be divided, but itill continue in the loud and Family's the right of whole Title neutance coming of the lame Bloud-Roys hewed themselves ready to defend. For by hey were accultomed to have the Name King in such honour and veneration, they than worthy of it, sat there one was o anhood, took upon him to de

196 the Life and White Book 2.

where the body of Alexander lay. Prolony joyned hunfelf unto him also, and the Band of the young Gentlemen that were about the Kings Person: but so many thousands of armed men as were on the other fide, did easily break in upon them; amongst whom Aridem was present, with a great Band for the guard for his Person, whereof Meleager was chief. Perdicus therefore in great fury called such to his guard as would defend Alexanders Body; but many of them were fore but with Darts that came from

u

h

H

to G

H

in

K Pe

ib

the contrary fide.

At last the ancient men plucked off their Headieces ( the better to be known ) and defired them who were with Perdiccas to abitain from Civil War, and give place to the King, and to the greater part. crepon Perdices was the first that laid down his Weapon, and the reft did in like manner. Me-Perdievar judging it to be a deceit contrived to entrup him, drew back to the lide of Emphrater, 19 ing on the furthest part of the Court. Then the Hotlemen, which confifted chiefly of the Nobility, Hocked about Perdicem and Leonatis, whose opinion was to depart out of the City, and to take the Picie; but because Perdiceas was not without hope that fore remained fill within the City, left he might learn so be the cause that the Horsemen should diwide themselves from the rest of the Army. Meleder beafed not to beat into the Kings head. That he could not enable hittelf furely in his Throne, But by the death of Peldico, whole ambitious minutes, and STEEL W

h

n

r,

t.

n

He

ty,

Hat

all.

SHe Blit

HH?

and deline of Indovation, was to be prevented to times He willed the King to remember what Por dices had deferred at his hands, and that no man could be faithful to birn whom be febred. The Kir tather fuffering than afforting to his countel, leager took his filence for a commandment, and fent for Perdices in the Kings name ; they who were fent having Commission to kill him, if he should make any delay to come with them. Perdieeas hearing of their coming, accompanied only with fixteen young Conflemen (accufremed to attend upon Alexanders Person ) met them as they would have unted into his Lodging , and calling the Melengers blaves shebuked them with fuch a con Hancy both of minde and convenance, that the teturned backs as men amazud. APardiceas willie fuch as were in his company to keep on Horfeback, and with a few of his Friends depuired unto Leanso him, no repulle it with a greate bforce and be bown! The next sday the Macedon's mirmured and thought it unjust that Perdices should be brought in danger of deaths and therefore determined with force to revenge the reflincistof stateleagers doings : But he understanding of the Mutiny that was among the Souldiers, gave place's and they repaired to King, demanding of thim, ruff be bad dommande Pendices to be substituted the contested the shings be it mas done (the laids) by Muleagers infligutions of which they ought no social fellow summile; if either the Perdiecas was attre be The Afferibly descripion brake up, land Meleggins became lingually afraid, especially by the ideparting of the Modernen subat he within knew and

475 The Life and knew not what to do s for he faw the mischief which he s little before had intended against his Enemy, to light upon himfulf; and while he debated with himself on this, and on that; three whole days were

confumed. Howfoever, the accustomed form and falhion of the Court did remain in the mean feafour for the Embassadors of divers Nations did address themselves unto the King, the Captains of the Army were prefent, and the Guard waited in Armour sithey were accustomed: But the great fadheis that was there, without any apparent cause, figniied fome extreme despair. There was such a fulion amongst themselves, that then durst not converse one with another, but haddecret imaginations by themselves; and by comparing the time present with the time past, and the new King with the old. they began to define the King that was gone. Then one enquired of another, What was become of the ing, whose Fortune and Authority they had fol-

lowed? They found themselves abandoned amongst fo many unquiet and unconquered Nations, who were defitous upon any occasion that might befal to be sevenged of the injuries they had received.

: While they were troubled in these imaginations, word was brought; that the Horsemen (who were index Perdiceus) kept the Fields about Babylon, and tayed all Victuals from coming to the City: wherepon first began a scarcity, and afterwards a familie; temfore such as were within the City thought good after to make a reconciliation with Renditor; or die to fight it out. It so chanced, that such as dwelled a second in the chanced, that such as dwelled a second in the chanced are dwelled as dw the Millages, repaired linto the City; and they

An amala a

within

\$b

te.

Book X. of Alexander the Great.

within the City, for want of Victuals departed into the Country's so that every one thought themsolves furer any where, then where their own Habitations were: Then the Macedons doubting forme great inconvenience that might proceed from this fear, affembled together in the Court, and declared their Opinions. It was agreed amongst them, that Embassadours should be sent to the Horsemen, for the furceasing of all strife and division. Palaria Theffalian, Amiffas a Megapolitan, and Perelans, were fent from the King, who declaring their Commillion, received answer, that the Horsemen would not lay down their Arms, till the Authors of that Sedition were delivered into their hands When they were returned, and their answer known; the Souldiers, without any appointment, put on then Armour, and made fuch a Tumult, that the King was inforced to come forth of the Court, and faid unto them:

t

la me la ft

D

0

of

nin

If we shall be at strife among our felves, our Enemies that are at quiet shall enjoy the fruits of our Contention: Remember that the Quarrel is with your own Countrymen, wish whom if you rashly break the hope of Reconcilement, you shall be the beginners of a Civil War : Let us prove if they may be mitigated by another Embassie: I am of belief, that because the Body of Alexander remainstb yet unburied, they will gladly come together to perform the Objequies unto the Dead. And for my part, I had rather surrender up again this Dignity, then that any blond thould be thed amongst my Country-men ; for if no other hope of Concord doth remain, I defire and befeech you to make a better Choice. Marin. Tears

Tears then falling from his eyes, he took the Diadem from his head, and holding the fame forth with his hand, he was ready to have delivered it to any man who would profess himself to be more worthy then he . The moderation that he used. both in his words and behaviour, caused them all to conscive a great good hope of his Noble Nature, which till that time was obscured by the height of his Brothers Fame : They therefore incouraged and importuned him to go forwards as he had devised: whereupon he fent again the fame Embassadours that went before who had Commission to desire that Meleager might be the third Ruler of the Men of War. That demand was not much fluck at ; for Pendiceas was definous to remove Meleager from the King, and conceived that the King being alone, the King would not be able to match with Leonatus and

Upon this Meleager marched out of the City with the Footmen, and Perdiecas met him in the Fields, riding before the Bands of the Horfemen; There both Battels faluring one another, Concord and Peace (as it was thought.) was confirmed betwint them for ever: But it was decreed that Civil Wars should orife amongst the Macedons's for Government is impatient of Raumers, and the Kingdom was covered by many . At full they gathered, and alterwards dispersed their Forces; for when the Body was burthened with more Heads then it could beat, the other Members began to fail. So the Empire of the Macedone, which under one Head might well have stood, when it was divided into Parts, tell to ruine. For this cause the people of Rome justily mult Book X. of Alexander the Great.

te

l,

0

2,

of

d

at

at

of

or

ne

be

nd

th

ls,

re

nd

xt

LTS

m

nd

101

ıld

in.

ell

HIV

ult

must confess themselves bound unto their Prince for the selicity they injoy, who, as a Star in the night, appeared unto them that were almost lost: Surely it was not the rising of the Sun, but of him that gave light unto the world in darkness; for without such a Head, the Members that were at variance must needs have failed: How many Fite brands did he quench? How many drawn Swords did he cause to be sheathed? How great a Tempest did he passing with the sudden calm of his presence? The Empire now doth wax verdant and should may continue manner without envy, that his house may continue manner.

my Ages, and his Posterity for everthore.

But to return again to the order of the History, from whence I was brought through the contemplation of our Universal Felicity; Pardices judged the only hope of his own fateguard to confit in the death of Meleager, thinking it necessary to prevent him, being a man both variable, unfaithful, given to innovation, and belides his mortal Enemy : But with deep diffigulation he kept his purpole fecret, to the intent, that with his difficulty he might oppress him mawarese He chefefore did fubioris privily certain of the Troops under his own Continand, to complain lopenly (as thought it were without his privity) that Meleager thought be insdeedual with him in Aushoring; which would of the bouldies when they deported unto Mileager, he became in a great rage, and declared shemito Ferdican, who fermed to won-den at it, and to be passionately for y for it; and finally, they agreed amongst themselves, that the Anshors of facts fedicious words thould be appreof London and add of the bear

fi x

When

When Melanger perceived Perdicen to conformfidelity and benevolence; then in a consultation betwixt them both they devised how to destroy such as wrought this division between them ! for the bringing of which to pals, they agreed the Army should be purged according to their Country-custom : To the doing whereof they feemed to have a fufficient occasion, by reason of the late discord amongst them. The Kings of Macedon, in the luftration of their Army, were accustomed to use a kinde of Ceremony dividing the bowels of a Dog into two parts, and to call the same in the uttermost bounds of the field on which they intended to muster their Army: the Souldiers within those bounds were all to stand armed; the Horsemen, the Mercenary Souldiers the Phalans, and every one apart. The fame day that this Ceremony was put in execution, the King flood in order of Battel, with the Horsemen and the Elephants against the Footmen, of whom Meleager had the Rule.

When the Troops of Horsemen began to move, the Footmen were suddenly possessed with a great sear; and by reason of the late discord, conceived a suspicion, that the Horsemen did intend no good unto them; wherefore they stood a while in doubt, whether they should retire into the City or not, by reason that the fields served best for the Horsemen. At last they stood still, with a fixed resolution to sight, if any should offer them violence. When the Battels were almost met, and only a small distance left, (whereby the one part was divided from the other) the King, by the provocation of Reedicess, with a Band of Horsemen did ride along by the Foot, acquiring

Book &. of Alexander the Great.

requiring the delivery of fuch to be executed as were the Authors of the Discord, whom in very deed he ought to have defended; and threatned, if they refused their delivery, to bring against them both the Horsemen, and the Elephants. The Footmen were amazed with the fuddenness of the mischief which they looked not for, and there was no more counfel nor courage in Meleager, then in the reft; but they all judged it most expedient for them to abide the adventure of that request, and to expect rather then to provoke Fortune.

Ò

n

1-B

×,

ecr

ts

le.

e, at

la

m-

bt,

by

en.

to

the

nee

the

108

ota ing

When Perdices faw them afformed, and in fear, he fevered out to the number of three hundred of fuch who followed Melesger when he brake out of the Assembly that was first made after Alexanders death, who in the light of the Army were cast to the Elephants, and there trampled to death with their feets of which Philip was neither the Author nor the Forbidder, but thought to claim that for his own act, which should appear best in the end. This was a fignification, and a beginning onto the Macedons, of the Civil Wars that infued. Meleager underflanding over-late the deceipt of this fine Plot, because there was no violence offered unto his person, stood at first quietly within the Phalanx, but shorely after, when he faw his Enemies abuting to his defirmation the Name of him whom he had made King, he despaired of his own fafety, and fled miso a Temple : But the Religion of the place could not for defend him, but that he was there flain.

Perdiceas bereupon brought again the Army into the City; and calling a Councel of all the principal Personages, it was agreed so to divide the Empire,

The Life and Death Book X. that the King should remain as Chief of the whole Prolony was to be Lieutenant in Egyps and Africa. and to have the Rule of the Nations there that were under the Macedons Dominion: Syria and Phenicia were appointed to Laomedon's Cilicia to Philotais Dein, with Pamphylia, and the greater Phrygia. were alligned to Antigonus & Cassander was fent into Caria, and Menander into Lydia s the less Phrygia that joyneth unto Hellefront, was Leonatus Province enes had Gappadocia and Paphlagonia, who was commanded allo to defend that Country fo far as Trapezone, and make War with Arbater, who only remained an linemy to the Empire: Media was appointed Public and Threeid to Lyfinischus , with other Nations thereabouts ; bordering upon the Sea of Pinnes. Itiwas ordained alfo; that fuch as fhould be the Governours over the Indians, Ballrians, Sandiane, and the other Nations lying upon the Ocean and Red Seas, should, in matter of Justice, the Regal Inrifdiction. It was decreed, that Perdicen thould remain with the King, and have the Governance of the Men of War that followed him. Some believe that thefe Provinces were thus distributed by Alexanders Testament, but we have found the farme to befalle, though fonce Authors do affirm it . booth

The Empire being thus divided into parts, every one might well have defended his proportion, if any bounds could contain mens immoderate defires; for they who before were but fervants to a King, did not long after, under a specious colour, invade one anothers Kingdoms, being all of one Nation, and having certain bounds to their Dominious allotted to them: But it is hard for men to be contented with

that

th

fe

pe

it

W

m

er

th ch

tl

2

ti

h

that they have in possession, when occasion is proffered them of more; for the first things always appear of no value, when men are in hope of greater
things to come; for that every one of them thought
it an easier matter to increase his Kingdom; then it
was at the first to get it. Alexanders Body, in the
mean season, lay seven days unburied; for whites
every man had care for the establishing of the State,
their mindes were drawn from the performing of
the Solemn Ossive to the Dead. There is no Country more servent in heat then Mesopotamia; for the
Sun there burneth so hot, that it killeth the Beasts
that are without covert, and burneth up all things

as it were with fire: And to the increase thereof, there are but few Springs of water, and the Inhabi-

a,

TE

10

15

4,

0

4

is

is

y

からははかから

でのが地へ

沙沙山山 他 过 记 山

rat

that frangers can have no use of those they have,

Notwithstanding this, when Alexanders Friends had the leifure to take care of the dead Body, and came to visit the same, they found it without infection, corruption, or change of colours the fame chearfulnels of spirit which he had alive, being not yet departed out of his countenance. Then the Egypti ans and the Caldeans were commanded to impelin his Body after their manner, who at the hift ras though he had been alive) shewed a fear to put their hands to him; but afterwards making their prayers that it might be lawful for mortal men to touch him, they purged his body, and filled it with fweet Odours, and afterwards laid him upon a Herfe of Gold, and set a Diadem upon his head. It is recorded that he died of Poylon, and that Iolla, Antipaters Son, being one of his Ministers, had given him the The Life and Death

Alexander oltentimes would by. The Antipater covered the Estate of a King, associate more
greatests then pertained to a Lieutenant; and the
abrough the glory of the Victory be had gotten of the
Lacedemomans, was become so proud, that he claimed all things committed to him as his own. It is
thought also, that Craterus was sent to kill him,
with those old Souldiers that were dismissed.

It is certain that there is a Poylon in Macedonia. found in a water called Sevees, of fuch force, that it confumeth Iron, and will not be contained in any thing except in the Hoof of a Horse, or Mule: which Poylon was brought by Callander, and deliered to his Brother Iolla, who presented it in the drink which the King last drank. However these things are reported, the power of them of whom the rumour was spread, shortly after oppressed the infamy thereof; for Antipater became King both of Macedonia and Greece, who afterwards took away by death the Kings Off-spring, all being sain who had any Alliance to him, although in the most re moved Conlanguinity. Ptalomy (who had the Rul of Egypt ) conveyed Alexanders Body to Memphis, which within few years after was removed to Alexandria, where all Honour is given to his Memor ry and his Name.

## FIN IS.

pint spices to be the

